

VOLUME 18

APRIL, 1930

NO. 4

PROCEEDINGS
of
The Institute of Radio
Engineers



Form for Change of Mailing Address or Business Title on Page XLIX!

Institute of Radio Engineers
Forthcoming Meetings

Los Angeles Section
April 21, 1930

Seattle Section
April 28, 1930

Fifth Annual Convention
Toronto, Ontario, Canada
August 18-21, 1930

PROCEEDINGS OF
The Institute of Radio Engineers

Volume 18 April, 1930 Number 4

Board of Editors

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*
 STUART BALLANTINE G. W. PICKARD
 RALPH BATCHER L. E. WHITTEMORE
 J. W. HORTON W. WILSON

Contents

Part I

	Page
Frontispiece, Arthur F. Van Dyck, Member, Board of Direction, 1930 . . .	560
Institute News and Radio Notes	561
March Meeting of Board of Direction	561
Radio Signal Transmissions of Standard Frequency	561
Broadcast Reports on Astrophysical and Geophysical Phenomena . . .	562
Committee Work	562
Institute Meetings	564
Personal Mention	567

Part II

Technical Papers

Antenna-Measuring Equipment	J. K. CLAPP	571
Transmission Characteristics of a Short-Wave Telephone Circuit	R. K. POTTER	581
Summary of Progress in the Study of Radio Wave Propagation Phenomena	G. W. KENRICK and G. W. PICKARD	649
Cascaded Direct-Coupled Tube Systems Operated from Alternating Current	EDWARD H. LOFTIN and S. YOUNG WHITE	669
Note on Day-to-Day Variations in Sensitivity of a Broadcast Receiver	RALPH P. GLOVER	683
Considerations in Superheterodyne Design	E. G. WATTS, JR.	690
The Piezo-Electric Resonator in High-Frequency Oscillation Circuits	YASUJI WATANABE	695
Some Experiments on Night Errors for Long Waves	ISAO TANIMURA	718
Booklets, Catalogs, and Pamphlets Received		723
Monthly List of References to Current Radio Literature		724
Contributors to This Issue		729

Copyright, 1930, by the Institute of Radio Engineers

The Institute of Radio Engineers

GENERAL INFORMATION

The PROCEEDINGS of the Institute is published monthly and contains papers and discussions thereon submitted for publication or for presentation before meetings of the Institute or its Sections. Payment of the annual dues by a member entitles him to one copy of each number of the PROCEEDINGS issued during the period of his membership.

Subscription rates to the PROCEEDINGS for the current year are received from non-members at the rate of \$1.00 per copy or \$10.00 per year. To foreign countries the rates are \$1.10 per copy or \$11.00 per year.

Back issues are available in unbound form for the years 1918, 1920, 1921, 1922, and 1926 at \$9.00 per volume (six issues) or \$1.50 per single issue. For the years 1913, 1914, 1915, 1916, 1917, 1919, 1923, 1924, and 1925 miscellaneous copies (incomplete unbound volumes) can be purchased for \$1.50 each; for 1927, 1928, and 1929 at \$1.00 each. The Secretary of the Institute should be addressed for a list of these.

Discount of twenty-five per cent on all unbound volumes or copies allowed to members of the Institute, libraries, booksellers, and subscription agencies.

Bound volumes are available as follows: for the years 1922 and 1926 to members of the Institute, libraries, booksellers, and subscription agencies at \$8.75 per volume in blue buckram binding and \$10.25 in morocco leather binding; to all others the prices are \$11.00 and \$12.50, respectively. For the year 1929 the bound volume prices are: to members of the Institute, libraries, booksellers, and subscription agencies, \$9.50 in blue buckram binding; to all others, \$12.00. Foreign postage on all bound volumes is one dollar, and on single copies is ten cents.

Year Books for 1926, 1927, and 1928, containing general information, the Constitution and By-Laws, catalog of membership, etc., are priced at seventy-five cents per copy per year. The 1929 Year Book is available to members at \$1.00; to non-members, \$1.50.

Contributors to the PROCEEDINGS are referred to the following page for suggestions as to approved methods of preparing manuscripts for publication in the PROCEEDINGS.

Advertising rates for the PROCEEDINGS will be supplied by the Institute's Advertising Department, Room 802, 33 West 39th Street, New York, N.Y.

Changes of address to affect a particular issue must be received at the Institute office not later than the 15th of the month preceding date of issue. That is, a change in mailing address to be effective with the October issue of the PROCEEDINGS must be received by not later than September 15th. Members of the Institute are requested to advise the Secretary of any change in their business connection or title irrespective of change in their mailing address, for the purpose of keeping the Year Book membership catalog up to date.

The right to reprint portions or abstracts of the papers, discussions, or editorial notes in the PROCEEDINGS is granted on the express condition that specific reference shall be made to the source of such material. Diagrams and photographs published in the PROCEEDINGS may not be reproduced without making special arrangements with the Institute through the Secretary.

It is understood that the statements and opinions given in the PROCEEDINGS are views of the individual members to whom they are credited, and are not binding on the membership of the Institute as a whole.

All correspondence should be addressed to the Institute of Radio Engineers, 33 West 39th Street, New York, N.Y., U.S.A.

Entered as second class matter at the Post Office at Menasha, Wisconsin.

Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in the Act of February 28, 1925, embodied in paragraph 4, Section 412, P. L. and R. Authorized October 26, 1927.

Published monthly by

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.

Publication office, 450-454 Ahnaip Street, Menasha, Wis.

BUSINESS, EDITORIAL, AND ADVERTISING OFFICES,

Harold P. Westman, *Secretary*

33 West 39th St., New York, N.Y.

SUGGESTIONS FOR CONTRIBUTORS TO THE "PROCEEDINGS"

Preparation of Paper

Form—Manuscripts may be submitted by member and non-member contributors from any country. To be acceptable for publication, manuscripts should be in English, in final form for publication, and accompanied by a summary of from 100 to 300 words. Papers should be typed double space with consecutive numbering of pages. Footnote references should be consecutively numbered and should appear at the foot of their respective pages. Each reference should contain author's name, title of article, name of journal, volume, page, month, and year. Generally, the sequence of presentation should be as follows: statement of problem; review of the subject in which the scope, object, and conclusions of previous investigations in the same field are covered; main body describing the apparatus, experiments, theoretical work, and results used in reaching the conclusions and their relation to present theory and practice; bibliography. The above pertains to the usual type of paper. To whatever type a contribution may belong, a close conformity to the spirit of these suggestions is recommended.

Illustrations—Use only jet black ink on white paper or tracing cloth. Cross-section paper used for graphs should not have more than four lines per inch. If finer ruled paper is used, the major division lines should be drawn in with black ink, omitting the finer divisions. In the latter case, only blue-lined paper can be accepted. Photographs must be very distinct, and must be printed on glossy white paper. Blueprinted illustrations of any kind cannot be used. All lettering should be 3/16 in. high for an 8 x 10 in. figure. Legends for figures should be tabulated on a separate sheet, not lettered on the illustrations.

Mathematics—Fractions should be indicated by a slanting line. Use standard symbols. Decimals not preceded by whole numbers should be preceded by zero, as 0.016. Equations may be written in ink with subscript numbers, radicals, etc., in the desired proportion.

Abbreviations—Write a.c. and d.c. (a-c and d-c as adjectives), kc, μ f, μ af, e.m.f., mh, μ h, henries, abscissas, antennas. Refer to figures as Fig. 1, Figs. 3 and 4, and to equations as (5). Number equations on the right in parentheses.

Summary—The summary should contain a statement of major conclusions reached, since summaries in many cases constitute the only source of information used in compiling scientific reference indexes. Abstracts printed in other journals, especially foreign, in most cases consist of summaries from published papers. The summary should explain as adequately as possible the major conclusions to a non-specialist in the subject. The summary should contain from 100 to 300 words, depending on the length of the paper.

Publication of Paper

Disposition—All manuscripts should be addressed to the Institute of Radio Engineers, 33 West 39th Street, New York City. They will be examined by the Committee on Meetings and Papers and by the Editor. Authors are advised as promptly as possible of the action taken, usually within one month.

Proofs—Galley proof is sent to the author. Only necessary corrections in typography should be made. *No new material is to be added.* Corrected proofs should be returned *promptly* to the Institute of Radio Engineers, 33 West 39th Street, New York City.

Reprints—With the galley proof a reprint order form is sent to the author. Orders for reprints must be forwarded promptly as type is not held after publication.

INSTITUTE SECTIONS

<i>Chairmen</i>	<i>Secretaries</i>
H. P. Thornton	ATLANTA Philip C. Bangs, 23 Kensington Rd., Avondale Estates, Ga.
George W. Pierce	BOSTON Melville Eastham, 30 State St., Cambridge, Mass.
L. Grant Hector	BUFFALO-NIAGARA E. C. Waud, 235 Huntington Ave., Buffalo, N. Y.
H. E. Kranz	CHICAGO J. H. Miller, Jewell Electrical Inst. Co., 1650 Walnut St., Chicago, Ill.
R. H. Langley	CINCINNATI W. W. Boes, 622 Broadway, Cincinnati, Ohio
D. Schregardus	CLEVELAND C. H. Shipman, 14805 Ardenall Ave., East Cleveland, Ohio
Q. A. Brackett	CONNECTICUT VALLEY F. C. Beekley, 96 S. Main St., W. Hartford, Conn.
A. B. Buchanan	DETROIT W. R. Hoffman, 615 West Lafayette Blvd., Detroit, Mich.
T. C. Bowles	LOS ANGELES Charles S. Breeding, 1187 N. Normandie Ave. Hollywood, Calif.
Pendleton E. Lehde	NEW ORLEANS Anton A. Schiele, 1812 Masonic Temple, New Orleans, La.
J. C. Van Horn	PHILADELPHIA <i>Acting Secretary</i> E. T. Darlington, 2848 Idaho Road, Camden, N. J.
A. J. Buzzard	PITTSBURGH C. F. Donbar, 233 South Starr Ave., Bellevue, Penna.
E. C. Karker	ROCHESTER A. R. Barfield, Valley Appliances, Inc., Rochester, N. Y.
Donald K. Lippincott	SAN FRANCISCO Paul R. Fenner Custom House, San Francisco, Calif.
Austin V. Eastman	SEATTLE Abner R. Willson, 8055—14th Ave., N. E., Seattle, Wash.
V. G. Smith	TORONTO G. E. Pipe, 90 Chestnut St., Toronto, Canada
C. B. Jolliffe	WASHINGTON J. B. Brady, Ouray Bldg., Washington, D. C.

GEOGRAPHICAL LOCATION OF MEMBERS ELECTED MARCH 5, 1930

Transferred to the Member grade

Dist. of Columbia	Washington, 3221 Connecticut Ave.	Diamond, Harry
Australia	Brisbane, Queensland, Broadcasting Station 4QG.	Bardin, W. F.
England	London EC4, 123/5 Queen Victoria St.	Gambrell, H. W.
South Africa	Natal, Durban, Durban Broadcasting Station, Municipal Building	Allaway, G. N. P.

Elected to the Member grade

New York	New York City, 106-7th Ave.	Coln, Hugo
Ohio	Cincinnati, 1027 Valley Lane, Avondale	Church, John F.
Pennsylvania	Swissvale, 7333 Whipple St.	Zworykin, V. K.
Virginia	Quantico, Marine Barracks	Moriarty, James F.
England	North Wembley, Middlesex, Shrublands, 7 Paxford Rd.	Lane, C. F.

Elected to the Associate grade

California	Los Angeles, 708 N. Kenmore Rd.	Alford, Andrew
	Los Angeles, 820 W. 30th St.	Berkoll, G. F.
	Los Angeles, 1653-3rd Ave.	Day, Ralph P.
	Oakland, 596-58th St.	Zimmer, H. F.
Connecticut	New Haven, 280 Whalley Ave., Apt. 3	Messer, H. G.
	Torrington, 85 Prescott St.	Alexas, Joseph
Dist. of Columbia	Washington, 1745-18th St., N.W.	McNallan, Wilbur T.
	Washington, 1300 Gee St., N.W.	Roberts, Matthew H.
Florida	Jacksonville, Radio Station WJAX	Canepa, John M.
Illinois	Chicago, 1735 Washburne Ave.	Carney, Louis P.
	Chicago, 2625 N. Rockwell St.	Smith, Paul S.
	East St. Louis, 3015 Regent Pl.	Reiss, Paul E.
Indiana	Albion, 115 N. Elm St.	Ravenscroft, Carl E.
	Kendallville, 533 N. Wood St.	Jones, R. B.
	Shenandoah	Rapp, John C.
Iowa	Bastrop, Moeller's Radio Shop	Moeller, Jerome H.
Louisiana	Bangor, 64 Ohio St.	Mullaney, John R.
Maine	Cambridge, 19 Forest St.	Briggs, T. H., IV
Massachusetts	Gloucester, 91 Main St.	Adams, John C.
	New Bedford, 77 Jovette St.	Blanchet, Ovila J.
	Somerville, 34 Flint St.	Balderson, James R.
	Watertown, 60 Church St.	Salvini, David K.
Michigan	Ann Arbor, 1020 Olivia Ave.	Williams, N. H.
	Detroit, 1820 Helen Ave.	Howey, Wm. J.
	Flint, 614 Pierson St.	Raab, Edwin F.
	Grand Rapids, 16½ Hall St., S.E.	Blett, E. B.
	Muskegon, 119 Irwin Ave.	Retzlaff, K. C.
	Sault Ste. Marie, 600 South St.	Smith, Rex B.
Minnesota	Minneapolis, 3832 Elliot Ave.	Braum, Cyril M.
	Minneapolis, 531 Walnut St., S.E.	Kallio, Wilho
Nebraska	Omaha, 3071 S. 32nd St.	Veverka, R. E.
New Jersey	Cliffwood, Bell Telephone Labs., Box No. 31	Beck, Alfred C.
	Camden, 2222-46th St.	Greene, Warren L.
	East Orange, 25 Lawton St.	Coxey, E. J.
	Irvington, 1010 Clinton Ave.	Newton, Oscar A.
	Newark, 32-3rd Ave.	Erstad, A. J.
	Newark, 68 Astor St.	Kuribaum, Georg
	Newark, 329 Walnut St.	Golden, Frank
	Newark, 459 High St., Apt. 43-R50	Tasker, J. M.
	Penns Grove, 28 Ziegler Trust	Douglass, Wm. A.
	Plainfield, 318 Central Ave.	Allcutt, E. B.
	Raton	Schulze, R. L.
New Mexico	Buffalo, 318 Elm St.	Hayes, Wilber A.
New York	Buffalo, 740 S. Division St.	Windrath, M. B.
	Buffalo, 740 S. Division St.	Windrath, R. V.
	Jackson Hts., L.I., 41-40—77th St.	Beisel, Keith
	Jamaica, L.I., 146-59—107th St.	Roth, Louis H.
	New York City, 2 S. Pinehurst Ave.	Brainson, Wm.
	New York City, 463 West St.	Coles, Francis A.
	New York City, 463 West St.	Plummer, W. E.
	New York City, 3120 Hull Ave.	Roth, Wm.
	New York City, 20 W. 40th St.	Sperry, A. T.
	Rochester, 3 Stebbins St.	Hartmetz, F. P.
	Rochester, 311 Wilkins St.	Kimmel, K. A.
	Troy, 24 Cortlandt St.	Herman, S. P.

Geographical Location of Members Elected March 5, 1930

New York (cont.)	Utica, 2814 Dearborn Pl.	Gray, John E.
	Utica, 11 Clark Pl.	States, E. F.
	Woodside, L.I., 50-06 Bliss St.	Carreau, E. L.
Ohio	Ashtabula, 13 Orchard Ave.	Cornell, James F.
	Cleveland, 947 Leader Bldg.	Sponagle, C. E.
	Dayton, 615 West Circle Dr.	Mohn, Olaf
	Dayton, 30 W. Beechwood Ave.	Retter, C. T.
	Norwood, 5210 Warren Ave.	Willging, L. F.
	Portsmouth, Wheeling Steel Corp.	Byers, James C.
Oklahoma	Springfield, United Reproducers Corp.	Kesheimer, E. V.
	Hugo, 402 E. Lowery St.	Wright, A. J., Jr.
Pennsylvania	Oklahoma City, 706 W Second	Roberts, C. E.
	Erie, 1853 E. Lake Rd.	Metzner, M. W.
	Philadelphia, 4447 Baker St., Manayunk	Merman, J. C.
	Philadelphia, 5553 N. Lawrence St.	Nagle, John F.
	West Philadelphia, 5006 Willows Ave.	Caulton, C. O.
Tennessee	Reading, 940 Elm St.	Liesman, F. J.
	Trooper	Zern, R. T.
Texas	Memphis, 2190 Harbert Ave.	Montgomery, Wm. C., Jr.
	Corpus Christi, Radio Station KGFI, Plaza Hotel Studio	Lockhart, Hildred B.
Virginia	Dallas, 317 W. 8th St.	Childers, Horace W.
	Dallas, 612 S. Willomet St.	Howard, G. M.
	Dallas, 5647 East Side Ave.	Mitchell, John P.
	El Paso, Box No. 73, Station A	Talbot, E. P.
	Houston, P. O. Box No. 1705	Van Orsdale, A. A.
	Rutland, 127 Lincoln Ave.	Westeren, S. E.
	Dumbarton, R.F.D. 1, Box No. 204, Wilson Ave.	Eubank, R. N.
	Richmond, 2315-3rd Ave.	Woods, David C.
	Spokane, 515 E. Ermiba Ave.	Rankin, R. C.
	Shorewood, 367 Newton Ave.	Gellerup, D. W.
Washington	Stevens Point, 228 McCulloch St.	Spindler, E. R.
	Wisconsin	Cordova, U. S. Naval Radio Station
Argentina	Buenos Aires, Cia. Internacional de Radio, Avenida Roque Saenz, Pena 501	O'Reilly, C.
Australia	Sydney, N.S.W., So. Radio Eng. Co., 363 ^a Oxford St.	Israel, B. F.
Canada	Edmonton, Alberta, 10434-69th Ave.	Field, George S.
	Edmonton, Alberta, 10434-69th Ave.	Field, Percy A.
	Kingston, Ont., 262 Frontenac St.	Little, Willis C.
	Montreal, Que., 4221 Decarie Blvd.	Kelly, F. J.
	Montreal, Que., 523 Oxford Ave.	Weese, R.
	Montreal, Que., 986 Cote des Neiges Rd.	Zavitz, R. D.
	Toronto, Ont., 15 Churchill Ave.	Killen, Morris
China	Hongkong, Sam Cheong Co., 40 Wing On St.	Wu, F. T. S.
	England	Bradford, Yorks, 57 Whitehall Rd.
Japan	Epping, Essex, 26 Bury Rd.	Wilcock, A. E.
	London, Aldwych, Internat. Standard Elec. Corp., Connaught House	Baskett, Fred J.
	London, Aldwych W.C.1, Internat. Standard Elec. Corp., Connaught House	Hamilton, D.
	London, Aldwych W.C.2, Internat. Tel. and Tel. Labs., Inc., Connaught House	Pedersen, G. V. C.
	London, "Castelnau," 189 Gunnersbury Lane, Acton W.3	Burgess, A. G.
	Sheffield, 286 Handsworth Rd.	Booler, Ernest
	Wembley, Middlesex, "Cottrell," 3 Georgian Court	Hawkeswood, A. E.
	Naval Station, M. B.	Francis, O. T.
	Honolulu, Box No. 2993	Macartney, A. Roy
	Sapporo, Hosokyoku Tsukisappu Hosojō	Wataru, Sugiyama
Elected to the Junior grade		
Illinois	Springfield, 1844 S. 15th St.	Numrick, Fred
	Iowa	Monticello
Massachusetts	Lowell, 482 Westford St.	Marte, Chas. W.
	Somerville, 96 Temple Rd.	MacInnis, James R.
Missouri	Kansas City, 3821 Michigan	Joyce, G. B.
Nebraska	Lincoln, 1844 Washington	Kleinkauf, J. D.
New Jersey	Whippany, Bell Telephone Labs.	Bradford, C. I.
New York	Utica, 303 Richardson Ave.	Hart, Herbert
	Ohio	Cleveland, 1973 W. 52nd St.



APPLICATIONS FOR MEMBERSHIP

Applications for transfer or election to the various grades of membership have been received from the persons listed below, and have been approved by the Committee on Admissions. Members objecting to transfer or election of any of these applicants should communicate with the Secretary on or before April 30, 1930. These applicants will be considered by the Board of Direction at its May 7th meeting.

For Transfer to the Member grade

California	Palo Alto, 430 Kingsley Ave.	Scofield, Philip F.
Ohio	Cincinnati, 2701 Stratford Ave.	Bussard, E. J. H.
	Cincinnati, 597 Terrace Ave.	Chambers, Joseph A.
	Cincinnati, 341 Hearne Ave.	Israel, Dorman D.
	Cincinnati, 2617 University Court.	Kilgour, C. E.
	Cincinnati, Crosley Radio Corp.	Peterson, Chas. W.
Pennsylvania	East Pittsburgh, Westinghouse Elec. and Mfg. Co.	Hitchcock, Richard C.

For Election to the Member grade

New York	New York City, American Tel. and Tel. Co.	Cowan, Frank A.
	New York City, 463 West St.	Peterson, Eugene
Ohio	Dayton, Radio Laboratory, Wright Field.	Eaton, W. G.
Germany	Berlin-Siemensstadt, Halakesteig 5.	Lübcke, Ernst

For Election to the Associate grade

Arkansas	Little Rock, 1809 Park Ave.	Gunn, L. C.
	Little Rock, 423 Johnson St.	Summers, J. O.
California	Glendale, 200 W. Garfield Ave.	Kepler, O. L.
	Hollywood, 5927 Franklin Ave.	Masley, Paul
	Long Beach, 216 Laughlin Ave.	Cooke, Willard H.
	Los Angeles, P. O. Box No. 1922.	Bryan, William J.
	Los Angeles, 1627 S. Hayworth Ave.	Cook, Frank W.
	Los Angeles, 203 S. Normandie Ave.	Davies, A. W.
	Los Angeles, 2123 Holmby Ave.	Farran, Dean
	Los Angeles, 211 No. Ave. 63.	Keith, Harold M.
	Los Angeles, 3760 Kelton Ave.	Reed, Jess M.
	Mayfield, 685 Oberlin St.	Odell, Carl H.
	Palo Alto, 1828 Webster St.	Redeker, Ivan M.
	Palo Alto, 187 Bryant.	Ritland, Hubert O.
	Palo Alto, 559 Cowper St.	Storm, Hans Otto
	Pasadena, 1307 N. Wilson Ave.	Cook, Ronald P.
	San Francisco, Radio KFVI-Radio Entertainments, Inc. 1182 Market St.	Laker, Edwin F.
	San Jose, 536 S. 8th St.	Anderson, Jack L.
Connecticut	Bridgeport, Dictaphone Corp., 375 Howard Ave.	Norton, L. D.
	Danielson, 193 Main St.	La Bossiere, L. E.
Dist. of Columbia	West Hartford, P. O. Box No. 16.	Pratt, Waldo Todd
	Washington, 1619 R St., N. W.	Elliott, C. E.
	Washington, Tudor Hall, Apt. No. 604.	Kampf, E. P.
	Washington, National Press Building.	Loucks, Philip G.
	Washington, 4334 Chesapeake St., N. W.	Minnich, W. H.
	Washington, 4408 Harrison St.	Reynolds, W. W.
Florida	Hialeah, P. O. Box No. 3.	Meggers, A. L.
	St. Petersburg, 4210-21st St. North.	Link, Louis J.
	Tampa, 907 Florida Ave.	Reynolds, Frank J.
Georgia	Savannah, SS Shickshiny, c/o South Atlantic SS Co.	Szabo, Paul
Illinois	Champaign, 1004 S. 6th St.	Jacklin, N. L.
	Chicago, 5938 W. Lake St.	Dodge, Richard M.
	Chicago, 3307 Warren Ave.	Dymond, Clifton
	Chicago, 1044 Sheridan Rd.	Hix, Clarence M.
	Chicago, 7255 Phillips Ave.	McNeill, Allison
	Chicago, 692 Irving Pk. Blvd.	Stukey, L. I.
	Decatur, 1473 E. Wood St.	Maxwell, M. L.
	Evanston, 2330 Ridgeway Ave.	Read, Oliver
	Plano, P. O. Box No. 551.	Hendren, Kenneth E.
Indiana	Angola, 408 W. Park Ave.	Insulander, C. H. M.
	Angola, 515 W. Maumee.	Johnson, H. F.
	Angola, 414 S. Wayne St.	Rubenstein, Peter
	Evansville, 2 E. Powell Ave.	Bender, J. C.
	Indianapolis, 60 N. Bolton Ave.	Reager, A. M.
	Marion, 329 N. Washington St.	Lemm, F. L.
	Rushville, P. O. Box No. 264.	Russell, M. A.
	Red Oak, 308-A Coolbaugh St.	Coonley, F. A. W.
Kansas	Milford, P. O. Box No. 112.	Eggers, E. L.
Louisiana	New Orleans, c/o Radioman Corp., 512 St. Peter.	Payne, Kenneth

Applications for Membership

Maryland	Baltimore, 108 S. Monastery Ave.	Clark, L. W.	
	Baltimore, WCAO, 844 N. Howard St.	Harris, C. C.	
	Baltimore, 2902 Presbury St.	Monteith, J. W.	
	Baltimore, 3602 Greenmount Ave.	Nopper, C. G.	
	Baltimore, 809 N. Payson St.	Schultz, James	
Massachusetts	Laurel, 609 Fairlawn Ave.	Poist, H. J.	
	Arlington, 64 Spring Ave.	Morrison, E. J. W.	
	Brookline, 376 Clinton Rd.	Fitts, L. W.	
	Fall River, 135 Franklin St.	Walsh, P. S.	
	Salem, 12 Summit Ave.	Cooke, Walter D.	
	Salem, Apt. 3, Temple Ct., Lynde St.	Hamilton, H. G., Jr.	
	Somerville, 246 Broadway	Parker, W. H. Jr.	
Michigan	South Boston, 254 C St.	Lucia, S. E.	
	Detroit, Michigan Bell Telephone Co.	Dicks, A. W.	
	Detroit, 2967 W. Gd. Blvd.	Dow, Larry W.	
	Detroit, 615 West Lafayette, Blvd.	McPhillips, F. A.	
	Detroit, 234 West Grand Blvd.	Mishler, W. T. E.	
	Detroit, 8545 Dumbarton, Rd., Apt. 101	Pepin, R. H.	
	Detroit, 415 E. Congress	Withington, G. M.	
	Ferndale, 1424 Pinecrest Dr.	Elliott, John E.	
	Jackson, 912 W. Michigan Ave.	Mountjoy, Garrard	
	Saginaw, 1114 N. Webster St.	Gledhill, H. L.	
	Minneapolis, 5253-28th Ave. South	Fleming, M. N.	
Minnesota	Meridian, 2518-16th St.	Tanner, D. W.	
	Almonesson, P. O. Box No. 54	Urian, J. D.	
Mississippi	Camden, RCA-Victor Co.	Massa, Frank	
	Collingswood, 259 New Jersey Ave.	Turner, Alfred H.	
	Haddon Heights, 1601 Sycamore St.	Briggs, J. A.	
New Jersey	Hoboken, 214 Bloomfield St.	Chambers, James	
	Long Branch, 688 Broadway	Marks, W. S. Jr.	
	Lyndhurst, 201 Fern Ave.	Kaufers, W. C. Jr.	
	Oceanport, Signal Corps Labs., Ft. Monmouth.	Slonaker, L. V.	
New York	Oceanport, Ft. Monmouth	Wilson, R. A.	
	Paterson, 299 Pacific St.	Frank, E. W.	
	Trenton, 1265 Nottingham Way	Cannon, Thomas	
	Brooklyn, 135 Parkside Ave., Apt. A-4	Abbott, Donald	
	Brooklyn, 837-60th St.	Gabrielson, H. M.	
	Brooklyn, 1151-75th St.	Hintz, R. T.	
	Brooklyn, 157 Butler St.	Knutson, H. C. I.	
	Brooklyn, 7410 Ridge Blvd.	Misterly, F. S.	
	Brooklyn, 528-76th St.	Phelan, T. H.	
	Brooklyn, 910 Cortelyou Rd.	Shiepe, E. M.	
	Buffalo, 752 Elm St.	Andriatch, N. D.	
	Buffalo, 152 Goodrich St.	Bickelman, J. E.	
	Buffalo, 215 Northland Ave.	Campbell, R. H.	
	Ithaca, 206 Willard Way	Bostwick, W. E.	
	New York City, 463 West St.	Bostwick, L. G.	
	New York City, 881 Irvine St., Bronz.	Harrison, Harry	
	New York City, 729 Seventh Ave.	Hopfenberg, J. A.	
	New York City, 720 W. 173rd St.	Infeld, I. A.	
	New York City, 210-11th Ave.	Jean, Robert P.	
	New York City, 664 W. 161st St.	Lyons, Walter	
	New York City, 195 Broadway, Rm. 1630	McCann, T. A.	
	New York City, 75 E. 104th St.	Prilik, Max.	
	New York City, 2020 Valentine Ave., the Bronx	Roberts, Horace Jr.	
	New York City, Electric Testing Labs., 80th St. and East End Ave.	Thompson, Gordon	
	New York City, 1973 Arthur Ave., the Bronx	Wachtell, J. J.	
	Rockville Center, L. I., 161 Lawson Ave.	Fluharty, W. G.	
	North Carolina	Schenectady, 2 River Rd., Bldg. No. 37, General Electric Co.	Fulton, R.
		Schenectady, Union College, E. E. Dept.	Palermo, A. J.
		Scotia, 178 Charles St.	Cummings, Alan P.
Southampton L. I., 109 Toylesome Lane		Millar, J. Z.	
Syracuse, 1903 Midland Ave.		Persett, H. A.	
Saluda, P. O. Box No. 322		Johnson, R. L.	
Cincinnati, 935 Woodlawn Ave.		Bird, J. R.	
Cincinnati, Crosley Radio Corp.		Glessner, J. M.	
Cincinnati, 3401 Colerain Ave.		Goheen, Richard C.	
Cincinnati, 1666 Westmoreland		Grogan, L. E.	
Cincinnati, 2727 N. Bend Rd.		Leibrook, Brice	
Cincinnati, 457 Riddle Rd.		Myers, Wm. H.	
Cleveland, c/o B. W. Smith, 2019 Euclid Ave.		Eames, A. M. Jr.	
Cleveland, c/o Cleveland Airport		Smith, W. L.	
Cleveland, 750 Prospect Ave.		Welman, V. A.	
Ohio	Cleveland Heights, 2489 Overlook Rd., Suite 202	Evans, Lee C.	
	Copley, Route 1, P. O. Box No. 31	McKim, R. W.	
	Dayton, 3 Maple Dr., Southern Hills	Dally, Roy	
	Greenville, 532 Broadway	Taylor, Otho E.	
	Milford, P. O. Box No. 266	Thropp, C. H.	
	Oklahoma City, 103 West 13th St.	Arnold, R. W.	
	Chester, 840 E. 14th St.	Miles, E. E.	
	Indiana, 1601 W. Philadelphia St.	Beck, H. J.	
	Munnhall, 419 Ninth Ave.	Critchlow, E. F.	
	Oil City, P. O. Box No. 318	Rasmussen, Robert	

Applications for Membership

Pennsylvania (cont.)	Philadelphia, c/o Leeds and Northrup Co.	Tarpley, R. E.
	Pittsburgh, 714 Plaza Bldg.	Herlihy, W. J.
	Pottsville, 426 Adams St.	McAllister, R. H.
	Wilkinsburg, Apt. 5, Carnahan Bldg.	Dieffenbacher, C. C.
South Dakota	Yankton, 711 West 4th St.	Bowyer, R. A., Jr.
Texas	Beaumont, Sun Oil Co., P. O. Drawer 790	Greene, H. Bettis
Virginia	Norfolk, 319 W. 32nd St.	Plavidal, Louis
	Quantico, Marine Barracks	Hawthorne, W. G.
Washington	Seattle, 458 Skinner Bldg.	Brown, H. M.
	Seattle, 458 Skinner Bldg.	Hurlbut, H. C.
	Seattle, 1726 Broadway	Ramsey, C. B.
Wisconsin	Milwaukee, 989 Cramer St.	Wendler, E. H.
Wyoming	Parco, Parco Hotel	Anderson, J. S.
Australia	Rockdale, 28 Rawson St.	Martin, A. F.
	Darlinghurst, Sydney, 19 Craigend St.	Phillips, F. A.
Belgium	Brussels, 54 Rue Gustave Fuss	Delvigne, André
Canada	Montreal, Que., 1184 Cote des Neiges Rd.	Chauvin, S. B.
	Montreal, Que., 637 Craig St.	Richardson, J. S.
	Toronto, Ont., 157 Hope St.	Cooper, J. R.
	Toronto, Ont., 42 Maitland St.	Ruedy, Richard
	Toronto, Ont., 117 Ennerdale Rd.	Swabe, H. C.
Ceylon	Colombo, "Vijitha," Manning Place, Wellawatte	Abeydeera, Alfred
Chile	Santiago, Casilla 828	Sazie, Enrique H.
China	Shanghai, Electric Service Corp., 20 Nanking Rd.	Fedotoff, L. N.
England	Chelmsford, "Chelmsford College," Arbour Lane	Stamford, N. C.
	Doncaster, Yorkshire, 36, Nether Hall Rd.	Brenchley, C. C.
	Hull, 46, Park Rd.	Wheeler, C. H. J.
	Kingston Hill, Surrey No. 1, Dickerage Rd., Coombe Lane	Hermes, L. W.
	London S. W. 1, 20 St. Georges Rd.	Rees, H. G. P.
	Manchester, 8 The Grove, Whitworth Park	Handcock, F. V.
	Squirrel's Heath, Essex, "Heath View," Park Rd.	Fisher-Luttrell, Wm.
Federated Malay States	Kuala Lumpur, Engineering Branch, Posts and Tels	MacIntosh, James
Holland	Amsterdam—O, Ooste-park 58	Rodrigues, de Miranda
Ireland	County Antrim, Antrim, The Manse	Crook, W. M.
Japan	Sapporo, Tsukissapu Sending Station JOIK	Koshikawa, A.
	Kumamoto City, Shinyu Broadcast Station	Shigeru, Inada
Peru	Lima, c/o All America Cables, Inc., Casilla 2336	Anderson, L. N.
	Lima, c/o All America Cables, Inc.	Delbord, Y. L.

For Election to the Junior grade

California	Berkeley, 1001 Oxford St.	Heinrich, Mortimer
Dist. of Columbia	Washington, 1115-12th St. N. W. Apt. 3	Adams, T. O.
Georgia	Macon, 407 Napier Ave.	Breedlove, B. H.
Massachusetts	Allston, 41 Aldie St.	Foth, E. A. W.
	Worcester, 6 Fox St.	Gruzin, Herman A.
New Jersey	Gloucester, 806 Somerset St.	Hayes, E. D.
New York	Niagara Falls, 2512 Pine Ave.	La Mantia, P. V.
	Staten Island, 423 Jersey St.	De Ross, L. A.
Pennsylvania	Philadelphia, 1621 Christian St.	Tucci, T. J.



OFFICERS AND BOARD OF DIRECTION, 1930

(Terms expire January 1, 1931, except as otherwise noted)

President

LEE DE FOREST

Vice-President

A. G. LEE

Treasurer

MELVILLE EASTHAM

Secretary

HAROLD P. WESTMAN

Editor

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH

Managers

J. H. DELLINGER

L. M. HULL

A. F. VAN DYCK

R. A. HEISING

R. H. MANSON

ARTHUR BATCHELLER

(Serving until Jan. 1, 1932)

C. M. JANSKY, JR.

J. V. L. HOGAN

(Serving until Jan. 1, 1932)

(Serving until Jan. 1, 1933)

R. H. MARRIOTT

(Serving until Jan. 1, 1933)

Junior Past Presidents

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH

A. HOYT TAYLOR

Board of Editors

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*

STUART BALLANTINE

G. W. PICKARD

RALPH BATCHER

L. E. WHITTEMORE

J. W. HORTON

W. WILSON

COMMITTEES OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, 1930

Committee on Meetings and Papers

J. W. HORTON, *Chairman*

Theory, Circuit and General

R. F. FIELD

Generating Apparatus and Theory

L. P. WHEELER

Receiving Apparatus and Theory

H. A. WHEELER

Transmission through Space

G. W. KENRICK

Measurements and Standards

C. B. JOLLIFFE

Vacuum Tubes and Thermionics

W. C. WHITE

Aerials and Aerial Systems

G. C. SOUTHWORTH

Acoustics and Audio Frequencies

IRVING WOLFF

Aircraft Radio

F. M. RYAN

Stations and Operation, Broadcasting

R. M. MORRIS

Television

DELBERT E. REPLOGLE

Picture Transmission

R. H. RANGER

Miscellaneous Communication Sys-

tems H. A. AFFEL

Miscellaneous Technical Papers

K. S. VAN DYKE

Historical, Book Reviews, Bibliogra-

phies, S. S. KIRBY

Radio Communication Systems

T. A. M. CRAVEN

Radio Manufacturing

G. G. THOMAS

Members at Large

ELLERY W. STONE

HARRY SADENWATER

Committees of the Institute—(Continued)

Committee on Admissions

R. A. HEISING, *Chairman*

C. N. ANDERSON
ARTHUR BATCHELLER
C. M. JANSKY, JR.
A. G. LEE
GEORGE LEWIS

R. H. MARRIOTT
E. R. SHUTE
J. S. SMITH
A. F. VAN DYCK
Chairman of each Section, *ex officio*

Committee on Institute Awards

W. G. CADY, *Chairman*

STUART BALLANTINE
RALPH BOWN

A. N. GOLDSMITH
A. HOYT TAYLOR

Committee on Bibliography

B. E. SHACKELFORD, *Chairman*

M. C. BATSEL
W. G. CADY
J. H. DELLINGER
MELVILLE EASTHAM
G. W. GIBBS
C. B. JOLLIFFE
F. H. KROGER
R. H. LANGLEY
R. H. MANSON
J. O. MAUBORGNE

DONALD MCNICOL
G. W. PICKARD
E. R. SHUTE
H. M. TURNER
A. F. VAN DYCK
H. A. WHEELER
L. P. WHEELER
W. C. WHITE
L. E. WHITEMORE
W. WILSON

Committee on Broadcasting

L. M. HULL, *Chairman*

ARTHUR BATCHELLER
P. A. GREENE
RAYMOND GUY
J. V. L. HOGAN

C. W. HORN
R. H. MARRIOTT
E. L. NELSON

Committee on Constitution and Laws

R. H. MARRIOTT, *Chairman*

ARTHUR BATCHELLER
MELVILLE EASTHAM
W. G. H. FINCH
H. E. HALLBERG

R. A. HEISING
G. W. PICKARD
H. A. ZEAMANS

Committee on Membership

I. S. COGGESHALL, *Chairman*

W. H. BELTZ
F. R. BRICK
W. W. BROWN
BEVERLY DUDLEY
H. C. GAWLER
F. A. KOLSTER
S. R. MONTCALM

A. F. MURRAY
M. E. PACKMAN
C. R. ROWE
J. E. SMITH
J. C. STROEBEL, JR.
A. M. TROGNER
Secretary of each Section, *ex officio*

Committee on New York Programs

R. H. RANGER, *Chairman*

AUSTIN BAILEY
H. C. GAWLER

F. M. RYAN
E. R. SHUTE

Committees of the Institute — (Continued)

Committee on Nominations

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*

ARTHUR BATCHELLER
W. G. CADY
MELVILLE EASTHAM

R. H. MANSON
DONALD MCNICOL

Committee on Publicity

W. G. H. FINCH, *Chairman*

H. W. BAUKAT
ZEH BOUCK
C. E. BUTTERFIELD
O. E. DUNLAP
FRED EHLERT
A. H. HALLORAN
R. D. HEINL

LOYD JACQUET
A. H. LYNCH
J. F. J. MAHER
A. H. MORSE
U. B. ROSS
J. G. UZMANN
W. K. WING

Committee on Sections

AUSTIN BAILEY, *Chairman*

L. A. BRIGGS
D. H. GAGE
V. M. GRAHAM
C. W. HORN
R. H. LANGLEY

A. F. MURRAY
A. M. PATIENCE
B. E. SHACKELFORD
Chairman of each Section, ex officio

Committee on Standardization

J. H. DELLINGER, *Chairman*

WILSON AULL
M. C. BATSEL
W. R. BLAIR
E. L. BOWLES
C. E. BRIGHAM
E. L. CHAFFEE
L. M. CLEMENT
T. A. M. CRAVEN
T. McL. DAVIS
E. T. DICKEY
W. E. DOWNEY
CARL DREHER
H. W. DREYER
ALLEN DU MONT
C. P. EDWARDS
S. W. EDWARDS
P. H. EVANS
GENERAL FERRIE
H. A. FREDERICK
A. N. GOLDSMITH
W. E. HOLLAND
C. B. JOLLIFFE

GEORGE LEWIS
R. H. MANSON
ALEXANDER MEISSNER
C. B. MIRICK
GINO MONTEFINALE
R. M. MORRIS
E. L. NELSON
L. G. PACENT
HARADEN PRATT
D. E. REPLOGE
J. L. REYNOLDS
H. B. RICHMOND
C. E. RICKARD
A. F. ROSE
N. H. SLAUGHTER
H. M. TURNER
K. B. WARNER
W. C. WHITE
DONALD WHITING
L. E. WHITTEMORE
C. E. WILLIAMS
HIDETSUGU YAGI

Committees of the Institute—(Continued)

Committees Operating Under the Committee on Standardization

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE NO. 1, RADIO RECEIVERS AND PARTS

E. T. DICKEY, *Chairman*

WILSON AULL	V. M. GRAHAM
C. E. BRIGHAM	K. W. JARVIS
C. M. BURRILL	R. H. LANGLEY
G. C. CROM, JR.	W. A. MACDONALD
HARRY DIAMOND	F. X. RETTENMEYER
MALCOLM FERRIS	

Subcommittee on Marine and Direction-Finding Receivers

F. A. KOLSTER, *Chairman*

T. McL. DAVIS	J. L. PRESTON
W. H. MURPHY	G. P. SHANDY

Subcommittee on Aircraft Receivers

V. M. GRAHAM, *Chairman*

S. E. ANDERSON	W. H. MURPHY
T. McL. DAVIS	H. O. PETERSON
HARRY DIAMOND	

Subcommittee on High-Frequency Receivers

H. H. BEVERAGE	H. M. LEWIS
T. McL. DAVIS	F. A. POLKINGHAM
J. J. LAMB	

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE NO. 2, RADIO TRANSMITTERS AND ANTENNAS

HARADEN PRATT, *Chairman*

WILLIAM WILSON, *Vice-Chairman*

A. B. CHAMBERLAIN	F. G. KEAR
T. A. M. CRAVEN	J. J. LAMB
B. R. CUMMINGS	D. G. LITTLE
L. F. FULLER	R. M. WILMOTTE
H. E. HALLBORG	

Subcommittee on Nomenclature, Symbols, and Definitions

T. A. M. CRAVEN, *Chairman*

J. H. BARRON, JR.	J. L. PRESTON
J. J. LAMB	R. M. WILMOTTE
D. G. LITTLE	WILLIAM WILSON

Subcommittee on Methods of Testing Apparatus, Equipment, Devices and Materials Used in Radio Transmitters and Antennas

WILLIAM WILSON, *Chairman*

B. R. CUMMINGS	F. G. KEAR
L. F. FULLER	D. G. LITTLE
H. E. HALLBORG	

Subcommittee on the Establishment of Provisions for Safety of Operating and Other Personnel in Relation to Radio Transmitting Equipment

H. E. HALLBORG, *Chairman*

A. B. CHAMBERLAIN	L. F. FULLER
T. A. M. CRAVEN	

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE NO. 3, VACUUM TUBES

C. B. JOLLIFFE, *Chairman*

STUART BALLANTINE	M. J. KELLY, JR.
E. L. CHAFFEE	S. M. KINTNER
H. F. DART	GEORGE LEWIS
F. H. ENGEL	C. G. McILWRAITH
D. E. HARNETT	J. C. WARNER
J. W. HORTON	R. M. WISE

Committees of the Institute—(Continued)

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE No. 4, ELECTRO-ACOUSTIC DEVICES

H. A. FREDERICK, *Chairman*

K. C. BLACK	R. H. MANSON
L. G. BOSTWICK	D. C. MILLER
L. M. CLEMENT	S. V. PERRY
MELVILLE EASTHAM	W. P. POWERS
C. R. HANNA	G. W. STEWART
P. R. HEYL	A. G. D. WEST
E. W. KELLOGG	H. A. WHEELER
A. E. KENNELLY	IRVING WOLFF
F. W. KRANZ	A. G. ZIMMERMAN

INSTITUTE REPRESENTATIVES IN OTHER
TECHNICAL BODIES

Council of the American Association for the Advancement of Science..... J. C. JENSEN
Radio Advisory Committee, Bureau of Standards, Department of Commerce..... L. M. HULL
Radio Broadcasting Committee, American Engineering Council..... MELVILLE EASTHAM
Committee on Aeronautic Radio Research, Department of Commerce..... F. M. RYAN

AMERICAN STANDARDS ASSOCIATION

Sectional Committee on Radio L. E. WHITTEMORE, L. M. HULL, J. V. L. HOGAN
Sectional Committee on Electric Wiring and Apparatus in Relation to Fire Hazard
(National Electric Code)..... DONALD MCNICOL
Sectional Committee on Electrical Installations on Shipboard..... J. V. L. HOGAN
Sectional Committee on Scientific Symbols and Abbreviations..... A. E. KENNELLY
Subcommittee on Electrical Abbreviations—Including Radio.....
..... A. E. KENNELLY, L. E. WHITTEMORE (alternate)
Sectional Committee on Standards for Drawings and Drafting Room Practices
..... L. E. WHITTEMORE
Sectional Committee on Definitions of Technical Terms..... HARADEN PRATT



ARTHUR F. VAN DYCK
Member, Board of Direction, 1930

Arthur F. Van Dyck was born at Stuyvesant Falls, N. Y., May 20, 1891. He was graduated from Sheffield Scientific School of Yale University with Ph. B. degree in 1911.

From 1907 to 1910 he operated both at sea in the commercial service and on land as an amateur.

After graduation he was engaged in research work at Brant Rock, Mass., for the National Electric Signalling Company until 1912. His next connection was in the Research Department of the Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company at East Pittsburgh, Pa. Leaving there in 1914, he became instructor in electrical engineering at the Carnegie Institute of Technology. In 1917 he became an Expert Radio Aide for the U. S. Navy and was stationed at the New York Navy Yard and at the Navy Department in Washington until 1919, when he joined the Marconi Company at Aldene, N. J., in charge of the engineering department. From 1920 to 1922 he had charge of radio receiver design for the General Electric Company in Schenectady, N. Y. In 1922 he became associated with the Radio Corporation of America, later the Radio-Victor Corporation, as manager of the engineering and test department in 1929. At present he is with the Radio Corporation of America in the Patent and License Department.

Mr. Van Dyck is a charter Associate member of the Institute, having joined in 1913. He became a Member of the Institute in 1918 and a Fellow in 1925. He has been a member of the Committee on Admissions since 1929, and was in standardization work as the Chairman of the Technical Committee on Radio Transmitters and Receivers under the American Standards Association procedure from 1925 to 1929. He has been a member of the Underwriters' Laboratories Radio Industry Conference since 1925. In the U. S. Naval Reserve he holds the rank of Lieutenant Commander.

INSTITUTE NEWS AND RADIO NOTES

March Meeting of Board of Directions

A meeting of the Board of Direction was held at 3 P.M. on March 5, 1930, the following being present: Lee de Forest, president; Melville Eastham, treasurer; Alfred N. Goldsmith, editor; Arthur Batcheller, Raymond A. Heising, Lewis M. Hull, Cyril M. Jansky, Jr., Ray H. Manson, Robert H. Marriott, Arthur F. Van Dyck, and Harold P. Westman, secretary.

The following were elected or transferred to the Member grade. Elected: J. F. Church, Hugo Cohn, C. F. Lane, J. F. Moriarty, and V. K. Zworykin. Transferred: G. N. P. Allaway, W. F. Bardin, Harry Diamond, and H. A. Gambrell.

One hundred and eight Associate members and nine Junior members were elected.

Membership Cards

Membership cards for the year 1930 are available to all who desire them. They are not mailed to members unless specifically requested.

Associate Application Form

For the benefit of members who desire to have available each month an application form for Associate membership, there is printed in the PROCEEDINGS a condensed Associate form. In this issue this application will be found on page XXXIII of the advertising section.

Application forms for the Member or Fellow grades may be obtained upon application to the Institute office.

The Committee on Membership asks that members of the Institute bring the aims and activities of the Institute to the attention of desirable and eligible non-members. The condensed form in the advertising section of the PROCEEDINGS each month may be helpful.

Radio Signal Transmissions of Standard Frequency

APRIL TO JUNE, 1930

The following is a schedule of radio signals of standard frequencies for use by the public in calibrating frequency standards and trans-

mitting and receiving apparatus as transmitted from station WWV of the Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C.

Further information regarding these schedules and how to utilize the transmissions can be found on pages 10 and 11 of the January, 1930, issue of the PROCEEDINGS and in the Bureau of Standards Letter Circular No. 171 which may be obtained by applying to the Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C.

Eastern Standard Time	Apr. 21	May 20	June 20
10:00 P.M.	1600	4000	550
10:12	1800	4400	600
10:24	2000	4800	700
10:36	2400	5200	800
10:48	2800	5800	1000
11:00	3200	6400	1200
11:12	3600	7000	1400
11:24	4000	7600	1500

Broadcast Reports on Astrophysical and Geophysical Phenomena

We have been advised that after February 1, 1930, it is probable that a bulletin concerning astrophysical and geophysical phenomena capable of influencing the propagation of radio waves will be broadcast daily from the Lafayette, (17,751 kc or 16,900 meters) and Issy-les-Moulineaux (9,230 kc or 32.5 meters) radio stations immediately following the regular time signals transmitted at 2000 Greenwich Mean Time.

The text of these bulletins will comprise data from the Astronomical Observatory at Meudon, the Physical Institute of the Globe at Paris, and the National Meteorological Office. The last named body assumes the duty of collecting these data and compiling the bulletins.

These broadcasts have resulted from the efforts of the Committee on Cooperation of the American Section of the International Union of Scientific Radio Telegraphy (Union Radio Scientifique Internationale, or U.R.S.I.).

Committee Work

COMMITTEE ON ADMISSIONS

A meeting of the Committee on Admissions was held at 6 P.M. on March 4, 1930, in the Western Universities Club, 11 West 53rd Street, New York City. The following were present: Raymond A. Heising, chairman; C. N. Anderson, Arthur Batcheller, C. M. Jansky, Jr., R. H. Marriott, E. R. Shute, and A. F. Van Dyck.

The committee considered seventeen applications for transfer or election to higher grades of membership in the Institute.

COMMITTEE ON BROADCASTING

The last meeting of the Committee on Broadcasting was held at 1 P.M., March 5, 1930. L. M. Hull, chairman; Arthur Batcheller, C. W. Horn, and R. H. Marriott were present.

COMMITTEE ON CONSTITUTION AND LAWS

At the March 5, 1930, meeting of the Committee on Constitution and Laws, held at 10 A.M., R. H. Marriott, chairman; Arthur Batcheller, Melville Eastham, H. E. Hallborg, R. A. Heising, and G. W. Pickard were present.

STANDARDIZATION

In the past, the working committees operating under the Committee on Standardization of the Institute were known as subcommittees and any committees established by a subcommittee were known as subsubcommittees. To simplify matters, committees operating directly under the Committee on Standardization will now be known as technical committees and the subsubcommittees will be referred to as subcommittees.

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE ON RADIO RECEIVERS AND PARTS—A.S.A.

A meeting of the Technical Committee on Radio Receivers and Parts, operating under American Standards Association procedure, was held at 10:45 A.M. on February 26th, the following being present: W. A. MacDonald, chairman; T. McL. Davis, E. T. Dickey, J. W. Fulmer (representing H. B. Smith), V. M. Graham, W. M. Grimditch, and H. P. Westman, secretary.

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE ON VACUUM TUBES—I.R.E.

At the last meeting of the Technical Committee on Vacuum Tubes of the Institute, held at 10:30 A.M. on March 5, 1930, the following were present: J. C. Warner, presiding; Stuart Ballantine, Harry F. Dart, D. E. Harnett, M. J. Kelly, and H. P. Westman, secretary.

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE ON ELECTRO-ACOUSTIC DEVICES—A.S.A.

The following were present at the meeting of the Technical Committee on Electro-Acoustic Devices, operating under American Standards Association procedure, which was held at 10:30 A.M., March 6, 1930: Irving Wolff, chairman; L. G. Bostwick, E. D. Cook, J. W. Fulmer (representing H. B. Smith), C. R. Hanna, E. W. Kellogg, Benjamin Olney, J. D. Phyfe, W. P. Powers, L. J. Sivian, Arthur Thiessen, J. E. Volkmann, and H. P. Westman, secretary.

Institute Meetings

BUFFALO-NIAGARA SECTION

A meeting of the Buffalo-Niagara Section was held on February 19th in Room 239, Edmund Hayes Hall, University of Buffalo. A. B. Chamberlain, acting chairman, presided.

Karr Parker, engineer for McCarthy Bros. and Ford, presented a paper, "Radio and Public Address Distributions Systems, Especially as Applied to Statler Hotels Service." A general discussion followed the presentation of this paper.

Twenty-one members of the section attended this meeting.

CHICAGO SECTION

The February meeting of the Chicago Section was held in the Lounge of the Western Society of Engineers, Engineering Building, on the 21st of the month.

The presiding officer was H. E. Kranz and the speaker, F. S. Huddy, assistant chief engineer of the Ceco Manufacturing Co., delivered a paper on "The Pentode." Messrs. Andrews, Arnold, Hassel, Henry, Kranz, Miller, and Weinberg participated in the discussion of the paper. Two hundred and twenty-five members and guests attended the meeting.

CINCINNATI SECTION

The February meeting of the Cincinnati Section was held on the 20th of the month at Wright Field, Dayton, R. H. Langley presiding.

The meeting started early in the afternoon, and guides were provided to take those present through the laboratories at the field. Seventy-two members and guests assembled in the officers' mess for dinner at five o'clock and the usual meeting followed.

A considerable discussion followed the illustrated lecture given by Joseph Chambers, technical supervisor of Stations WLW and WSAI, discussing broadcasting in general and high-power broadcast stations in particular.

The second speaker, C. D. Barbulesco, discussed and demonstrated the advantages of super-regeneration for very high frequency reception. The use of this type of receiver for measuring the distance between a flying aeroplane and the earth was also considered.

The meeting was so successful that it is probable that the May meeting will be held at Dayton.

DETROIT SECTION

A meeting of the Detroit Section was held on February 21st in the Detroit News Building.

The meeting was presided over by A. B. Buchanan and a demonstration of the RCA Theremin was given.

The second half of the meeting was devoted to a paper, "Radio Aids to Navigation," delivered by S. L. Bailey of the Bureau of Lighthouses. A general discussion was participated in by many of the ninety-five members and friends present.

LOS ANGELES SECTION

At the February 17, 1930, meeting of the Los Angeles Section presided over by T. C. Bowles, a paper on "Piezo-Electric Crystals and Their Formation" was delivered by W. L. Burnett. This paper covered the subject from the formation of the crystal in the earth to its being placed in service in a radio transmitter.

Messrs. Andersen, Eldridge, Fox, McDonough, and Nekirk discussed the paper.

Seventy-one members and guests were present.

NEW YORK MEETING

The regular monthly New York meeting of the Institute was held on Wednesday, March 5, 1930, in the Engineering Societies Building, 33 West 39th Street, New York City. Lee de Forest, president of the Institute, presided.

A paper on "Transmission Characteristics of a Short-Wave Telephone Circuit" was presented by R. K. Potter, of the Netcong, N. J., station of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company. The paper is summarized as follows:

The frequency characteristic of a high-frequency, transatlantic radio-telephone channel is described and discussed in this paper. The frequency characteristic of a wire telephone circuit can be adequately portrayed in two dimensions—"frequency" and "amplitude"—but it is shown that such a characteristic of a high-frequency radiotelephone circuit requires the addition of a third dimension—"time," since the frequency-amplitude relation undergoes a continual change. To provide this third dimension a series of frequency characteristics were recorded in rapid succession. The regularity of peaks and depressions which appear in the records indicate that the phenomenon is due to wave interference between signals traveling over three or more paths of different electrical length between the transmitter and receiver.

It is shown that during periods of very rapid fading radio frequencies spaced only 170 cycles apart fade differently. Curves are included illustrating the seasonal susceptibility of the circuit to this type of fading. An occasion of distinct speech echoes observed during a rapid fading period when a single side band of the signal was transmitted is discussed, and an explanation is offered for the reason that speech echoes are not more frequently identified on high-frequency circuits.

Assuming certain relations between the lengths of different paths between transmitter and receiver, patterns similar to those recorded are constructed synthetically. A study of the changes in shape occurring in these synthetic characteristics indicates that a certain relation of the ether paths will produce a complete and continual suppression of particular transmitted tones. Records show that this condition may exist for short periods. Another effect of the selective fading which produces these patterns is shown to be that of an effective variation in the percentage modulation of the received signal which imposes a limitation upon the operation of an automatic output level regulator.

An arrangement used for projecting a moving picture of the constantly changing frequency characteristic upon the screen of a cathode-ray tube is described. Observations of these moving pictures for short test periods frequently throughout the day and year at different frequencies showed that the recurrent shapes of characteristic vary with time of day and season and are of more simple pattern at the higher frequencies.

Three hundred and fifty members and guests attended this meeting.

PITTSBURGH SECTION

On February 25th a meeting of the Pittsburgh Section was held at Utility Hall in the Philadelphia Building, L. A. Terven presiding.

J. G. McKinley presented an instructive paper on "Radio Interference," with special reference to the study of antenna pickup. The resonant wave coil used by the author was then considered with slides and illustrations.

Following this J. G. Allen described some recent tests with unilateral receivers in interference location work, and a demonstration of noise making appliances was given by Anthony Mag and J. G. Allen.

There were forty present at the meeting.

TORONTO SECTION

A meeting of the Toronto Section was held on January 8, 1930, at the Electrical Building, University of Toronto, V. G. Smith, chairman, presiding.

The speaker of the evening, P. C. Ripley of the Kester Solder Company, Chicago, presented an interesting paper on the subject, "Fluxes and Solder in the Radio Industry."

The paper was considered as being interesting by the eighty members and guests who attended the meeting and Messrs. Fox, Lowrie, Northover, Patience, and Smith discussed it.

WASHINGTON SECTION

A meeting of the Washington Section was held on February 13, 1930, in the Hotel Continental. C. B. Jolliffe, chairman of the section,

presided. The following papers were presented: "Status of Frequency Measurement," by C. B. Jolliffe, and "International Frequency Measurement," by A. Hoyt Taylor.

Dr. C. B. Jolliffe spoke on the results of the work of the Bureau of Standards in developing and constructing an accurate frequency standard. He illustrated his discussion with lantern slides, and showed the construction of the constant temperature cabinets and thermostatic control units by which the temperature of the piezo-electric crystals is maintained constant. The mounting of the crystal was explained wherein a quartz disk is provided with an annular peripheral groove into which adjusting screws project to maintain the quartz plate in a position free for constant frequency oscillation. Dr. Jolliffe's experiences in Europe in comparing one of the secondary standards developed by the Bureau of Standards from the primary-frequency standard was described and the readings obtained in different laboratories in Europe compared. It was pointed out that by accurate maintenance of temperature in the immediate vicinity of the piezo-crystal element, the frequency drift would be very slight and an opportunity for more extended use of the available frequencies obtained.

Dr. Taylor described the constant frequency transmitter developed by members of the staff of the Naval Research Laboratory wherein a temperature-controlled piezo-electric crystal oscillator controls the operation of a frequency-doubling multistage amplifier system for transmission of constant frequency signals on 20,000 kc. These signals are to be checked in France, Germany, England, and probably Japan for the comparison of frequencies, and will give an even more accurate method of frequency standardization than the actual transportation of frequency standards from one country to another without the inherent travel and incidental delay.

These papers were discussed by Captain Guy Hill, L. P. Wheeler, G. D. Robinson, and A. Hoyt Taylor.

Personal Mention

Lewis M. Clement, formerly vice president and chief engineer of the Brandes Laboratories, is now in the Radio Division of the Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company at their New York office.

Donald McNicol has been appointed editorial director of the two publications *Radio Engineering* and *Projection Engineering*.

Leo C. Kelly, who was previously a member of the Engineering Department of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company in

New York City, is now located at the International Communication Laboratories in New York City.

R. J. White, who has been a Radiotron specialist for the Radio Corporation of America in Dallas, Texas, is now field representative for the RCA-Victor Company at the same place.

D. C. Wallace has recently become zone manager for the General Motors Radio Corporation. He is located in Los Angeles, California, and prior to this connection was manufacturers' representative for a number of radio manufacturing organizations.

Harry Thomas, formerly on the engineering staff of the Audio Vision Appliance Company at Camden, has recently become connected with the American Bosch Magneto Corporation at Springfield, Mass., as radio production engineer.

Carl Stagg is now assistant supervisor at the RCA Communications station at Riverhead, N. Y. He was previously a receiving engineer for that organization.

Q. M. Shultise is at present a design engineer for the Universal Wireless Communication Company, Inc., at their Chicago plant.

D. R. Rossiter has recently become connected with the Automatic Electric Company in Chicago. He was previously a radio engineer for the Bremer-Tully Manufacturing Company of the same city.

Formerly an instructor in the Radio Institute at New York, Leon E. Pamphilon is now a sound engineer for RCA Photophone in New York City.

E. L. Koch is now chief engineer for the Universal Wireless Communication Company. Previously he was an executive engineer for the Kellogg Switchboard and Supply Company of Chicago.

A. W. Hershey has left the Development Department of Leeds and Northrup of Philadelphia to join the Bell Telephone Laboratories in New York City.

J. B. Harley, formerly with F.A.D. Andrea in New York City, has also joined the Bell Telephone Laboratories.

E. H. Hansen is now operating head and chief engineer of the Sound Department of the Fox Film Company at Los Angeles, California.

From chief code instructor, A. B. Burdick has risen to superintendent of the RCA Institutes, Inc., New York City.

J. W. Ashmore has been transferred from the Belfast, Maine, to the Riverhead, New York, receiving station of RCA Communications.

L. J. Andres has recently become chief engineer for the Carter Sound Equipment Company of Chicago.

H. C. Leuteritz is now the communications engineer for the Pan-American Airways in New York City. He was formerly a radio engineer at the New York City office of the Radio Corporation of America.

A considerable number of members have been affected due to the recent change in the status of the General Electric-Westinghouse-RCA-Victor radio grouping. The following who were formerly located in the Schenectady plant of the General Electric Company are now in the engineering department of the RCA-Victor Corporation at Camden, N. J.: Kirby B. Austin, Irving F. Byrnes, K.A. Chittick, Thomas F. DeHaven, Charles R. Garrett, John C. Hansen, W. A. Hargrave, L. H. Junken, Arthur V. Loughren, Clifton C. More, Robert W. Orr, Albert A. Pulley, H. E. Roys, J. P. Smith, F. Byron Stone, and Charles H. Vos.

D. H. Cunningham, G. L. Grundmann, W. R. Koch, and M. G. Sateren, who were formerly with the Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company, are also in the engineering department of RCA-Victor.

In the same organization may also be found R. A. Braden, J. N. Hall, Abraham Ringel, and Irving Wolff, who were previously located at the Van Cortlandt Park laboratory of the Radio Corporation of America.

L. H. Miller is a member of the RCA Radiotron Company staff at Harrison, N. J. He was previously with the Radio-Victor Corporation of America at Camden.

A. F. Murray has left the Jenkins Television Corporation of Jersey City, N. J., to become division engineer of research and advance development of the RCA-Victor Company at Camden, N. J.

Albert Hauser is now a condenser engineer for the Transformer Corporation of America in Chicago. He was formerly chief engineer for Brown and Caine, Inc., of Chicago.



PART II
TECHNICAL PAPERS

ANTENNA-MEASURING EQUIPMENT*

By

J. K. CLAPP

(Engineer, General Radio Co., Cambridge, Mass.)

Summary—A self-contained equipment (with exception of batteries), of portable design, for measurement of apparent capacity, apparent resistance and natural frequency of antenna-ground systems, within specified limits, is described. A substitution method is employed, adjustment of the calibrated phantom antenna being made to maintain constant frequency and constant amplitude of oscillation in the driving oscillator circuit, as the oscillator is switched from the physical to the phantom antenna. In measurement of the natural frequency of the antenna, the antenna frequencies corresponding to various amounts of loading inductance are determined. A curve is then plotted and extrapolated to the zero loading ordinate. A very close approximation is obtained if the inductance of the small coupling coil is neglected, the antenna frequency with the coil in circuit being taken as the natural frequency.

The sensitivity and accuracy of the apparatus is discussed with attention to the imperfections of the phantom condenser and resistance. The results of measurements on a calibrated dummy antenna, as well as on a ship's antenna, are given in graphic form. The effect of interfering signal voltages picked up by the antenna from nearby transmitters is considered.

PURPOSE AND RANGE OF EQUIPMENT

THE EQUIPMENT described below was designed specifically for the U. S. Coast Guard for measurements on antenna-ground systems at frequencies below the fundamental frequency of the antenna-ground system. The apparent reactance of the antenna-ground system is therefore condensive at all frequencies of measurement. Provision is made for the measurement of the apparent capacity, apparent resistance, and the natural frequency of the antenna-ground system within the following limitations:

(a) frequency range:

100 to 600 kc for apparent resistance and capacity

up to 2500 kc for fundamental frequency

(b) apparent resistance less than 111 ohms

(c) apparent capacity between 200 and 2000 $\mu\mu\text{f}$

Extreme accuracy was not held to be of prime importance in the design of the equipment, as the data to be obtained through its use were desired for indicating the relative trend of the apparent antenna coefficients with frequency and to furnish approximate design data for the design of transmitter and receiver circuits to be used with a given antenna.

* Dewey decimal classification: R300.

Through the use of an auxiliary calibrated antenna series condenser, measurements may be made at frequencies higher than the natural frequency of the antenna.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF EQUIPMENT

The equipment with exception of batteries is contained in a single aluminum cabinet, 8 in. by 10 in. by 26 in. and weighing 40.5 lbs.

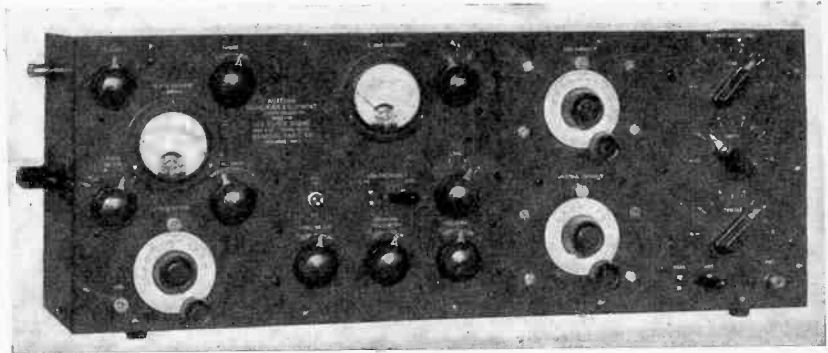


Fig. 1

Photographs of the front and interior of the apparatus are reproduced in Figs. 1 and 1a, and the wiring diagram in Fig. 2. The apparatus contained in the cabinet may be classified under four functional headings as follows:

Oscillator

A vacuum-tube oscillator is provided in one compartment for driving the antenna at any frequency within the range specified. The antenna-ground system is connected directly across the tuned-grid circuit of the oscillator with or without a series condenser. Feed back is obtained through mutual inductance between plate and grid circuits, and is controlled through the use of a variable resistance. The grid circuit of the tube is employed as a rectifier for indicating the amplitude of oscillation by the resultant change in plate current. A d-c milliammeter is provided for reading this change in plate current, the steady plate current being opposed by a voltage taken from the filament battery.

With the connections indicated, it may be found that the oscillator will pick up the antenna, acting as an inductance (at a frequency higher than the natural frequency of the antenna), and oscillate as a Hartley oscillator with the plate inductance and the plate-grid capacity of the circuit as the remaining circuit elements. This stray oscillation is

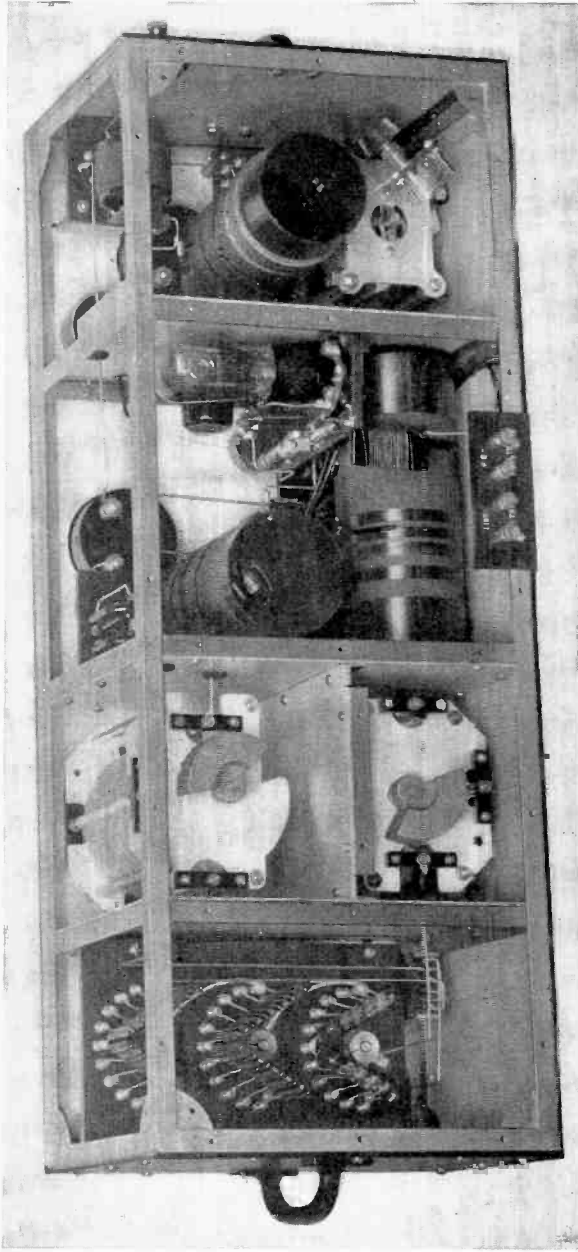


Fig. 1a

readily suppressed, without materially changing the normal circuit conditions, by inserting a resistance in the grid lead to the tube.

Frequency Meter

A tuned-circuit frequency meter, covering the range from 90 to 2,000 kc, is mounted in a second compartment, and inductively coupled to the oscillator circuit, the coupling being varied through the use of a variable resistance of low value. Resonance between the frequency

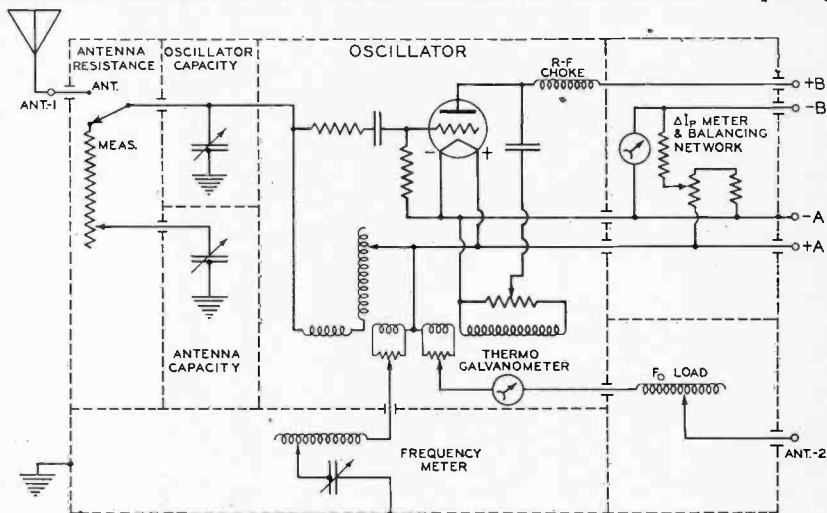


Fig. 2

meter and the oscillator is detected by means of the change in plate-current meter of the oscillator.

Phantom Antenna

The phantom antenna may be substituted in place of the physical antenna-ground system, across the oscillator tuned circuit. It consists of a calibrated variable air condenser in series with a calibrated decade resistance. The maximum value of capacity is approximately 2,100 μmf . The maximum value of resistance is 111 ohms. These units are mounted in individual compartments arranged to prevent coupling between either unit and the oscillator.

Antenna Loading

For measurement of the natural frequency of the antenna, a variable loading coil and thermogalvanometer are connected in series with the antenna. This combination is loosely coupled to the driving oscillator through a mutual inductance, the coupling being varied through the use of a variable resistance of low value.

PRINCIPLES OF MEASUREMENTS

Apparent Resistance and Capacity

The fundamental principle in the measurement of the apparent resistance and capacity of an antenna by means of this equipment is that of substitution. The reactance and resistance offered by the phantom antenna are separately adjusted, the first to maintain *constant frequency* and the second to maintain *constant amplitude* of oscillation as the oscillator is switched from the physical to the phantom antenna. In the more usual methods, the frequency reaction of the measuring circuit on the oscillator is neglected, and the amplitude reaction rarely taken into account. In this arrangement, once the approximate values of resistance and capacity for the phantom antenna have been obtained, the final adjustment is readily obtained, based upon the consideration that (1) small changes in reactance produce first order changes in frequency, and (2) that small changes in resistance produce first order changes in amplitude of the oscillations produced by the driving tube.

It is for determining the conditions of constant frequency and constant amplitude that the frequency meter and change-in-plate-current milliammeter are provided. The use of the first is self-evident, but some further details on the use of the second are in order. Since the antenna systems, physical and phantom, are shunted in turn directly across the tuned-grid circuit of the oscillator, both are subjected to the same voltage as the input circuit of the vacuum tube. If the input circuit of the tube be used as a rectifier, a path being provided through a grid-leak resistance for the d-c component of rectification, the magnitude of the direct current in this path will serve as a measure of the amplitude of the radio-frequency voltage impressed on the tube (and on either antenna) for amplitudes of oscillation which are not too great. The tube may be used as a d-c amplifier and the measure of the magnitude of the direct current through the grid leak may be obtained by observation of the change in d-c plate current in the output circuit of the tube. As this method provided sufficient sensitivity and simple manipulation with inexpensive and rugged meters, it was adopted for this assembly.

The frequency-response characteristic of the "voltmeter" action of the oscillator tube, described in the last paragraph, is of no consequence as measurements are made at constant frequency. Any variation in plate-current change with frequency, for a fixed amplitude of input voltage, only serves to alter slightly the ease with which the phantom circuit may be adjusted.

NATURAL FREQUENCY OF ANTENNA

Through the use of the variable loading coil and thermogalvanometer the antenna circuit is tuned to frequencies which approach the natural frequency of the antenna as the amount of loading is decreased. When the loading inductance has been reduced to zero, only the coupling coil remains in circuit. Its effect on the antenna frequency is small and is further reduced by the low resistance shunted across it. Data are obtained for the frequency of the antenna circuit for each loading coil step, and the frequencies are then plotted against the number of the loading coil step. A curve is obtained which may be safely extrapolated to the zero loading ordinate, intersecting this ordinate at the unloaded, or natural, frequency of the antenna. For most purposes sufficiently accurate results are obtained if the loading effect of the coupling coil be neglected, by simply determining the frequency of the antenna system with this coil in circuit, and dispensing with the necessity of plotting a curve. This approximate method is of course much more rapid.

ACCURACY AND SENSITIVITY; EXPERIMENTAL CHECK; INTERFERENCE
Accuracy of Measurements; Sensitivity

The absolute accuracy of measuring the apparent resistance and capacity of an antenna depends upon skill in manipulation of the equipment and upon the accuracy with which the constants of the phantom antenna are known. These factors will each now be given brief consideration.

The sensitivity of the equipment is such that with only moderate skill and experience in manipulation one may obtain readings of the capacity and resistance of the phantom antenna to better than ± 1.0 per cent for capacity (at 1,000 $\mu\mu f$) and to better than ± 1.0 per cent, for resistance (at 10.0 ohms). The ultimate accuracy of capacity readings depends on the accuracy of calibration of the condenser and the accuracy with which the calibration may be read. The resistance is made variable in 0.1-ohm steps as the finest variation, so that for low resistances, 0.1 ohm may appear as a relatively large variation. The resistance readings are consequently limited to the nearest 0.1 ohm.

The capacity of the phantom antenna has implicitly been assumed of zero resistance, in the description of the principle of the substitution method. Actually, however, the condenser has an appreciable resistance, a resistance which varies both with frequency and with the value of capacity employed. Based upon the work of Wilmotte¹ and

¹ Raymond M. Wilmotte, "A quick and sensitive method of measuring condenser losses at radio frequencies," *Jour. Sci. Instruments*, V, No. 12, 369-375; December, 1928.

upon 1,000-cycle measurements, the curves of Fig. 3 have been drawn, with notations applying to the use of the specimen condenser in the phantom antenna of this measuring equipment.

The dotted line at 0.1 ohm represents the minimum variation in resistance which may be observed with the equipment. It is at once evident that the specimen condenser may be used at all frequencies between 100 and 600 kc without introducing an error in the decade resistance of as much as 0.1 ohm, as long as the capacity is higher than

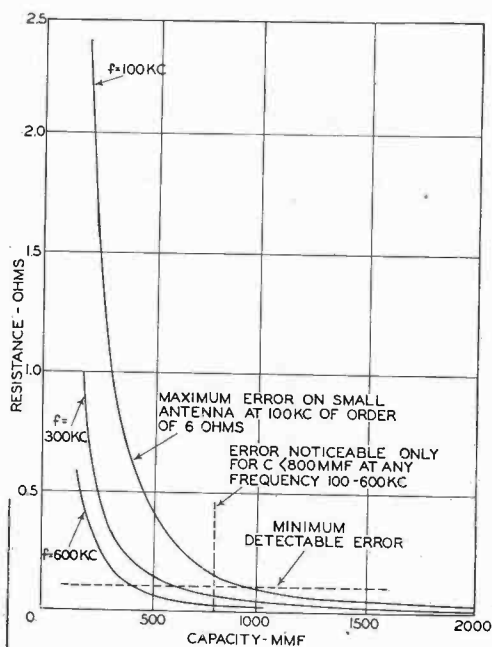


Fig. 3

1,000 $\mu\mu\text{f}$. As the antenna systems generally employed for operation at from 100 to 600 kc have a capacity of this order, it is seen that the error is usually negligible.

At a setting of 200 $\mu\mu\text{f}$, the condenser has a resistance of 2.4 ohms at 100 kc, 0.8 ohm at 300 kc, and 0.4 ohm at 600 kc. These figures represent the amount by which the decade resistance reading would be low for the conditions given; consequently a correction should be made when the condenser resistance exceeds one- or two-tenths of an ohm. For relative comparisons of antenna characteristics, as measured by the same equipment, the correction is of much less importance, and may usually be neglected.

The phantom antenna resistance has been implicitly assumed to have no reactance. Though every commercial precaution has been taken to reduce the reactance as far as possible, some reactance remains: a slight inductive reactance for the leads and a slight capacity reactance for the resistance units themselves. As the resistance of a ship's antenna is of the order of a very few ohms, the reactance of the resistance units is not of serious consequence, as they are used in series with a condensive reactance of the order of a few hundred ohms. If the resistance units are shunted by a loss-less self-capacity, the power loss remains the same for the same applied voltage. The reduction in impedance caused by the shunting capacity is negligible because of the relatively low value of the resistance.

The effect of any reactance in the resistance units of the phantom antenna on the apparent reactance as determined from the setting of the phantom circuit condenser must be considered. The large shunting reactance of the capacity of the resistance units may be replaced by a very small equivalent series reactance. In this form the phantom circuit is then composed of the reactance and resistance of the phantom condenser in series with the equivalent reactance and the resistance of the phantom resistors. The equivalent series reactance of the resistors must be small enough so that when it is placed in series with the phantom condenser reactance no change in the latter is observable. Consider the worst case; a large value of resistance, shunted with a relatively low reactance and operated at the highest frequency in the normal range of the equipment, 600 kc. If the shunting reactance is 10 times the resistance which in turn is 100 ohms, the equivalent series reactance is very closely one-tenth of the resistance value or 10 ohms. This is the reactance of an equivalent series condenser of $0.025 \mu\text{f}$ at the given frequency. This condenser is in-series with the phantom capacity whose maximum value is $0.002 \mu\text{f}$, but whose average value would be more nearly of the order of $0.001 \mu\text{f}$. Using the larger figure, the maximum possible error in the antenna capacity as read from the phantom condenser would be 10 per cent. The error decreases as the frequency decreases, as the value of phantom resistance is decreased (as the capacity of the lower resistance units is materially less than that of the higher units), and as the value of phantom capacity is decreased.

Experimental Check

As a final laboratory check on the general performance of the equipment a dummy antenna was made up of inductance, capacity, and resistance in series, the constants being measured at 1,000 cycles per second. From these data, the apparent capacity of the dummy was calculated for frequencies in the range covered by the equipment. The

dummy was then measured by means of the equipment and the experimental results compared with the calculated. A maximum discrepancy of one per cent was found.

Interference

The basis of the method presupposes that the antenna system is passive; that is, the only electromotive force in the system is that due to the driving oscillator. In case the antenna is being measured in the vicinity of a transmitter, and at frequencies near the transmitter fre-

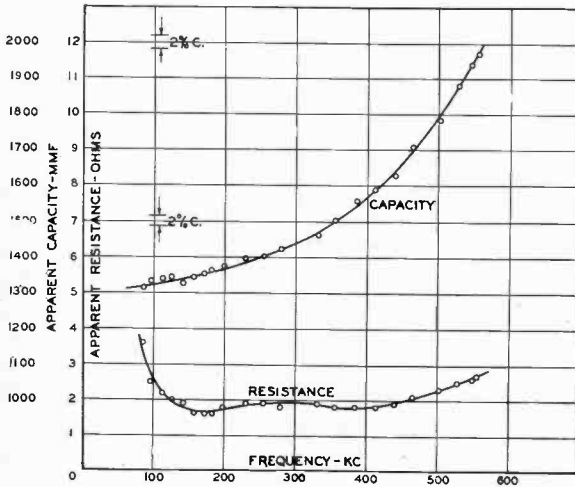


Fig. 4

quency, the voltage induced in the antenna by the transmitter may be of the order of magnitude of the driving voltage. In such cases it is obviously not possible to obtain measurements of the passive antenna system, since the signal voltage appears in the system at a point beyond the accessible terminals. An advantage of the equipment lies in the fact that the change in plate-current meter responds to the interfering signal when it is large enough to cause difficulty and the presence of such a signal is at once made known. The measurement at the particular frequency may be deferred to a break in the transmission, as only a very few moments are required for the determination. If no break is likely, frequencies on either side of the particular frequency of the transmitter may be used, where the transmitter signal is not too great, which generally will serve to cover adequately the required frequency range for the measurements.

EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS

The results of measurements on a ship antenna are given in Figs. 4 and 5. Fig. 4 gives the apparent capacity and apparent resistance of the antenna as measured with the equipment. On the capacity curve discrepancies of one per cent or less from the smooth curve through the points were assigned to experimental error and disregarded in drawing the curve.

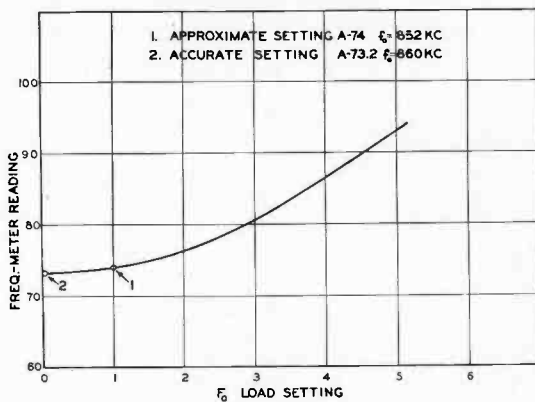


Fig. 5

Fig. 5 indicates the results of the variable loading and plotting method of determining the natural frequency of the antenna. The frequency determined with the coupling coil in circuit is indicated under "approximate method."

In conclusion the author wishes to express his appreciation of the cooperation of Arthur E. Thiessen in the laboratory work and of Warren F. Jepson of the U. S. Coast Guard in arranging for field tests.



TRANSMISSION CHARACTERISTICS OF A SHORT-WAVE TELEPHONE CIRCUIT*

BY

R. K. POTTER

(American Telephone and Telegraph Co., Netcong, N. J.)

Summary—A method of observing and recording the audio-frequency transmission characteristics of a short-wave radiotelephone channel is described. These characteristics undergo rapid changes. They appear to be the result of wave interference between signals arriving at the receiver over paths of different group or electrical length possibly combined with the distortion produced by a progressive change in the angle of rotation of the polarization plane with frequency over the signal band. The persistence of certain pattern shapes during the observation periods and the changes in these shapes from hour-to-hour suggest that they are the result of progressive rather than erratic disturbances in the transmission medium. Times when the audio-frequency characteristics were flat were very rare. However, a considerable departure from flatness may occur without serious effect on the intelligibility of the speech transmission.

Synthetic patterns used in the analysis of the characteristics are explained and illustrated. Types of audio-frequency distortion resulting from selective fading are discussed. The effect of frequency or phase modulation in producing distortion on such a circuit is considered.

Records are shown of the effect of an automatic gain control, following carrier amplitude variations, upon the audio-frequency transmission characteristic. "Rapid" fading records revealing unlike fading on radio frequencies separated by 170 cycles are included. The seasonal variation in susceptibility of the circuit to this "rapid" fading is illustrated.

The records mentioned above are for ordinary modulated carrier transmission and involve the results of interaction between the two side bands in the detection process. There are also shown records made on single side-band carrier-suppressed transmission. In this case detection does not modify the frequency-amplitude relations and the record delineates directly the frequency-amplitude characteristics of the received radio-frequency band.

THE USE of radio channels as links in connecting together wire telephone networks makes necessary the determination of the transmission characteristics of such links as telephone circuits. The considerable measurement technique which has been developed for wire circuits, such as the making of consecutive single-frequency measurements over the voice-frequency band is inadequate to disclose the true nature of the distortion which may exist in a radiotelephone circuit, especially when the link is of the short-wave type, because of the large changes in the transmission characteristics which may take place in a period as short as a fraction of a second. To disclose the

* Dewey decimal classification: R113. Presented before New York meeting of the Institute, March 5, 1930; before Philadelphia Section, March 12, 1930; before Washington Section, March 13, 1930; before Pittsburgh Section, March 14, 1930.

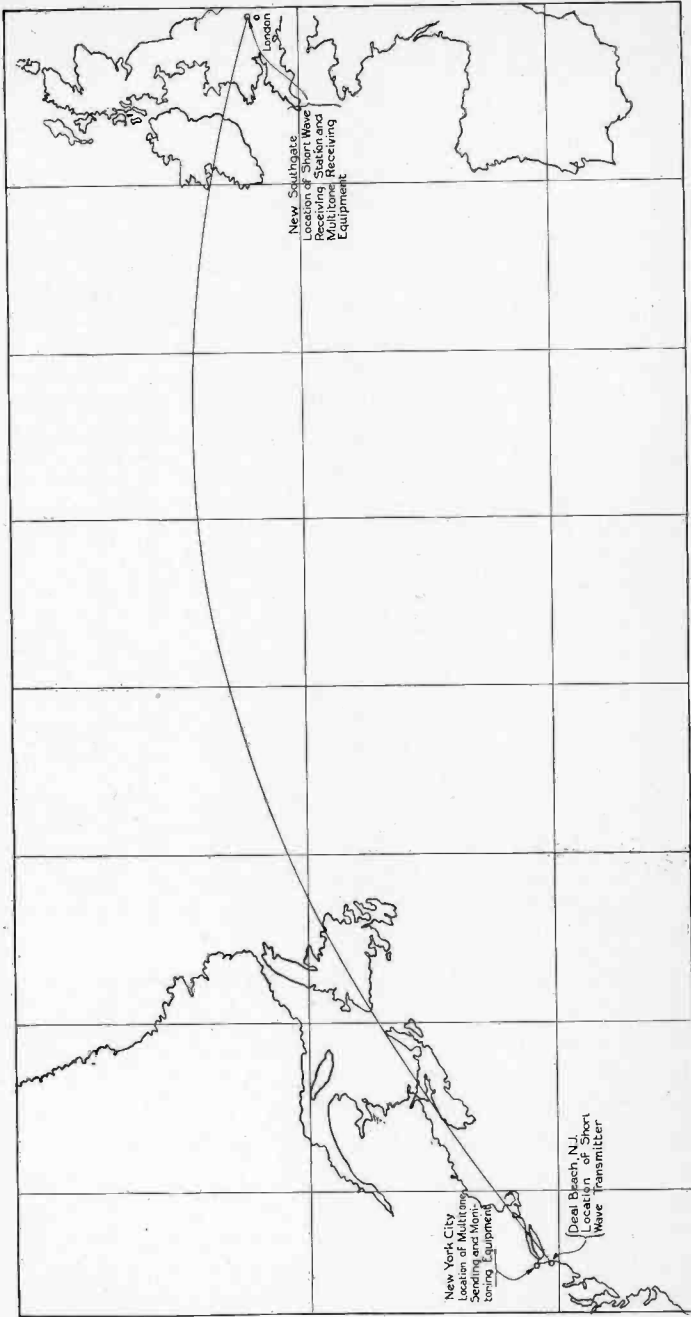


Fig. 1—Transatlantic short-wave circuit over which multitone tests were made.

transmission characteristics under these conditions, it is necessary to resort to a method which permits taking an entire characteristic quickly as a snapshot record and which enables making a rapid succession of such records as in moving-picture photography.

Except for the greater speed with which the data are secured by automatic recording, the essential difference between this process and the ordinary procedure used in measuring wire lines is that the measuring frequencies are sent simultaneously and continuously rather than individually and consecutively. The circuit is thus subjected to a steady state condition and complications due to transients are avoided.

In the analysis, classification and interpretation of the characteristic records which largely make up the subject matter of this paper, attention is necessarily concentrated upon abnormalities and defects in transmission, and the average performance of the channel as a service facility is not stressed. It should be appreciated that for the greater part of the time these defects are not of sufficient magnitude to hamper commercial service materially.

These transmission measurements were made over the short-wave circuit between Deal, New Jersey, and New Southgate, England. Test signals were sent from New York to Deal over wire circuits, and thence by the radio link to New Southgate where they were observed and recorded. In Fig. 1 is shown a diagram of the circuit arrangement. Most of these observations were made on frequencies of approximately 13 and 18 megacycles, and during those hours of the day which are of particular use for transatlantic telephone traffic, namely, 0900 E.S.T. to 1700 E.S.T. Occasional observations were made during the entire 24 hours when the frequencies used included approximately 6, 9, 13, 18, and 21 megacycles.

TEST METHOD

The recognized method of measuring the transmission characteristic of a wire circuit is to send a known amount of single-frequency tone into the circuit and to measure the circuit output as the frequency is varied. A "frequency-amplitude" curve may then be constructed. In order to follow the changes which are apt to occur in a short-wave radio circuit, it is requisite that such measurements be performed very rapidly, and that they be repeated in continuous succession. One way in which this might be accomplished would be to send the different frequencies of the voice band in sufficiently rapid succession, and measure them at the same rate at the receiver. This method possesses a certain advantage insofar as equipment is concerned, but it introduces an undesirable complication due to the transient character of the test

signals. In case the signal travels over paths of different length between transmitter and receiver, there is an overlapping of successive frequencies. Such overlapping has actually been utilized to determine the difference in length of overhead and direct radio transmission paths.¹ The extent to which this overlapping would confuse the measurements was not known at the time the tests were planned as there were little data available concerning the path differences which are apt to exist on such a short-wave circuit. It was decided, therefore, to eliminate such effects as completely as possible from the measurement method.

The method finally adopted consisted in the simultaneous transmission of a series of tones distributed at regularly spaced intervals over the voice band. At the receiving point these tones were separated by means of as many filters so that they were continually at hand for recording or observation. There was available for this purpose equipment which has been standardized for use on voice-frequency telegraph circuits. At the sending station for the test signals in New York there was installed a generator with an output of 12 frequencies from 425 to 2295 cycles at intervals of 170 cycles. A series of "sending" filters were inserted in the 12 output circuits of the generator to suppress harmonics, and means for adjusting and measuring the outputs of the 12 tones were included. Apparatus was also installed at the New York test station for making observations upon the signal leaving the transmitter. For this purpose the output of a monitoring receiver near the transmitter at Deal was sent back to New York over a separate wire circuit. The amplitudes of the tones were then adjusted to give equal output from the transmitter. Any inequality which appeared during the observations at the New Southgate receiving station in England would, therefore, be due to effects of the radio transmission path.

The apparatus used in New York for monitoring the output of the transmitter at Deal was the same as that employed at New Southgate for making observations on the received signal. The "multitone," as the 12-tone test signal has for convenience been designated, was separated into its single-frequency constituents at the output of the receiver by means of 12 "receiving" filters. A commutating device then impressed the outputs of the different filters in rapid succession upon the vertical deflection plates of a cathode-ray tube. At the same time a second commutator connected mechanically to the first, impressed progressively different biasing potentials upon the horizontal deflection plates for each of the tones selected by the tone commutator. As a

¹ R. A. Heising, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 75, January, 1928.

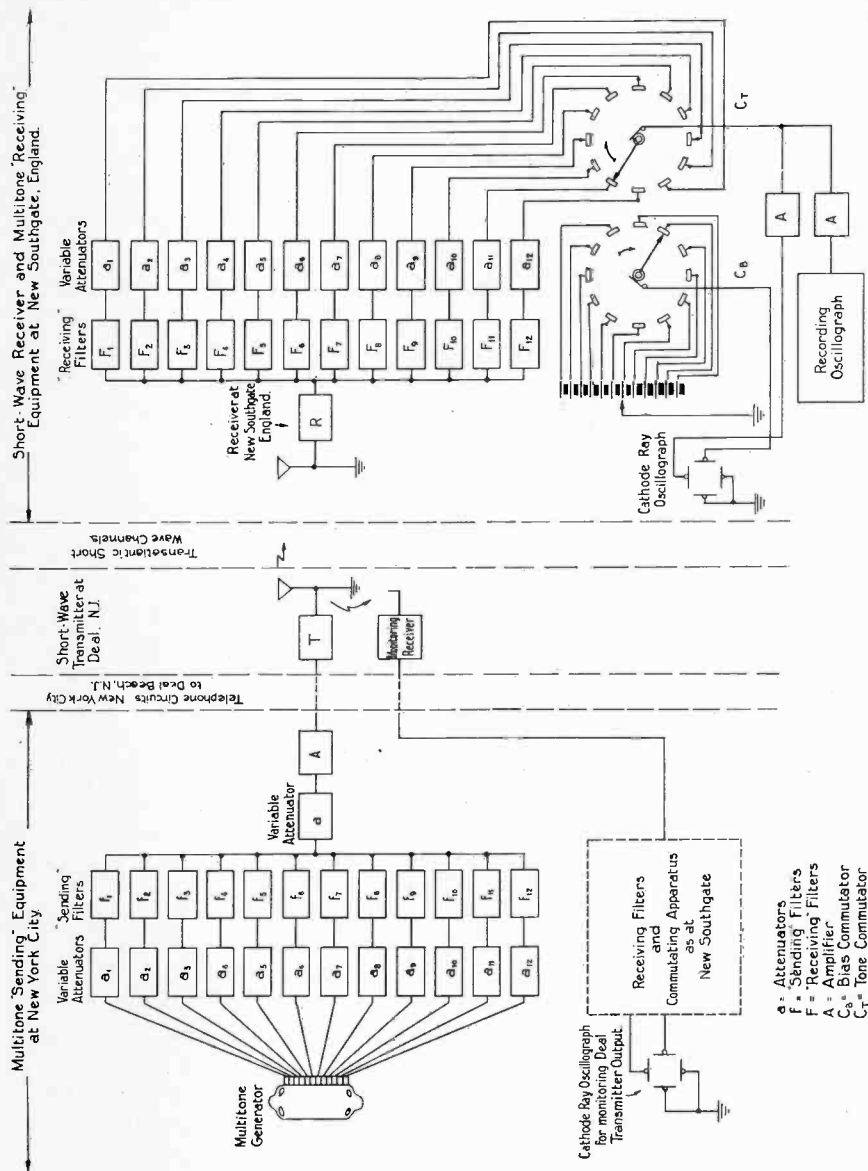


Fig. 2—Schematic of arrangement used for multitone tests on Deal-New Southgate short-wave telephone circuit.

result there appeared across the screen of the cathode-ray tube a series of 12 vertical lines, regularly spaced at intervals of something less than a quarter of an inch. These 12 vertical lines constituted a frequency-amplitude pattern representing the audio-frequency transmission characteristic of the radio circuit. The rate of commutation was about $12\frac{1}{2}$ sweeps of the 12 tones a second, so that the pattern was sufficiently free from flicker, and yet fast enough to portray any variations which the eye was capable of following. In these 12 tones, which were entirely independent at the sending and receiving ends, there were available, incidentally, 12 separate telegraph circuits. The independence of these channels was clearly demonstrated by the appearance

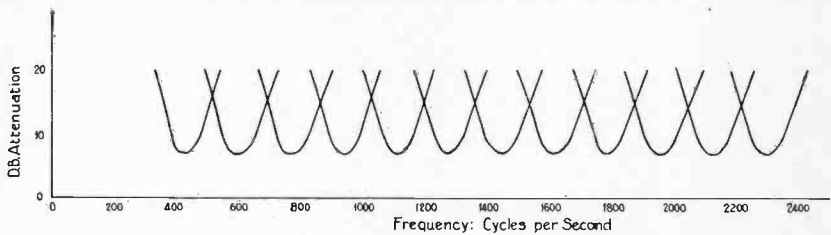


Fig. 3(a)—Characteristics of multitone "sending" filters.

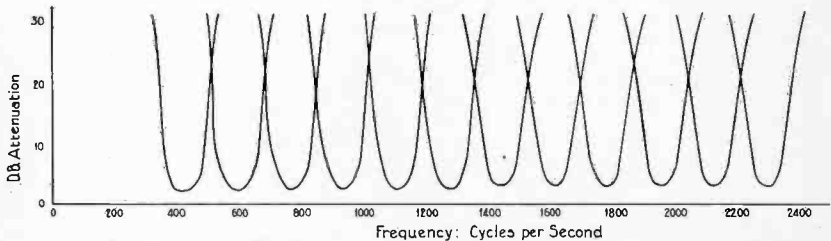


Fig. 3(b)—Characteristics of multitone "receiving" filters.

and disappearance of a particular tone on the cathode-ray tube pattern corresponding to the opening and closing of that particular tone circuit at the sending end. The remaining tones were undisturbed.

In Fig. 2 is shown a schematic of the entire test arrangement. In Fig. 3(a) are shown transmission characteristics of the voice-frequency telegraph "sending" filters used to suppress the harmonics of the 12 tones. Fig. 3(b) shows the transmission characteristics of the "receiving" filters. The frequency spacing of the 12 tones constituting the multitone test signal is such that the second harmonics are suppressed by the receiving filters. Such an arrangement is highly desirable since under certain conditions, which will be discussed later, a large amount of second harmonic may occasionally be produced at the receiver.

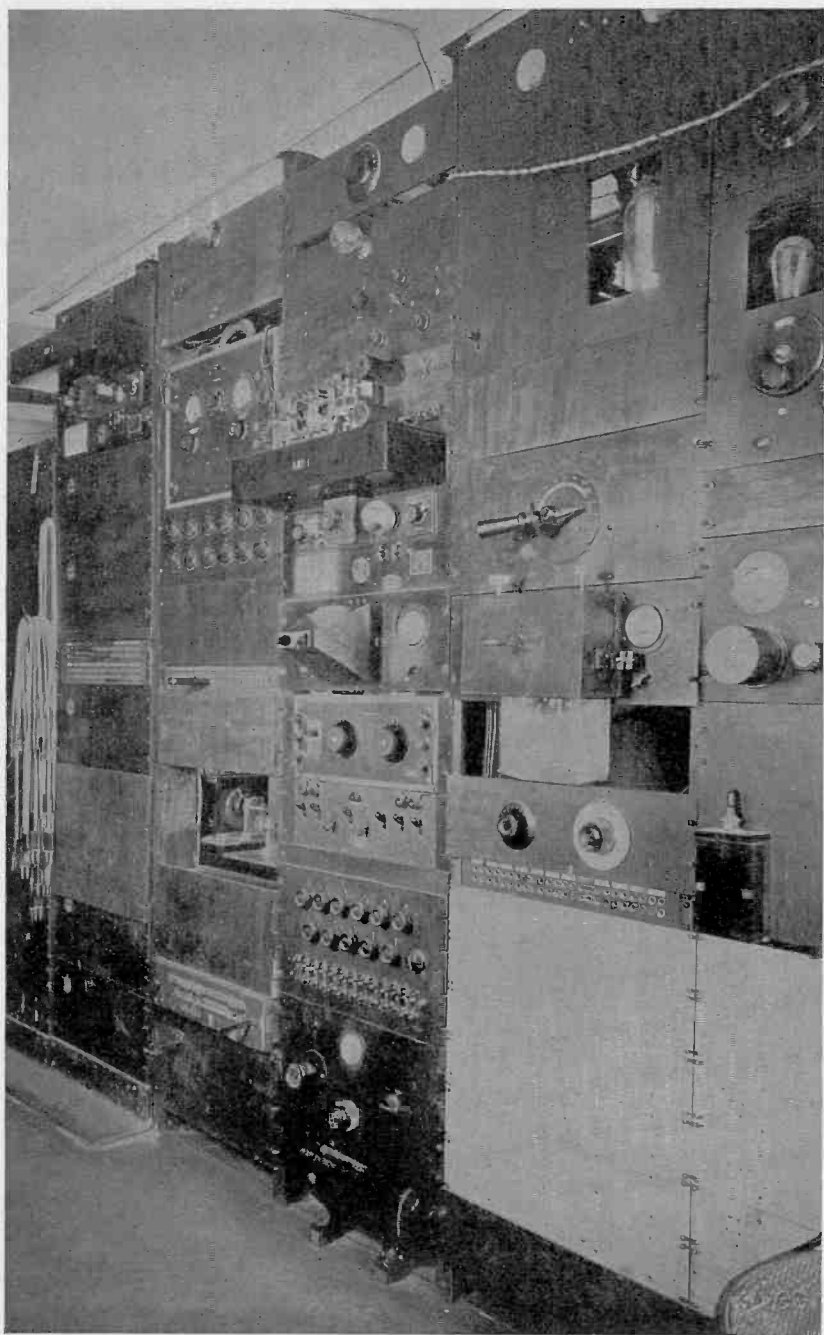


Fig. 4—View of multitone sending equipment at Walker Street, New York City.

In Fig. 4 is shown a view of the multitone sending equipment at 24 Walker Street, New York, N. Y.

The upper picture in Fig. 5 shows a view of the receiving site at New Southgate. The building in the foreground contains the short-wave receiver. The poles support two parabolas for 13 and 18 megacycles. During the last part of the period represented by the data described in this paper these two parabolas were replaced by the extended direc-

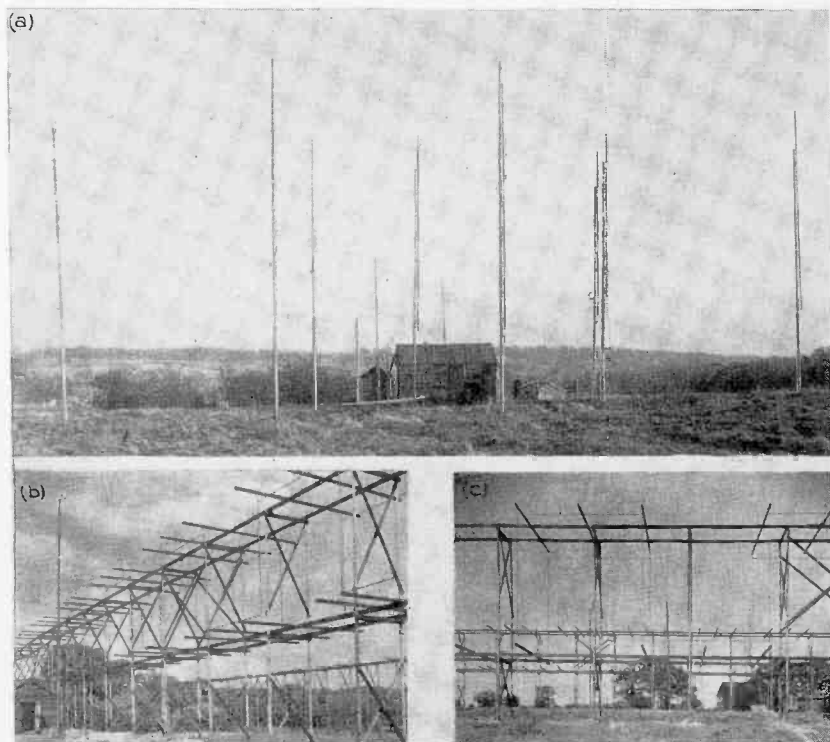


Fig. 5—Receiving site at New Southgate, England.

(a) Four-element parabolas used during first part of multitone tests.
 (b) and (c) Views of array structures used on 13 and 18 megacycles during last part of multitone tests.

tional arrays shown in the lower photographs. The multitone records and observations were made in the building which appears in the background of the upper photograph in Fig. 5. Herein were the bays upon which were mounted the 12 multitone "receiving" filters, attenuators for equalizing the outputs of the filters, and amplifiers. A bench along one side of the room was equipped with a single-element oscillograph adapted to the making of long, slow records, and a three-element oscillograph used for making fast, commutated records of the multi-

tone. One corner was partitioned off as a "dark" room in which were installed the multitone commutator and cathode-ray tubes.

A view of the multitone commutator is shown in Fig. 6. At the extreme left is the a-c motor which drives the commutator brushes. In the faces of two vertical rectangles of hard rubber beside the motor are embedded the segments of the "tone" and "bias" commutators. The brushes are adjusted to sweep over these two commutators in synchronism. At the right is a rotary switch which made it possible to use the same multitone equipment to observe the outputs of two different short-wave receivers on the same cathode-ray tube. To the

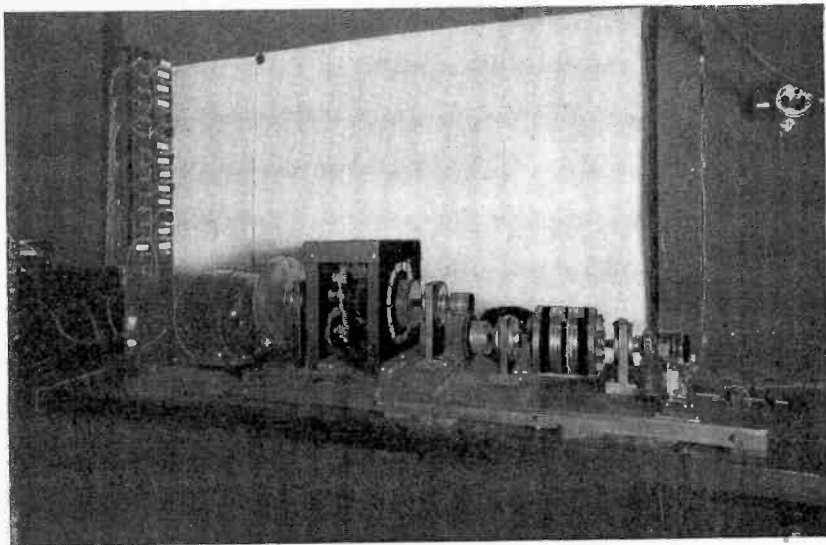


Fig. 6—View of switching device including multitone and bias commutators, rotary switch for comparing multitone from two sources, and film exposure timer.

right of this is a "timing" switch to close the anode circuit of the cathode-ray tube for a predetermined period when making records by pressing a film against the face of the tube.

Most of the multitone data which will be described were taken on a normal double side-band and carrier circuit. Toward the end of these tests, records and observations were made of single side-band transmission. The carrier was supplied by a specially designed adjustable oscillator at the receiver. In order to maintain a correct relation to the side band for the single side-band multitone tests, one of the multitones was sent back from the output of the filters to the control operator who maintained a "zero beat" relation to the output of an audio-frequency oscillator adjusted to that particular multitone frequency.

MULTITONE RECORDS

Three methods of recording were used during the course of the tests. The first consisted of simply sketching the patterns which appeared on the CRO tube screen. When the variations in pattern shape were slow, this method was accurate enough to give a satisfactory record. Even during times when the changes in shape of the multitone patterns were more rapid, it was found that an experienced observer could make enough sketches of this kind to show with sufficient exactness the character of the distortion at particular hours of the day.

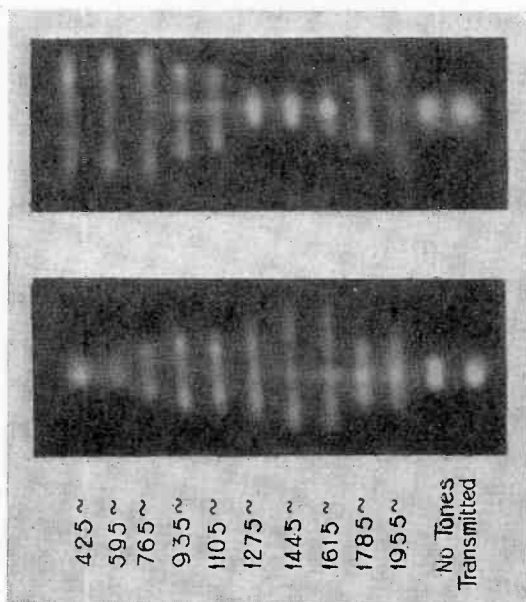


Fig. 7—Cathode-ray oscillograph contact pictures of multitones.

Another recording method consisted in making so-called "contact pictures" of the patterns. With the anode circuit of the CRO tube open a sensitive film was pressed against the screen. A trigger was then pressed which released the contactor on the spiral timing switch shown at the right end of the commutator in Fig. 6. The switch exposed the film by closing the anode circuit during one or more complete revolutions of the commutator shaft. A single sweep, exposing each tone about $1/150$ th of a second was found sufficient to give a useful record. When the patterns were changing slowly, the film was exposed two or more complete cycles to improve the contrast. Contact pictures gave much more accurate quantitative information than the sketches, particularly at times when the patterns were changing

shape rapidly. They possessed the same disadvantage as the sketches, however, in that it was not possible to take contact pictures in rapid and regular succession so that the time sequence of changes could be recorded.

In Fig. 7 are shown two examples of "contact" pictures taken on the cathode-ray tube. Tones No. 11 and 12 were not transmitted at the time these prints were taken so that there is no deflection of the corresponding spots.

In order to obtain the sequence of changes in the multitone transmission characteristics, the commutated tones were recorded by means of a moving element oscillograph. Over 12 complete transmission characteristics could thus be recorded on sensitized paper each second. An enlarged record of one of these multitone patterns taken on os-

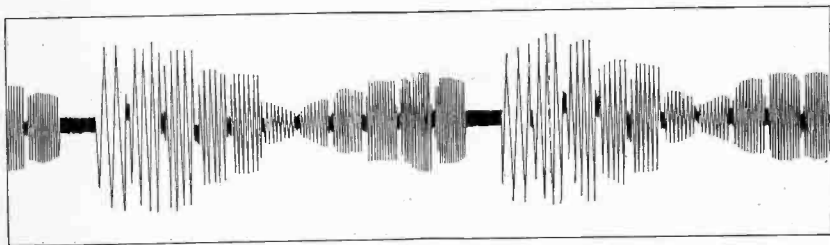


Fig. 8—Fast oscillograph record of a representative commutated multitone characteristic.

cillograph film is shown in Fig. 8. The detail in this record is sufficient to show the effect of commutation upon the patterns to be negligible. If the multitone band were extended below 425 cycles, it would obviously be necessary to decrease the commutation rate or apportion the commutation intervals so that the same number of cycles would be recorded for each frequency. Normally the multitone records were taken on sensitized paper strip moving at such a rate that each complete characteristic occupied about three-quarters of an inch. Tone No. 12 (2295 cycles) was not generally recorded in these multitone "movies," as they have been called, in order to show more clearly the interval occupied by successive characteristics. In all cases the low frequency (425 cycles) is at the left end of each characteristic.

PRELIMINARY AURAL OBSERVATIONS

After listening to speech over a short-wave circuit such as that between Deal, New Jersey, and New Southgate, England, for a while, we may become aware of at least four effects. The first is that of marked changes in the general amplitude of the received signal. During certain times of the day and year these general variations in signal amplitude may occur very slowly—perhaps at the rate of two or

three fades a minute. More commonly, the fading rate is in the order of 10 to 20 fades a minute. On occasions there appears what has come to be described in the log sheets of the Deal-New Southgate circuit as "rapid fading." At such times the fading rate may be as high as several hundred a minute. Fortunately this condition is rather rare.

A second effect which will be noticed after a little experience with the short-wave circuit is that the voice is often distorted at the bottoms of the deep fades. When the signal decreases to a low level, it often happens that the speech becomes high-pitched as if considerable harmonic were present.

A third effect is the occasional very noticeable presence of a different kind of distortion on high and medium amplitudes of the signal. When this distortion is present it may result in the voice becoming low-pitched and guttural at one moment and high-pitched a moment later. This type of distortion is due to a partial suppression of certain fundamental frequencies in the voice, and not to the introduction of harmonic. As will be shown later, the second and third effects are, as these aural observations might indicate to a critical observer, actually different though the cause is fundamentally the same.

The fourth effect which might be detected by aural observation is that there apparently exists some relation between the average changes in amplitude of the signal and the changes in the character of the distortion represented as the third effect. To some extent, at least, this observation in itself would lead us to believe that the causes of general fading producing changes in volume of the signal from the receiver, and the selective fading represented by the partial suppression of certain speech frequencies, may be in some way related.

PRELIMINARY MULTITONE OBSERVATIONS

The frequency-amplitude characteristics represented by the multitone patterns substantiate all except the second of the aural observations mentioned above, i.e., the presence of harmonic distortion at the bottom of the fades. The harmonics present at such times are, as will be shown later, largely even multiples of the fundamental which the multitone filters are purposely arranged to suppress.

Fig. 9 shows in outline some multitone pattern shapes of the type which are characteristic of the Deal-New Southgate short-wave circuit. The patterns under (a) indicating a general rise and fall in the signal amplitude without relative changes in the amplitude over the width of the multitone band are rare and are accompanied by a very slow fading rate. The patterns under (b) are more common. These have been designated as "tilting" characteristics, and when they are in evidence

there oftentimes appear minima which move across the band in one direction or the other. These moving minima are not, as close observation will show, equally deep at all points in their transit.

The patterns shown under (d) of Fig. 9 are of a type which is most commonly observed. During the fading changes a minimum near the lower end of the multitone band becomes a maximum, while the maximum at the upper end of the band becomes, at the same time, a minimum. Incidentally these standing changes, as will be shown later, give us a clue as to the composition of these patterns. Another type of pattern which is fairly common is shown under (f). Here the minima

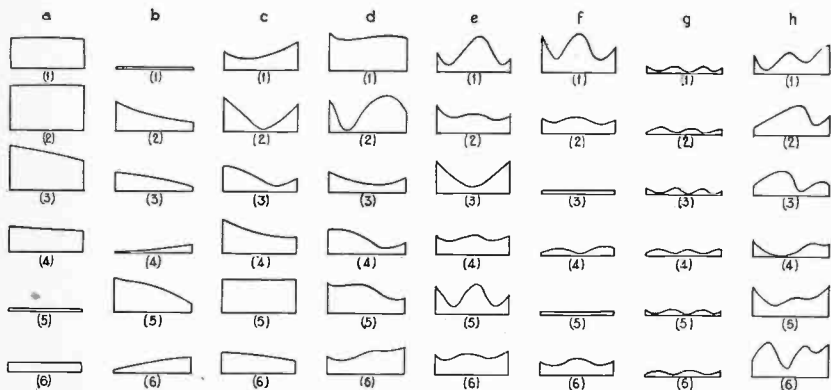


Fig. 9—Some representative multitone characteristics.

- (a) "Tilting" characteristics generally accompanying very slow fading.
- (b) "Tilting" characteristics with indication of shallow minima.
- (c) "Moving" minima which often accompany (b).
- (d) Single minimum in band alternating with maximum. (Most common sequence observed on 18-megacycle circuit.)
- (e) Two minima alternating with single maximum.
- (f) Two minima alternating with two low maxima.
- (g) Three minima alternating with three maxima. (Rarely observed and generally only on low amplitude during fades.)
- (h) Irregular pattern shapes occasionally observed.

also undergo standing changes to maxima, and vice versa. The presence of more than two deep minima in the multitone band is exceptional on the shorter wavelengths, but fairly common on the longer waves. On some occasions patterns, such as are shown under (g), were observed. These and the patterns under (h) are more usually confined to the longer wavelengths.

The rate of carrier fading generally increases in some relation to the number of minima which appear within the limits of the test band. It should also be mentioned that due to the standing changes described above, the amount of fading on different single tones (on a double side-band signal) may, at times, be quite unequal.

THE ACCURACY OF MULTITONE OBSERVATIONS

There are two conditions under which the method of observing the transient changes in frequency-amplitude relation by means of the multitone patterns so far described may become unreliable. Fortunately, these conditions seldom exist. In the first place, if the fading rate is comparable to the rate of the commutation utilized in the production of these patterns, they will become distorted. The commutator distributes the tones across the screen of the cathode-ray tube at a rate such that over 12 complete patterns are constructed each second. Thus, if the change in conditions within $1/12$ th of a second is small the distortion will be correspondingly negligible. Simultaneous fast records of multitone and continuous single tone on a moving-element oscillograph show that except on infrequent occasions, when rapid fading is present, the patterns are reliable within the limits which are imposed by irregularities such as accompany static or circuit noise. As far as the direct observations on the cathode-ray tube are concerned, the distortion is in any case more or less negated by the inability of the eye to follow the changes at times when they become sufficiently rapid to produce distortion. On a multitone record of the type shown in Fig. 13 and elsewhere, the distortion is evidently negligible in direct proportion to the number of times that a certain shape of pattern is repeated. If the shapes of adjacent patterns are entirely different, it may be assumed that the pictures are distorted.

Another condition under which the multitone patterns become unreliable may result from an assumption that the separation of the minima is comparable to the 170-cycle separation of the single tones constituting the multitone. If this were the case, there would be no relation between the patterns on the cathode-ray tube and the sound of the multitone. Actually, it is very easy to recognize by simultaneous aural observation the suppression of certain frequencies, as indicated by the shape of the multitone patterns. Only during those infrequent periods, when very rapid fading is present, has there been any indication of minima separation comparable to the separation of the single tones in the multitone signal.

It is very unlikely that the patterns are complicated by signals received from the rear around the world, since during most of the tests, directive antennas were used for transmission and reception.

ANALYSIS OF MULTITONE PATTERNS

An interpretation of the multitone patterns requires a preliminary consideration of the possible immediate causes of the distortion. Such a consideration must start with the assumption that the signals at the

point of reception may be subject to distortion both in space, and along the time axis. The wavefront might be skewed in space so that the amplitudes and phases of the signal components are selectively distorted when received on a vertical antenna. Distortion along the time axis would result if portions of the resultant signal at the receiver travel over two or more paths of different electrical length. We shall consider some of the possible conditions of the received signal which might account for selective fading as observed.

EFFECT OF CHANGE IN POLARIZATION WITH FREQUENCY

Rotation of the plane of polarization by that component of the earth's magnetic field which is parallel to the direction of wave travel as been discussed by others.² Such rotation is due to the difference in velocity of propagation of the right- and left-hand circularly polarized components. The angle of this rotation varies with frequency. P. O. Pedersen³ has given an approximate expression for the distance within which the plane of polarization of a short radio wave will be rotated through an angle of 2π . The approximate expression is as follows:

$$L_{2\pi} = \frac{mc}{Ne^2} \cdot \frac{\omega^2}{h} \cdot 10^{-6} \text{ (km)} \quad (1)$$

where, e = electron charge = $4.77 \cdot 10^{-10}$ e.s.u.
 m = $8.97 \cdot 10^{-28}$ grams
 c = velocity of light in cm per sec.
 N = number of electrons per cc
 ω = 2π times frequency (f)
 h = e/mc times magnetic field in gauss.

For a distance D of transmission through the electron atmosphere the rotation angle ϕ will therefore be

$$\phi = \frac{2\pi D}{L_{2\pi}} = \frac{DNe^2h}{2\pi mcf^2} \cdot 10^5 \text{ (radians)}$$

and the rate of change of rotation with frequency is,

$$\frac{d\phi}{df} = - \frac{DNe^2h}{\pi mcf^3} \cdot 10^5 \quad (2)$$

Knowing the rate of change of the rotation with frequency we can

² P. O. Pedersen, "The propagation of radio waves," Chap. VII, p. 95. H. W. Nichols and J. C. Schelleng, "Propagation of electric waves over the earth," *Bell. Sys. Tech. Jour.*, IV, 215, 1925.

³ Page 110.

determine the separation of the minima occurring at those frequencies which would be polarized at right angles to a vertical antenna.

Assuming a transmission range through the ionized atmosphere of 2,000 km, $N = 5 \cdot 10^5$, and $H = 0.2$ gauss, the minima separation for a frequency of $7 \cdot 10^6$ is about 1,000 cycles. For a frequency of 10^7 it becomes 3,300 cycles, and for a frequency of $1.5 \cdot 10^7$ the minima separation is 11,000 cycles.

According to these very approximate calculations, a selective rotation of the polarization plane over the signal band may contribute considerably to signal distortion when the transmission is parallel to the earth's magnetic field. It seems somewhat unlikely that this effect can produce material distortion on the short-wave channel between Deal and New Southgate, however. Here the component of the earth's field along the line of transmission is relatively small and undergoes a reversal in direction toward the midpoint. The direction of rotation would accordingly undergo a change.

Whether due to this effect or not the general experience has been that on the Deal-New Southgate circuit the distortion increases inversely with frequency in accordance with what we should expect from (2). Our knowledge of the several factors which in short-wave transmission contribute to the rotation of the polarization plane is as yet too limited to permit of any very conclusive statement concerning the importance of this effect. At the lower radio frequencies it may account for a part of the distortion revealed by the multitone tests.

By means of two separate multitone reception equipments arranged to receive the horizontal and vertical components of a single side-band signal, it would be possible to so combine the commutated outputs that the state of polarization of each of the high-frequency waves separated by 170 cycles would be shown side by side on the cathode-ray tube. These patterns might show that the polarization at a given instant is very different for the different frequencies, and that the figures are continually changing. Of the existence of this condition there is already available some experimental evidence. From the multitone tests and other similar data on selective fading we know that frequencies, separated by only a few hundred cycles in the high-frequency radio spectrum, fade in an apparently unrelated manner when received on a vertical antenna. It has also been noted that instantaneous fading conditions of the horizontal and vertical components of a single carrier wave are different.⁴ Therefore, we might reasonably expect that multitone patterns representing horizontal and vertical components of the received signal wave would be unlike when viewed simultaneously.

⁴ Unpublished data of H. T. Friis, Bell Telephone Laboratories. Discussion by T. L. Eckersley, *Jour. I. E. E.*, 66, 881.

This condition would necessitate a change in the state of polarization with frequency.

Incidentally a selective rotation of the polarization plane with frequency over the signal band would, when combined with the effect of a reflection from the earth's surface, result in a further distortion of the signal due to the fact that those components which are parallel to the incident plane will be less completely reflected than those which are perpendicular to this plane.

A change in the state of polarization with frequency may be accounted for by other effects than a selective rotation of the polarization plane. Assume, for example, that identical signals travel over two paths of different length to the receiver, and that each of these devious paths rotates the general plane of polarization differently (that is, the change in rotation with frequency over the signal band is negligible). As a result there will be present at the receiver two signal components which differ in time and space phase. To simplify matters let it be assumed further that the signals over the two paths are of the same amplitude and that their planes of polarization when they reach the receiver are at 90 deg. Due to the difference in length of the two paths, the relative time phase of similar frequencies in the two signals will vary progressively. Therefore, the state of polarization will be found to change from plane to circular, and back to plane polarization as we explore the frequency band.

Although there is some uncertainty as to the magnitude of the effect produced by the selective rotation of the polarization plane over the signal band, it may reasonably be expected that the polarization will change materially over the width of the signal band due to the combination at different space angles of waves arriving over different paths. As far as our analysis of such signals received on a vertical antenna is concerned we may neglect this difference in polarization for the different paths, bearing in mind, of course, that the relative magnitude of signals over separate paths may vary quite suddenly (and perhaps in some manner related to the fading) as the plane of polarization changes from the vertical to the horizontal.

EFFECT OF DISTORTION ALONG THE TIME AXIS

A source of selective distortion in a normal radio signal group (i.e., consisting of a carrier and two side bands), which may seem on first consideration to offer a plausible explanation of the observed effects, is side-band asymmetry. Such asymmetry occurs when the group velocity of the upper side band and carrier is different from that of the lower side band and carrier. (This effect is generally omitted

as negligible in the derivation of equations expressing the velocity of a wave group). If side-band asymmetry is the cause of distortion in the normal signal such distortion should disappear when we transmit only a single side band, and supply the carrier at the receiver. Actually the distortion does not disappear when a single side band is transmitted and a comparison of the multitone patterns for single and double side-band signals suggests that the effect of side-band asymmetry, if not negligible, is at least a secondary source of distortion.

The character of the distortion predicted on the assumption that the signal travels over more than one path between transmitter and receiver, and that these paths are of different group lengths, corresponds reasonably well with that which actually occurs for both the normal double side-band transmission and for the transmission of a single side band. The combination of a certain high-frequency wave arriving over one path with waves of the same frequency following other paths of different electrical length produces an interference pattern at the earth's surface. As has been previously stated, we may reasonably expect that the planes of polarization may be different for these waves arriving over different paths. As a result an exploration of the ether in the vicinity of the receiver would probably show that the polarization changes progressively as we go from one part of this single-frequency interference pattern to another. This pattern would probably be continually shifting about due to the unsettled nature of the transmitting medium. Furthermore, it would shift with changes in frequency of the transmitted waves.⁴ Therefore, at a particular point in a composite pattern produced by the transmission of a band of frequencies, we should probably find a progressive change in the state of polarization as we examine the different high-frequency components in the signal band. At those frequencies which are horizontally polarized, there would appear deep minima if single side-band multitone signals were received on a vertical antenna.

There is in the data here described no very definite evidence concerning the course of these different paths or the cause. Perhaps the most useful evidence that the multitone tests afford in this direction is that they show the complexity of the patterns to increase inversely with frequency, suggesting that the number of components or the number of paths perhaps increases. Making certain simple assumptions concerning the variation in ionization with height above the earth it is possible to account for two paths through two levels in the refracting medium where the rate of change of ionization with height may be effectively the same. These two points occur in regions of opposite

⁴ G. Breit, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 709, August, 1927.

curvature in the "ionization-height" curve. The intensity of the ray through the upper convex portion of the above-mentioned curve would in general be much below that of the ray through the concave portion due to the focusing effect in the latter case. These two rays do not seem sufficient in themselves to account for the observed multitone pattern shapes.

Another possible cause of devious paths might be more than the two refracting levels mentioned above. It is possible that the change in ionization with altitude is not as simple as we are at present inclined to presume. More than two levels at which the rate of change with ionization with altitude is effectively the same would account for a greater number of paths. This is equivalent to the theory that more than one layer exists. How an apparent increase in the number of paths with a decrease in frequency could be made to agree with this theory is not obvious, since the lower radio frequencies would not so readily penetrate the lower levels to be refracted from those higher up.

On the assumption that multiple earth reflections occur it is less difficult to account for the increase in number of paths with decreasing frequency. The lower radio frequencies would return to earth at the shorter ranges necessary for multiple reflections. The reflection points on the Deal-New Southgate circuit would occur at the ocean surface. Considering both the relative regularity of the ocean surface and its conductivity, the reflection losses would be much lower than those for soil.

There seems to be little to justify the idea that the different paths follow widely devious routes in the horizontal plane. Selective fading patterns of multitone received on simple vertical elements appear to be the same as those received on an array which is directive within some 10 deg. in the horizontal plane.

In the analysis of the effect of wave interference due to signals traveling over more than one path, it will be assumed that the receiving antenna is responsive only to the vertical components of the electric field. Therefore, we may initially neglect other than the vertical components of polarization, but, of course, (as was previously suggested) the relative amplitudes of these vertical components may change rapidly as the planes of polarization shift. Actually, it has been found upon analysis of single side-band multitone data that the rate of change in the amplitude relation between the different signal components arriving over different paths is at times apparently comparable to the rate at which the pattern moves across the band. This suggests that the changes in relative length of path which presumably cause fading are accompanied by a relative rotation of the polarization plane.

If the condition of the received signal is complicated as suggested by variations in time and space phase of the components, a direct analysis of the multitone characteristics such as are shown in Fig. 9 is obviously difficult. The method of analysis which has been adopted is that of constructing synthetic patterns, and comparing these with actual records. The information obtained from the study of synthetic patterns also assisted in the collection of data during observations, for it directed attention to certain recurring shapes and sequences of pattern changes. Assuming that the distortion is due to signals traveling over paths of different electrical length from the transmitter to the receiver, it is then necessary to make assumptions concerning the number of such paths, their relative length, and the relative amplitude of components arriving over each. If there are only two signal paths between transmitter and receiver, the spacing of the minima in the frequency spectrum would be quite regular, and they would move across the high-frequency signal band in one way or the other, depending upon the relative changes in electrical length of the two paths. When more than two paths exist the movement of minima is complicated by the fact that the different combinations of two-path interference patterns do not necessarily move in the same direction or at the same rate at a given instant.

Under (a) and (b) of Fig. 10 are shown a series of double side-band patterns constructed synthetically upon the assumption that the signal travels over *two* paths. When the signal components are equal in amplitude, as assumed for (a) of Fig. 10, the minima do not change position during a fade. When the two components are not equal, as under (b), there is a shallow minimum which during a fade will be replaced by a low maximum. There is little correspondence between these synthetic "two-path" patterns and the representative observed patterns of Fig. 9. Patterns of this "two-path" type have occasionally been observed, however, and multitone records, illustrating selective fading of this character, will be shown later. From a careful comparison of synthetic two-path multitone characteristics with those observed throughout the year we are led to the conclusion that the selective fading on the Deal-New Southgate short-wave circuit must, except during a small percentage of the time, be the result of signals traveling over more than two paths between transmitter and receiver.

Synthetic patterns based upon the assumption that three paths exist between transmitter and receiver may be made to correspond rather well with the majority of the observed multitone pictures. The agreement between these synthetic three-path patterns and

most of those observed is materially improved by making a further reasonable assumption that the amplitudes of the components received over the different paths are subject to change. Such changes may, as has previously been suggested, be due to shifts in the planes of polarization of the interfering components. They may also be due to changes in attenuation along the different paths, to wave interference between components arriving over slightly different paths (taken as a single path in our assumptions), or to changes in the direction of arrival of the components when the horizontal or vertical directivity of the antenna system is sufficiently sharp.

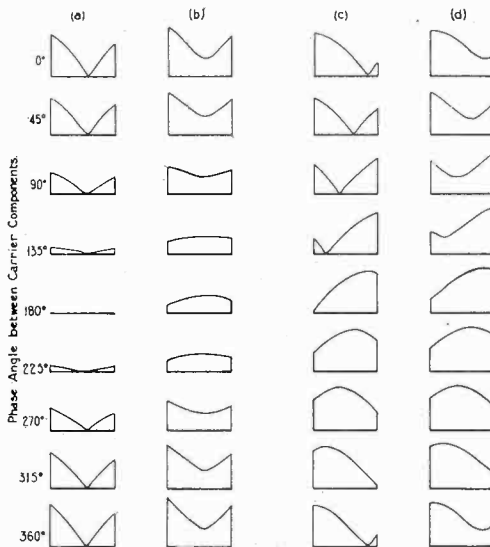


Fig. 10—Synthetic multitone characteristics for double and single side-band signals assuming only two paths.

- (a) Double side-band signal, $D = 100$ km; $k = 1$
- (b) Double side-band signal, $D = 100$ km; $k = 2$
- (c) Single side-band signal, $D = 100$ km; $k = 1$
- (d) Single side-band signal, $D = 100$ km; $k = 2$

In order to approximate the shape of some of the patterns which are observed, it is necessary to assume that more than three paths exist. Such patterns as these appear continuously only upon rare occasions. As a rule they occur for brief intervals as if the additional paths were short-lived, or ordinarily negligible in their effect upon the selective fading. The distortion produced as a result of the signal traveling over more than one path from transmitter to receiver will be discussed in the following section.

HIGH-FREQUENCY SIGNAL DISTORTION DUE TO MORE THAN ONE TRANSMISSION PATH

Before going into the case of distortion produced in the detected audio-frequency signal the equations will be set down for the frequency-amplitude relation of the high-frequency signal components. Incidentally these equations represent also the distortion produced when only one side band of the signal is transmitted and the carrier is supplied at the receiving point. The case of distortion produced in the high-frequency band is less complicated than the double side-band, audio-frequency case in which the relative phases and amplitudes of the carrier and side-band components must be considered.

For the case in which the interfering components maintain a constant amplitude relation the distortion in the high-frequency band may be represented by (3) below, wherein the phase of one wave is taken as a reference value, and D_1 and D_2 denote the difference in group length of path as referred to the length of the reference path.⁵

$$E_a = E_0 \sin \omega t + E_1 \sin (\omega t - D_1 \omega / c) + E_2 \sin (\omega t - D_2 \omega / c). \quad (3)$$

Rewriting (3) and grouping sine and cosine factors we have,

$$E_a = (E_0 + E_1 \cos D_1 \omega / c + E_2 \cos D_2 \omega / c) \sin \omega t - (E_1 \sin D_1 \omega / c + E_2 \sin D_2 \omega / c) \cos \omega t \quad (4)$$

The values in the parentheses of (4) are the amplitude factors which for a given condition of the ether path vary with frequency. The equation (4) may be written as,

$$E_a = A_\omega \sin \omega t - B_\omega \cos \omega t$$

and the resultant amplitude for any particular frequency in the signal band (i.e., $\omega/2\pi$) becomes,

$$E_\omega = \sqrt{A_\omega^2 + B_\omega^2} \quad (5)$$

where,

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A_\omega &= 1 + k_1 \cos \alpha_1 + k_2 \cos \alpha_2 \\ B_\omega &= k_1 \sin \alpha_1 + k_2 \sin \alpha_2 \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (6)$$

In equations (6), k_1 and k_2 represent the ratios of voltages induced in the receiving antenna, E_1/E_0 and E_2/E_0 , respectively, and α_1 and α_2 the angles $D_1 \omega / c$, and $D_2 \omega / c$.

⁵ The difference in group length of two paths may be expressed in terms of the phase length of path as,

$$D = (L_g)_1 - (L_g)_2 = (L_1 - L_2) + f[(dL/df)_1 - (dL/df)_2]$$

The path difference, D , does not represent the actual difference in physical length of the two paths.

The amplitude-frequency characteristic for the high-frequency components of a double side-band signal or the equivalent audio-frequency components of a single side-band signal is, therefore, obtained by substituting values of k_1 , k_2 , D_1 , and D_2 in (6), and solving for the resultant amplitude at different frequencies in (5).

A point of particular interest in connection with the frequency-amplitude patterns based upon (5) is that the minima of these patterns are entirely unrestricted in their position in the frequency band of the signal; that is, in a single side-band signal, no particular frequency will be subjected to greater fading than any other in the audio-frequency band. Such is not the case, as will be shown later, when we are considering the transient audio-frequency characteristic of a double side-band signal.

TRANSIENT AUDIO-FREQUENCY CHARACTERISTICS FOR DOUBLE SIDE-BAND TRANSMISSION CASE

In developing the amplitude-frequency equations for the double side-band case, we shall again assume that similar components of a signal travel over three paths between transmitter and receiver. The angular velocity of the carrier wave will be taken as ω and that of the modulation wave as q .

Then the three signal components arriving at the receiver over the three paths may be separately represented by the following equations:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} E_0 &= \sin \omega t + m/2 \sin (\omega + q)t + m/2 \sin (\omega - q)t \\ E_1 &= k_1 \left\{ \sin (\omega t - D_1\omega/c) + m/2 \sin [(\omega + q)t - (\omega + q)D_1/c] \right. \\ &\quad \left. + m/2 \sin [(\omega - q)t - (\omega - q)D_1/c] \right\} \\ E_2 &= k_2 \left\{ \sin (\omega t - D_2\omega/c) + m/2 \sin [(\omega + q)t - (\omega + q)D_2/c] \right. \\ &\quad \left. + m/2 \sin [(\omega - q)t - (\omega - q)D_2/c] \right\} \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (7)$$

In these equations k_1 and k_2 represent the ratio of voltages induced in the receiving antenna E_1/E_0 and E_2/E_0 , respectively. The constant m depends upon the percentage modulation, and the phase of the voltage E_0 is assumed to be "zero" so that D_1 and D_2 are the differences in "group" length of the paths as referred to the path of the signal E_0 .

Letting $\alpha_1 = D_1\omega/c$, $\beta_1 = qD_1/c$, $\alpha_2 = D_2\omega/c$, and $\beta_2 = qD_2/c$, substituting these values in equations (7), and adding E_0 , E_1 , and E_2 , we have

$$\begin{aligned} E_0 + E_1 + E_2 &= \sin \omega t + k_1 \sin (\omega t - \alpha_1) + k_2 \sin (\omega t - \alpha_2) \\ &\quad + m/2 \sin (\omega + q)t + k_1 m/2 \sin [(\omega + q)t - (\alpha_1 + \beta_1)] \\ &\quad + k_2 m/2 \sin [(\omega + q)t - (\alpha_2 + \beta_2)] + m/2 \sin (\omega - q)t \\ &\quad + k_1 m/2 \sin [(\omega - q)t - (\alpha_1 - \beta_1)] + k_2 m/2 \sin [(\omega - q)t - (\alpha_2 - \beta_2)] \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

When equation (8) is squared (i.e., the signal subjected to square law detection), and the fundamental audio-frequency terms are retained it reduces to the form

$$E_A = A \sin qt + B \cos qt \quad (9)$$

in which

$$\left. \begin{aligned} A &= m \left\{ (1 + k_1 \cos \alpha_1 + k_2 \cos \alpha_2) + [k_1 \cos \alpha_1 + k_1^2 + k_1 k_2 (\cos \alpha_1 \cos \alpha_2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \sin \alpha_1 \sin \alpha_2)] \cos \beta_1 + [k_2 \cos \alpha_2 + k_2^2 + k_1 k_2 (\cos \alpha_1 \cos \alpha_2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \sin \alpha_1 \sin \alpha_2)] \cos \beta_2 \right\} \\ B &= m \left\{ [k_1 \cos \alpha_1 + k_1^2 + k_1 k_2 (\cos \alpha_1 \cos \alpha_2 + \sin \alpha_1 \sin \alpha_2)] \sin \beta_1 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + [k_2 \cos \alpha_2 + k_2^2 + k_1 k_2 (\cos \alpha_1 \cos \alpha_2 + \sin \alpha_1 \sin \alpha_2)] \sin \beta_2 \right\} \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (10)$$

These values of A and B can be handled more conveniently if we let

$$M = (1 + k_1 \cos \alpha_1 + k_2 \cos \alpha_2)$$

$$N = k_1 \cos \alpha_1 + k_1^2 + k_1 k_2 (\cos \alpha_1 \cos \alpha_2 + \sin \alpha_1 \sin \alpha_2) \quad (11)$$

$$P = k_2 \cos \alpha_2 + k_2^2 + k_1 k_2 (\cos \alpha_1 \cos \alpha_2 + \sin \alpha_1 \sin \alpha_2)$$

The resultant amplitude of any particular audio frequency is then determined by the relation

$$(E_A)_\omega = \sqrt{A_\omega^2 + B_\omega^2} \quad (12)$$

in which

$$A_\omega = m(M + N \cos \beta_1 + P \cos \beta_2) \quad (13)$$

$$B_\omega = m(N \sin \beta_1 + P \sin \beta_2)$$

From (13) fundamental audio-frequency-amplitude patterns for a double side-band signal may be obtained by assuming certain phase relations for the three carriers (determining α_1 and α_2), path differences (determining β_1 and β_2), relative strength of signals received over the three paths (determining k_1 and k_2) and the percentage modulation m .

It must be emphasized that the above equation (12) determines only the relative amplitudes of the *fundamental* modulation components since only the fundamental terms were retained when (8) was squared. The reason for neglecting the double frequency terms was that, in the test method, these frequencies were intentionally suppressed by a suitable spacing of the test tones, and the action of the receiving filters. The distortion caused by the generation of harmonics will therefore be considered later as a separate problem.

SYNTHETIC MULTITONE PATTERNS

In Fig. 10 is shown a series of synthetic multitone audio-frequency transmission patterns for double and single side-band signals. Two transmission paths are assumed. The difference in electrical length of the two paths was taken as 100 km. For the double and single side-band series (a) and (c), respectively, the amplitudes of the two components were assumed to be equal. For (b) and (d) the amplitudes of the component received over one path was assumed to be twice that received over the other. It will be noted that the single side-band signal does not fade to zero in the series (c) as does the double side-band signal in the series (a) when the two equal carrier waves fall into opposition. Also the minima move across the single side-band characteristic, and remain fixed in the double side-band case.

When the components are not equal, the minima are shallow and in the double side-band pattern they are replaced by shallow maxima. Modifications in the double side-band pattern with relative phase shifts may be described as standing changes. Such changes will not occur in the single side-band patterns if only two paths are responsible for the selective fading. The single side-band patterns for the two-path case would consist simply of regularly spaced minima which would move across the multitone picture one way or the other depending upon whether the difference in the group length of the two paths is increasing or decreasing, and whether the upper or lower side band of the signal is transmitted. With an increase in the group path-length difference the minima move toward the low end of the high-frequency spectrum and vice versa. When the upper side band alone is transmitted and the carrier is supplied at the receiver, the audio-frequency pattern corresponds to that of the high frequency. Under these conditions a minima movement toward the low end of the audio band indicates a similar movement toward the low end of the high-frequency spectrum. If the lower side band is transmitted the sense of the movement at the audio frequency is opposite to that at the high frequency.

In Fig. 11 are shown several series of synthetic double side-band patterns based upon the assumption of three-path transmission. Each block of patterns represents a different path-length relation, and the assumption is made that the signal components received over the three paths are equal. Relative phase shifts of the carriers associated with two of the components are shown by the angles α_1 and α_2 , described earlier. Disregarding for the moment the limitations of the multitone test band, it may be said that the shapes of these patterns depend primarily upon the ratio of the group path-

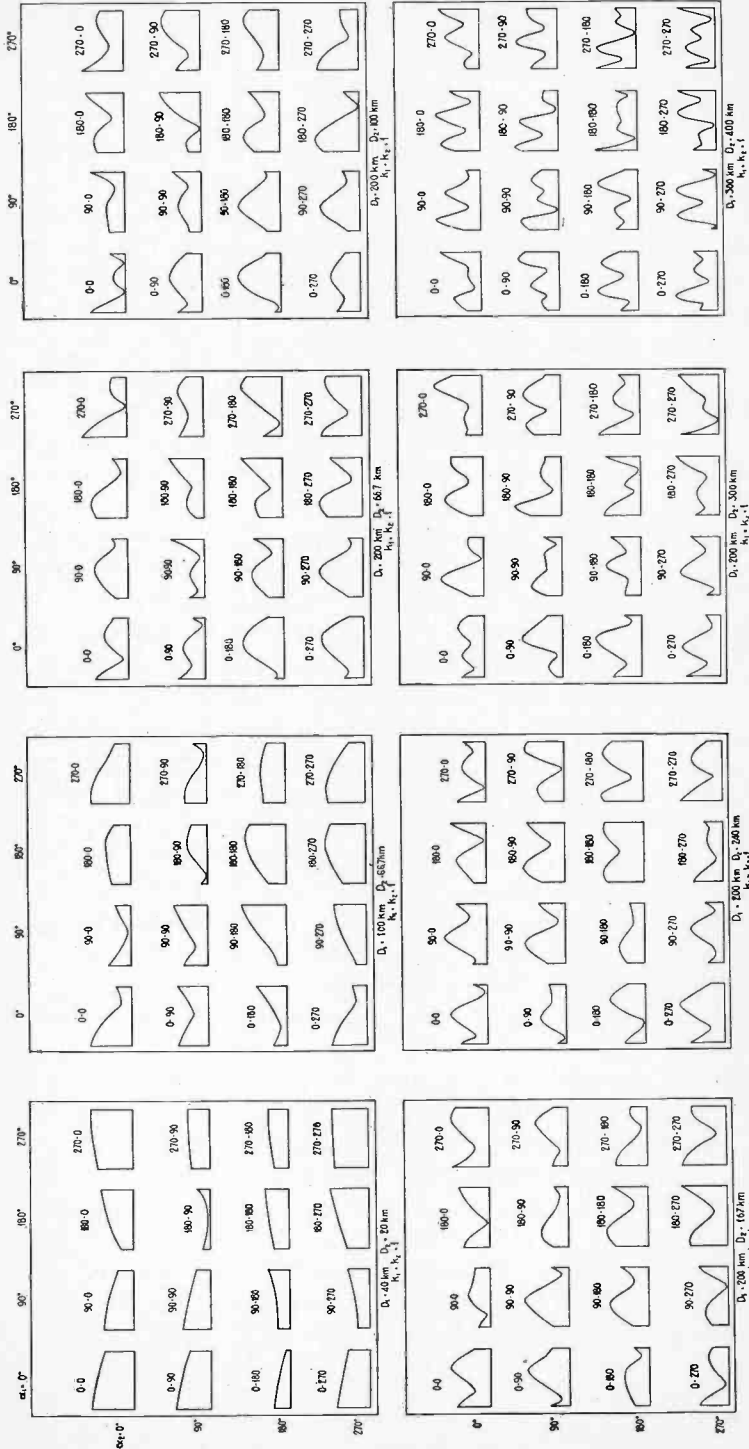


Fig. 11—Synthetic double side-band multitone characteristics assuming equal signal amplitude over three paths.

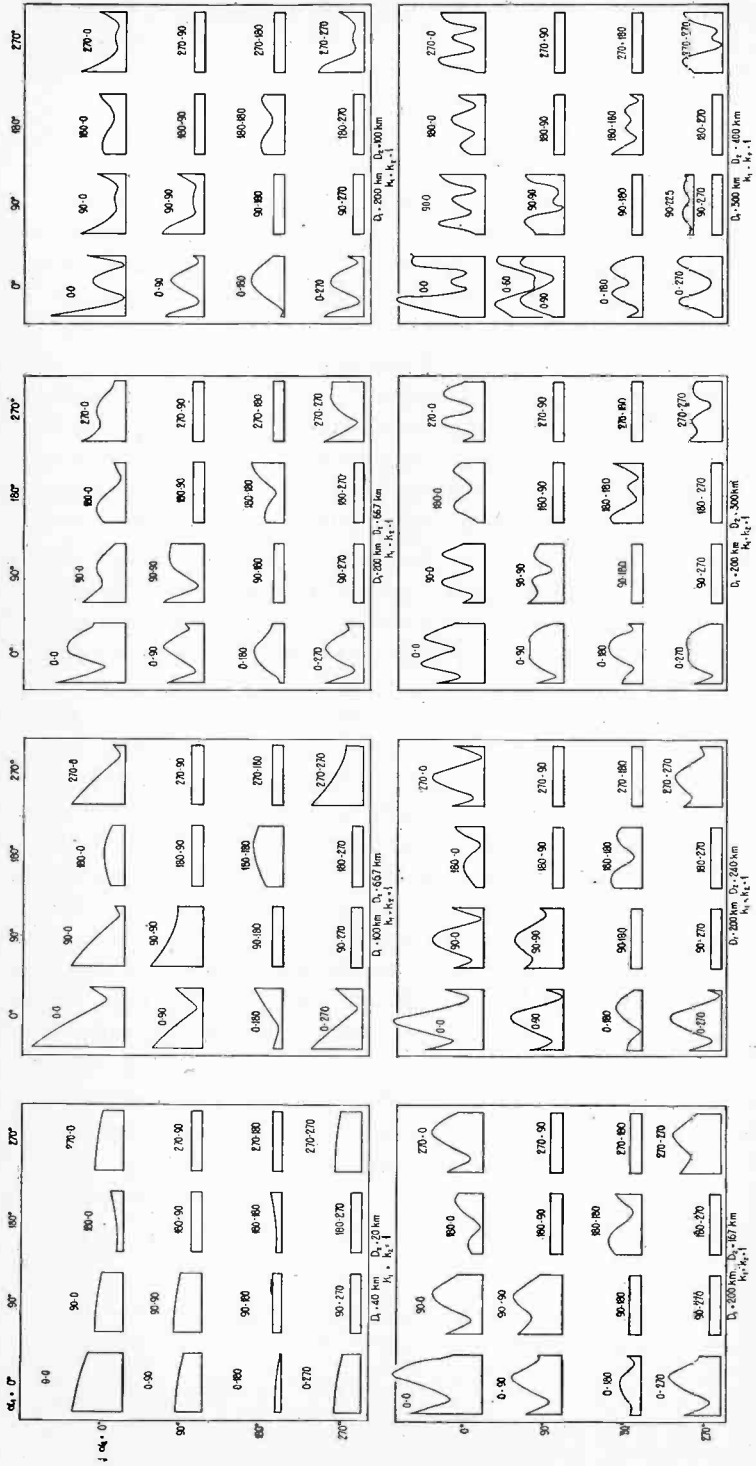


Fig. 12—Synthetic single side-band multitone characteristics assuming equal amplitude over three paths.

length differences. Thus the shape of the patterns for $D_1=20$ km, and $D_2=40$ km, is the same as for $D_1=200$ km, and $D_2=400$ km except that in the latter case there is much more of the pattern squeezed into the frequency range of the multitone band.

In these double side-band patterns it will be noticed that there are several conditions under which the amplitude-frequency characteristic is flat. This occurs when two of the three carrier components oppose one another and are, at the same time, at 90 deg. with respect to the remaining carrier. Under these conditions the side bands associated with the suppressed carriers are in such a phase relation to the remaining carrier that they do not contribute any *fundamental* audio frequencies during the detection process. When we come to a consideration of the harmonic produced by the selective fading, we shall find that although the fundamental characteristic is flat, the harmonic may, under the conditions discussed above, become relatively high so that actually the signal is not free from distortion even though the fundamental frequency-amplitude pattern is rectangular.

Due to the 90 deg. steps between the patterns, shown in Fig. 11, no zero fades appear. For the case of equal signal amplitude received over three paths the fundamental tones of the demodulated signal would drop to zero when the three carriers are spaced 120 deg. apart in time phase.

Fig. 12 shows a series of synthetic single side-band characteristics corresponding to those for the double side-band cases shown in Fig. 11. The single side-band patterns often resemble those for the same carrier phase relations in the double side-band case. The similarity is, as we might expect, most pronounced when the resultant carrier of the double side-band signal is at a point in the high-frequency amplitude-interference pattern where the pattern below the carrier frequency is a mirror image of that above in the high-frequency spectrum. The minima may move across the band or undergo standing changes in the three-path single side-band case. There is not the regular procession of minima across the multitone pattern that there is in the two-path patterns shown in (c) and (d) of Fig. 10. Another distinguishing difference between the single and double side-band patterns for the three-path case is that in the former the characteristic does not flatten out as it often does in the latter. A flat characteristic must be the result of a change in the amplitude ratio of the interfering components.

RECORDED MULTITONE PATTERNS

Figs. 13 to 22, inclusive, show a series of multitone pictures for single side-band transmission of the multitone signal, and for the trans-

mission of both side bands and carrier. These tests covered the hours between 0845 and 1545 E.S.T. on May 16, 1928. They were made at a carrier frequency of approximately 18.34 megacycles. The patterns were recorded oscillographically on sensitized paper in the manner previously described. In these illustrations successive multitone characteristics have been cut from the original record strip and arranged one above the other so that the minima movement, and changes in pattern shape, could be more readily followed.

Some of the small irregularities which appear in these patterns are due to static. Others may perhaps be due to small components of signal arriving over widely different paths so as to produce closely spaced minima. Since they were taken at the rate of 12-1/2 pictures a second, they actually represent but a very small portion of the whole test period. Visual observations were made on the cathode ray tube during the whole period of each test, and samples of the fading were "snapped" at intervals during the course of these observations. Up to about 1200 E.S.T. the average selective fading on the circuit was less severe than these oscillograph records would indicate. The different components producing the selective fading seemed, in themselves, to fade in and out slowly, perhaps due to changes in the angle of polarization. At times their amplitude relation became such that the minima were pronounced. Between these periods when deep minima were present the characteristic would often approach flatness. *A perfectly flat characteristic was at all times a rare and transient condition.* Those records taken after 1200 E.S.T. are fairly representative of average circuit conditions.

Although the records taken before 1200 E.S.T. are not representative of the average *amount* of distortion on the circuit, they are all representative of the *character* of the distortion. During the early part of the test it will be noticed that the minima were much further apart than they were between 1300 and 1500 E.S.T. The minima spacing during any one test appeared to remain the same, which indicates that although the different components did not remain the same in relative amplitude, the relative path-length remained practically constant. Since this is the usual experience during the course of any day's observations, it seems reasonable to assume that these interfering components do not appear at random, but are the result of some systematic condition of the transmission path.

During the early part of the tests represented by Figs. 13 to 21, there was very little evidence of closely spaced minima such as appear in Figs. 17, 18, and 19. The visual observations and some of the oscillograph records indicate that the closely spaced pattern was present occasionally in small amounts. In the single side-band

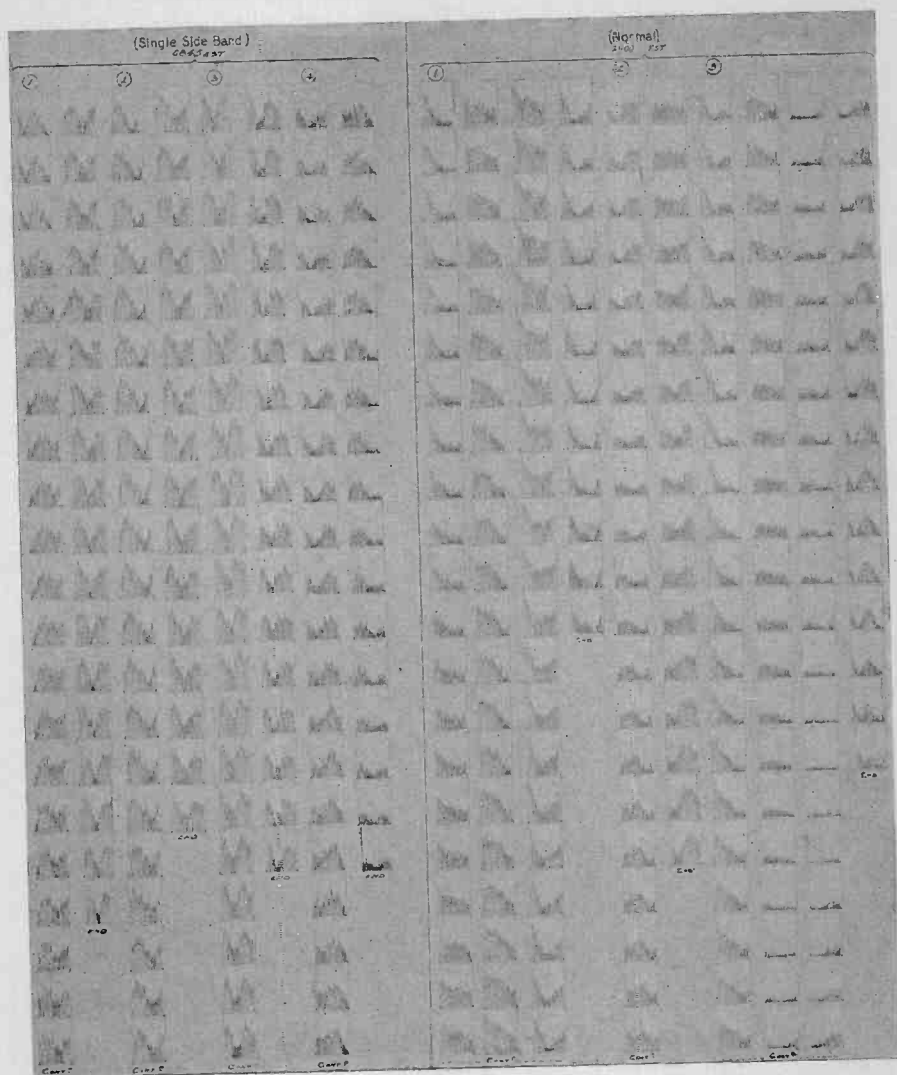


Fig. 13—Normal and single side-band multitone patterns recorded on 18 megacycle Deal-New Southgate channel, May 16, 1928. (Patterns recorded at rate of $12\frac{1}{2}$ a second and arranged in sequence from top to bottom of rows.)

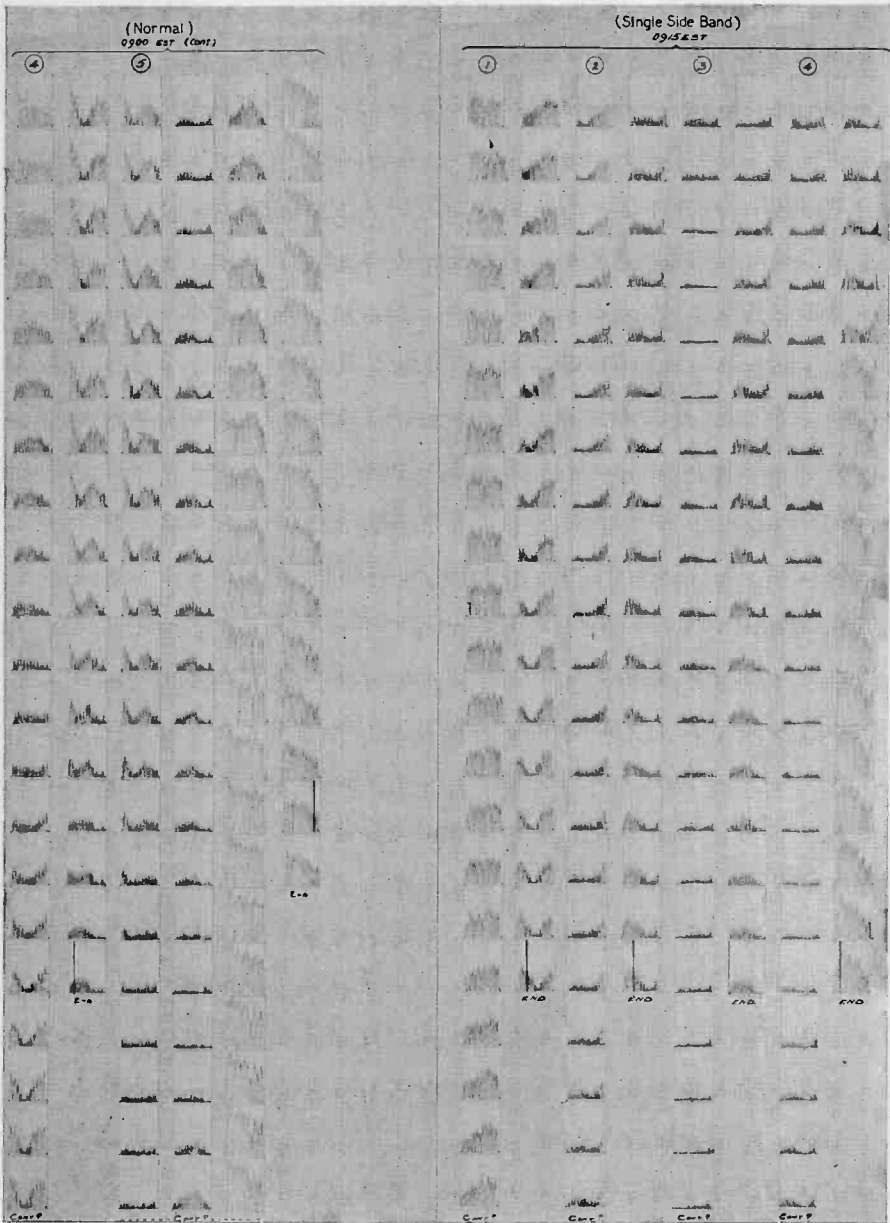


Fig. 14—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

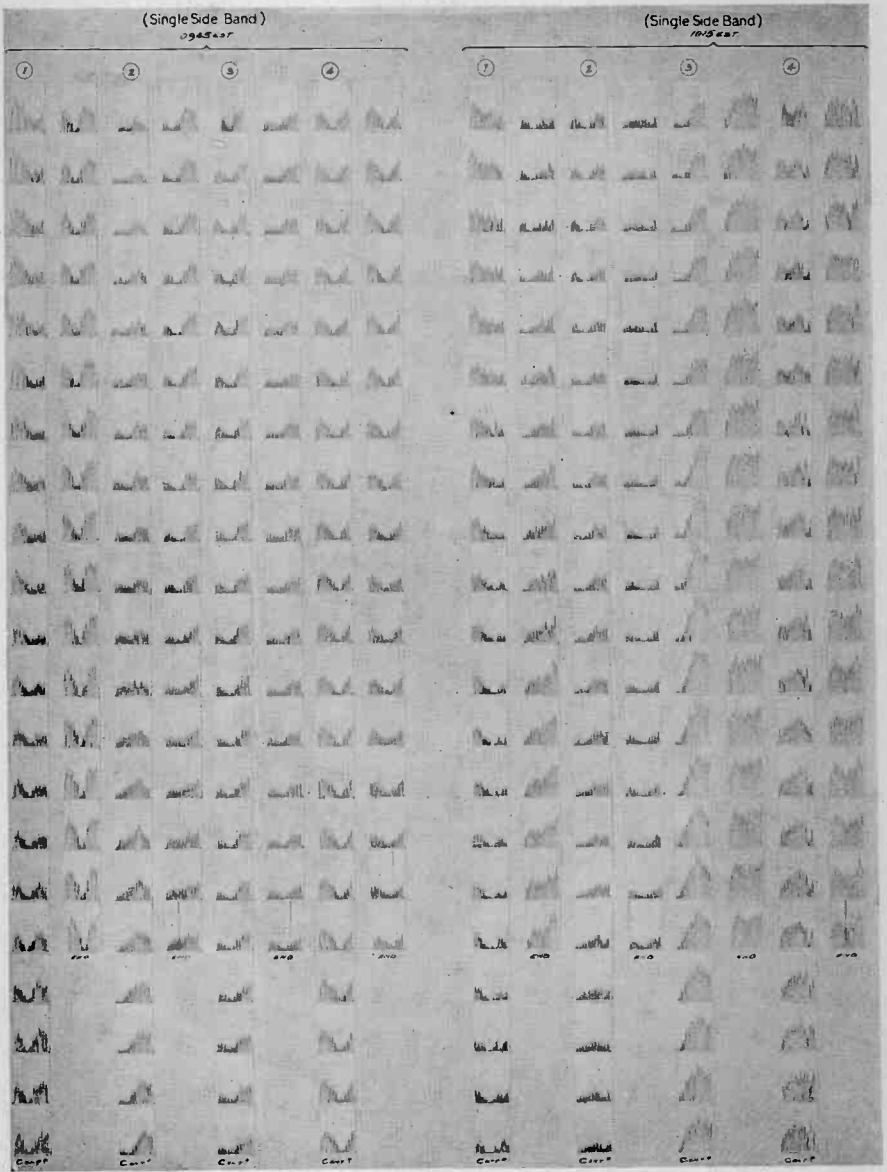


Fig. 15—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

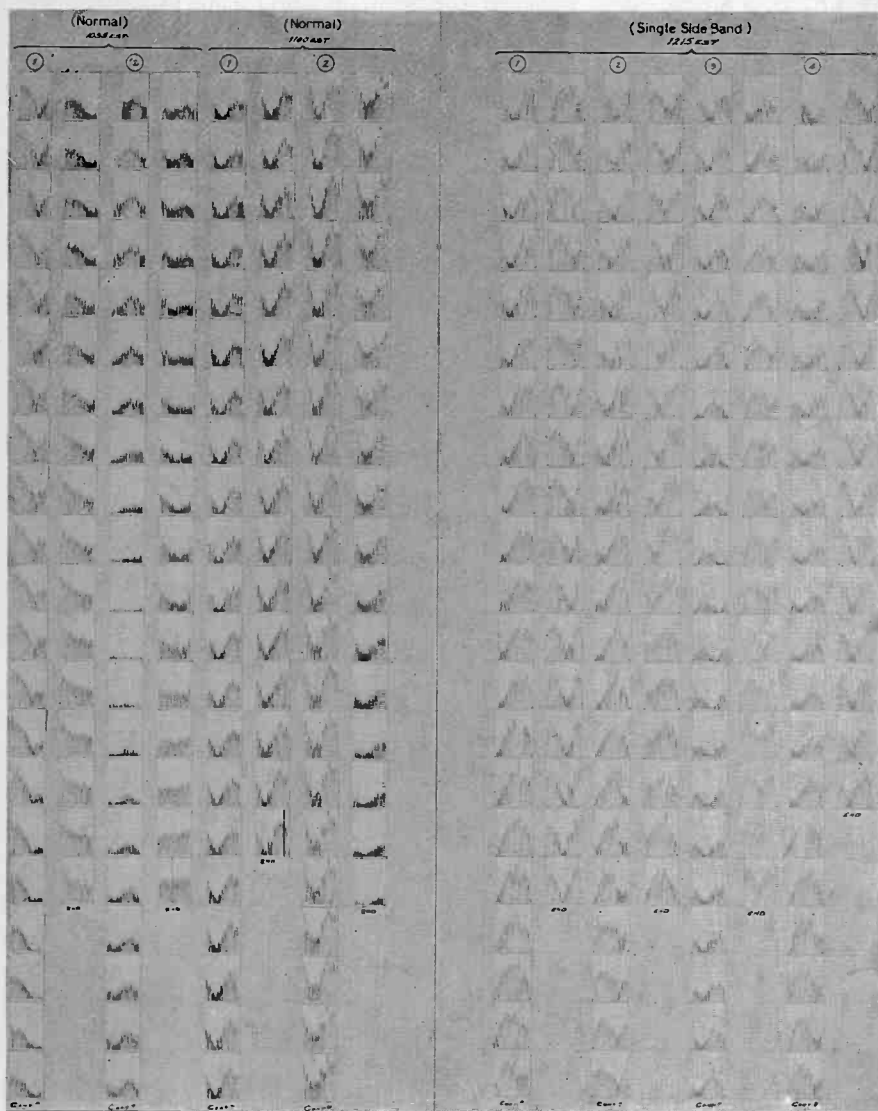


Fig. 16—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

record of Fig. 17 taken at 1115 E.S.T. there was much more of the closely spaced minima than appears in previous records. In this record there is evidence of changes in the relative amplitude of the interfering components which may, perhaps, be ascribed to variations in their planes of polarization. (By starting at the upper left-hand corner of this page and following down the columns in succession, one can visualize to some extent the actual appearance of the moving patterns which could be seen on the cathode-ray tube during this test. The 360 multitone pictures shown in Fig. 17 cover a period of about half a minute). In the single side-band record of 1215 E.S.T. the closely spaced minima pattern seems to have disappeared again. In Figs. 18, 19, and 20 they again appear very prominently. During this time the signal seems to have been received largely over two paths. A close examination of the normal records for 1300 and 1430 will reveal high maxima at two points in the multitone band which during the course of the fade are replaced by shallow minima. During that part of the fading cycle represented by the latter condition the general level of the signal is low because the two carriers arriving over the different paths are in opposition. The shapes of the patterns in the single side-band records for 1415 and 1445 E.S.T. are similar to those for the normal transmission at 1300 and 1430 E.S.T. but it will be noticed that the minima are moving across the multitone band instead of undergoing standing changes as they do for the "normal" case.

At 1515 E.S.T. during the single side-band observation the fading was very rapid. The changes were too fast to be followed by the commutator, or by the eye. However, at moments when the pattern hesitated for a brief interval in its movement, the close minima of the previous tests were clearly visible. The relative length of the paths was apparently changing rapidly. Fifteen minutes later during the observations on the normal signal the rapid fading and the closely spaced minima had both disappeared. The patterns which remained resembled those which had been observed earlier in the test. At 1545 the single side-band observations occasionally showed a small amount of the closely spaced minima. If, as the multitone tests suggest, portions of the received signal have actually followed separate paths from the transmitter, it seems likely that the diurnal variation of signal strength over these paths might be different. The variation in the average depth of the minima from hour to hour certainly suggests a dissimilar variation in the magnitude of the components producing the patterns. During the course of these tests it has been the experience that changes in average field are often, though not always, accompanied by changes in the character or depth of the



Fig. 17—A continuous sequence of single side-band multitone patterns covering about one-half minute. (Otherwise same as Fig. 13 continued.)

selective fading. Fig. 23 shows the changes in average field over the period represented by the multitone records of Figs. 13 to 22. Field-strength readings were taken every half hour upon the carrier received during the "normal" transmission period. The arrival of the closely spaced minima described above seems to have accompanied the disappearance of the peak around 1230 E.S.T. and the appearance of the peak at 1500 E.S.T.

GENERAL AND SELECTIVE FADING

The audible signal amplitude is proportional to the product of the carrier and side-band amplitudes. The carrier is a single frequency, but the side band, as the term suggests, includes a range of frequencies which in radiotelephony may occupy some 3000 cycles either side of the carrier. The different frequencies in these side bands do not fade together so that an expression for the strength of the resultant audible signal becomes a little complicated. It is, however, approximately proportional to the product of the carrier and the average amplitude of the side bands (i.e., as averaged over the frequency range of these bands at any instant).

If now the signal travels over two paths from transmitter to receiver, and one of these paths is much longer than the other, two or more minima may appear in the side bands at the receiver. As these minima travel across the high-frequency signal band, the *average* amplitude of the side bands will remain practically constant, but the carrier will vary from a maximum to a minimum. Therefore, the general fading under these circumstances would be directly proportional to the variation in carrier amplitude.

When the path-length difference is small the minima separation in the high-frequency spectrum becomes large. Then both the side bands and the carrier fade in and out together. In this case the amplitude of the "general" fading would be proportional to the square of the carrier variation.

This line of reasoning would lead us to conclude that the depth of fading on normal transmission at times when the minima are widely separated will be much greater than when they are close together. The conclusion seems to agree with observation. During times when the multitone patterns for a signal consisting of two side bands and a carrier tilt and fade slowly out and in as if the minima were widely separated, the amplitude of the general fading, as judged by the ear, seems to be much greater than at times when two or three minima are crowded into the band.

It appears that there would be little advantage in transmitting only one side band with the carrier as far as the reduction of general

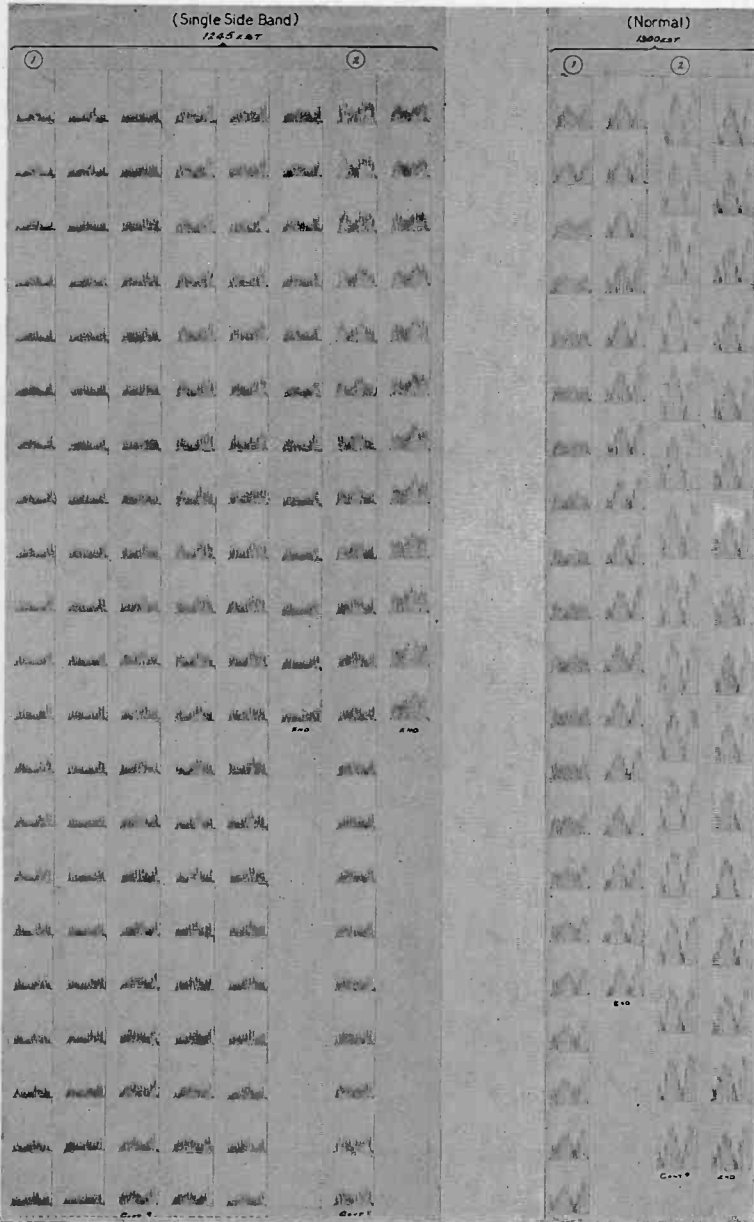


Fig. 18—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

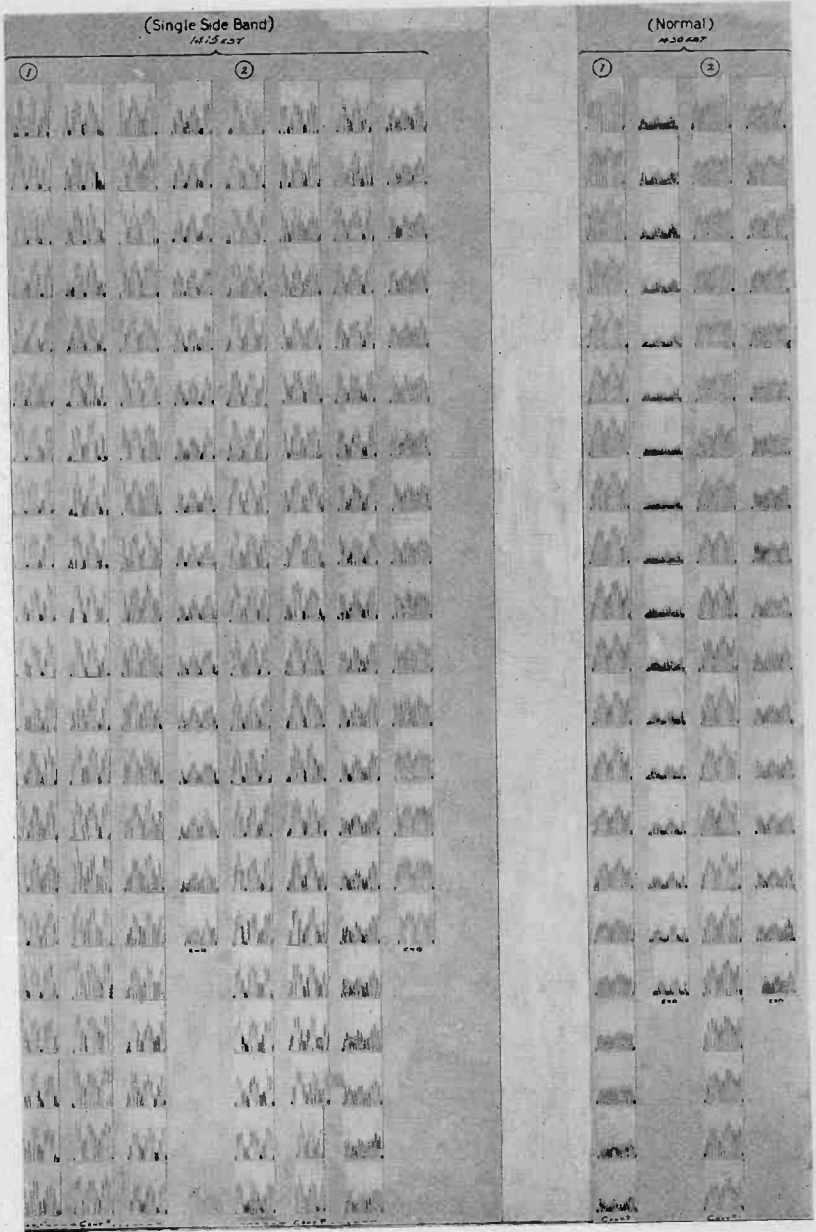


Fig. 19—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

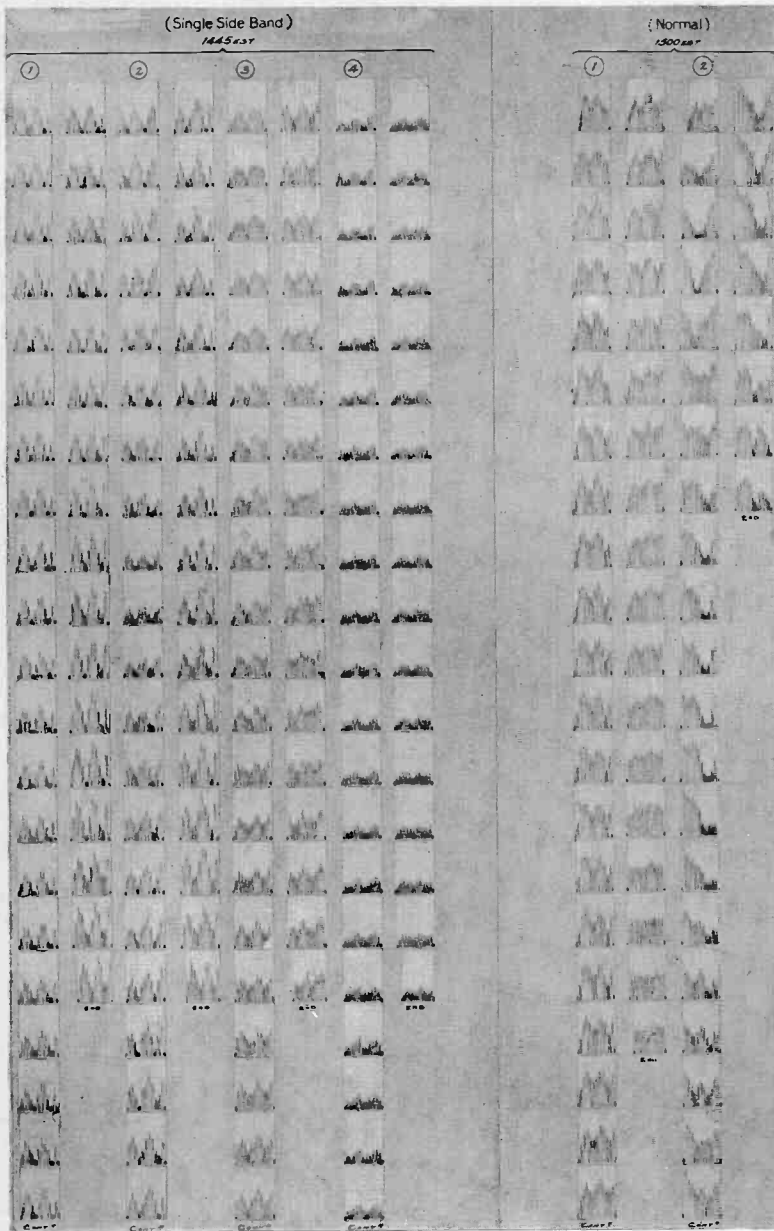


Fig. 20—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

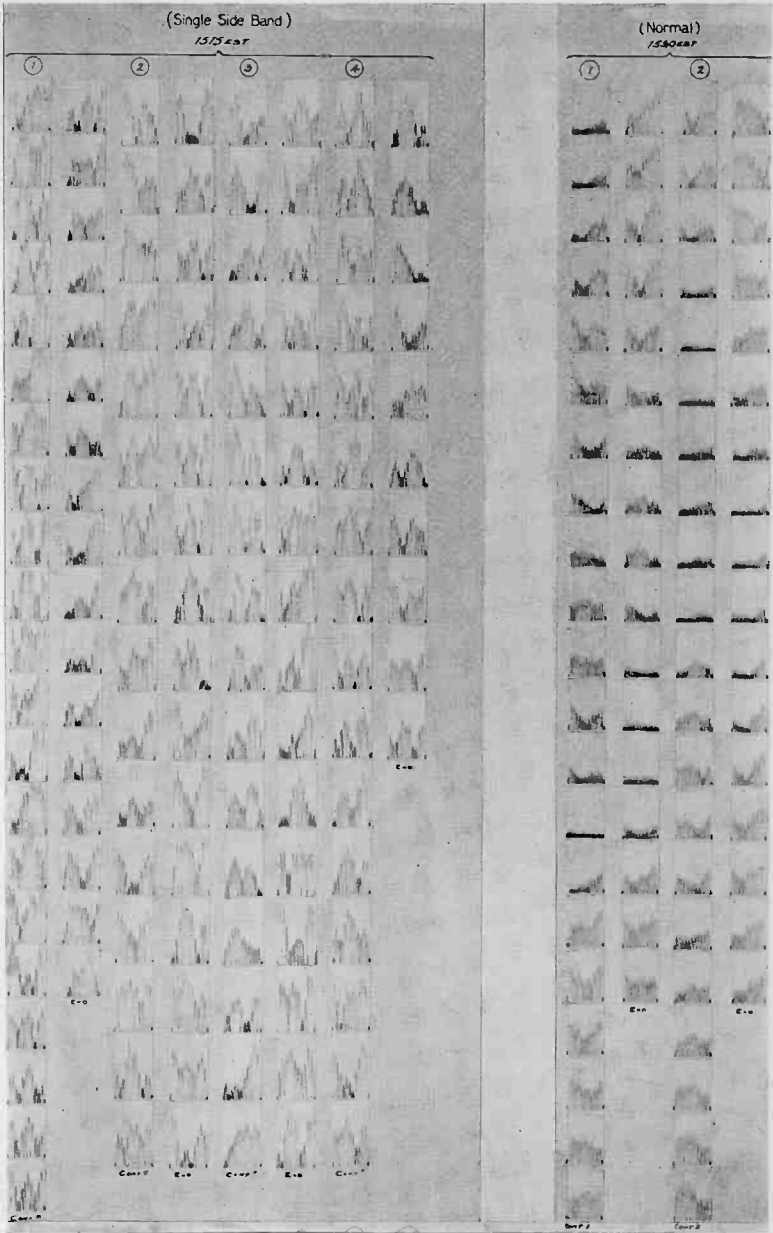


Fig. 21—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

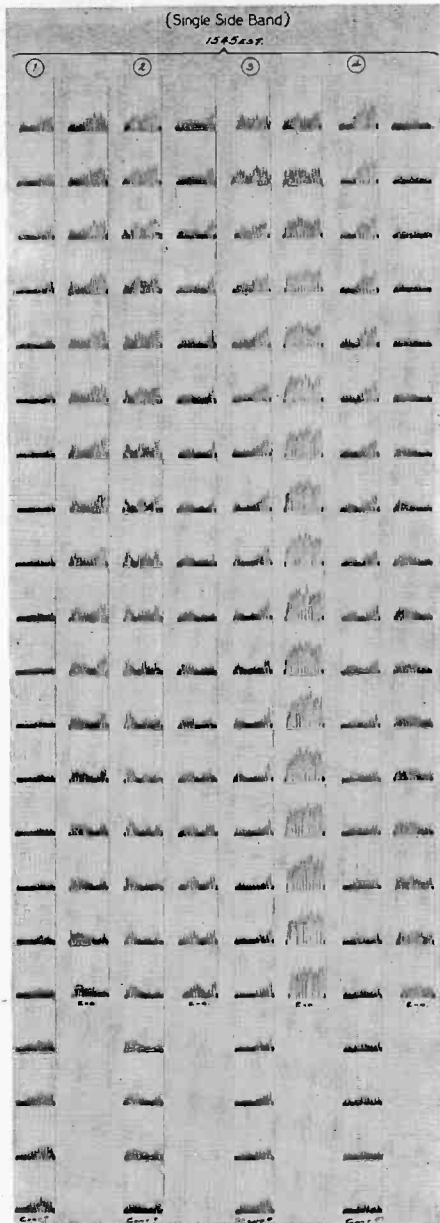


Fig. 22—Same as Fig. 13 continued.

fading and fundamental distortion is concerned. (The term fundamental distortion refers to the selective suppression or exaggeration of the audio frequencies which were modulated upon the carrier at the transmitter rather than to the introduction of harmonics.) When one or more minima are constantly present in the voice band there are conditions under which opposite side-band components associated with the same audio frequency tone in a double side-band signal tend to neutralize one another, but at other times the loss of one of these opposite side band components is offset to some degree by the presence of the same tone equivalent in the other. A very good idea of the relative fundamental distortion on a double side-band and carrier signal, as compared to a single side-band signal with

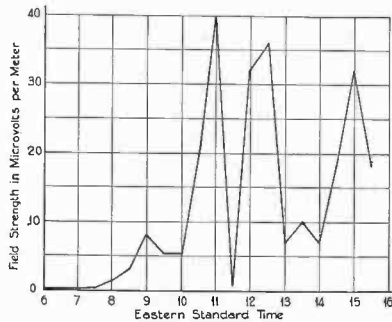


Fig. 23—Variation on field strength, May 16, 1928.

which carrier is transmitted, can be obtained by a comparison of the synthetic multitone characteristics of Figs. 11 and 12. If we modify the general amplitude of the single side-band patterns in Fig. 12 in accordance with the variation in carrier amplitude with α_1 and α_2 , the result is the equivalent of single side-band transmitted with carrier.

The chief advantage then of transmitting only one side band with the carrier is in the reduction of harmonic distortion resulting from the intermodulation of side-band components when the carrier fades. Selective suppression of the carrier due to wave interference has an effect at the receiver similar to overmodulation at the transmitter.

The transmission of only one side band and the introduction of carrier from a source at the receiver does not suppress the fundamental distortion appreciably, but it does greatly reduce the harmonic distortion which is a pernicious product of selective fading. At times when the minima spacing is great the general fading amplitude becomes proportional to the field strength, rather than to the square of the field strength as is the case when the carrier is transmitted with the side band or side bands. The most evident improvement with

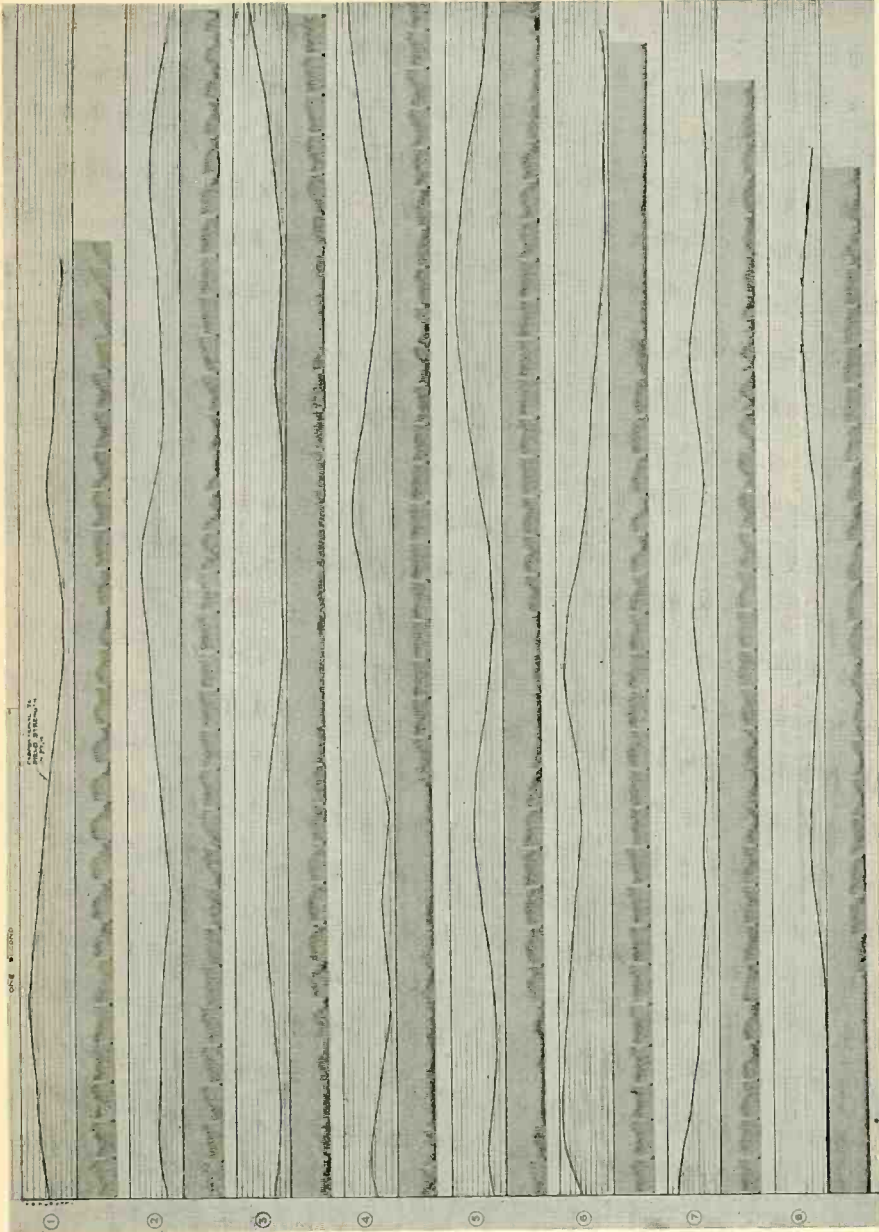


Fig. 24—Records showing variation in selective fading patterns with changes in carrier amplitude at 1500 E.S.T., March 14, 1928, on 18 megacycles.

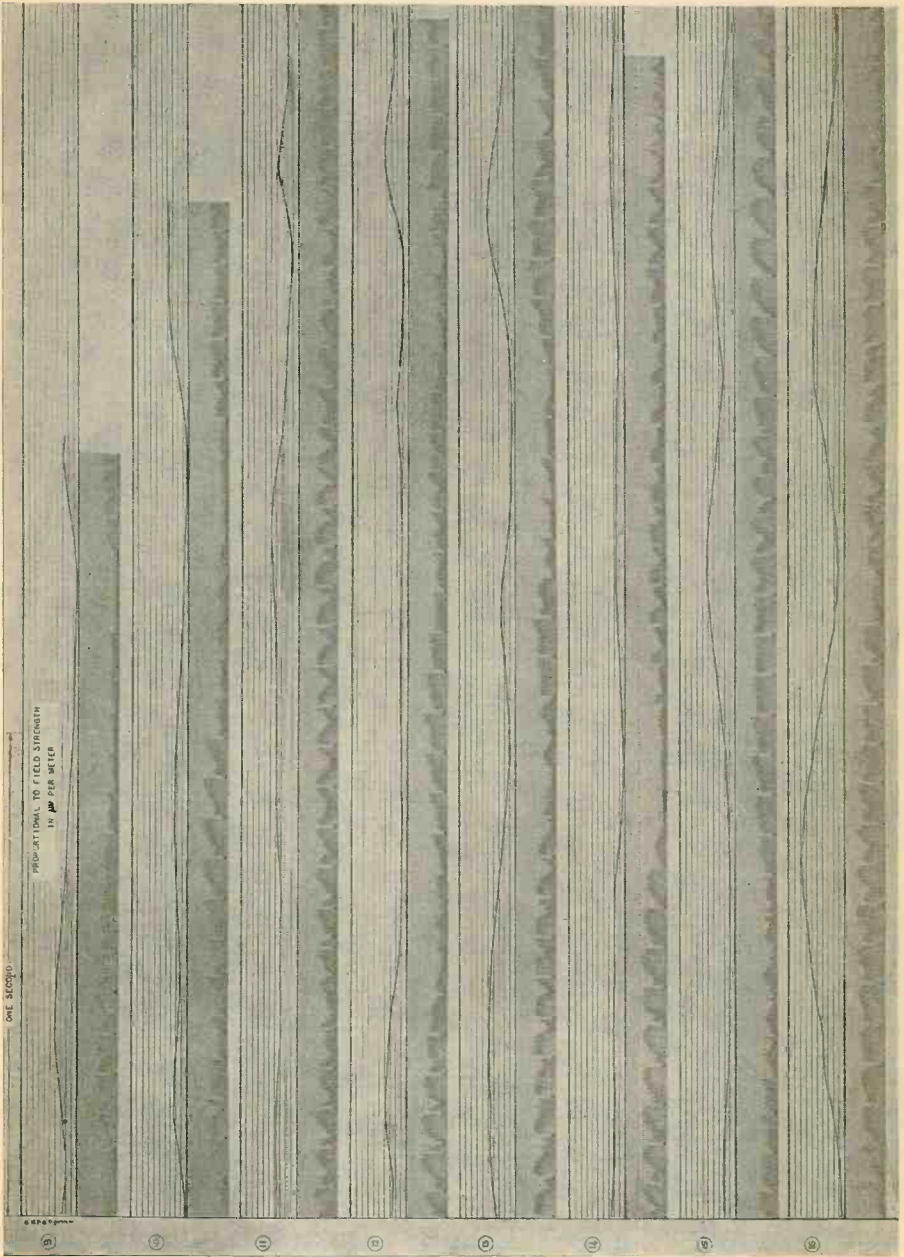


Fig. 25—Same as Fig. 24 continued.

the use of single side band and the introduction of carrier at the receiver occurs at times when the minima are closely spaced. When the minima spacing is comparable to the width of the signal band, single side band should have the two-fold effect of reducing general fading and at the same time suppressing harmonic distortion.

Examples of the relation between general and selective fading of a signal in which both side bands and carrier are transmitted are shown in Figs. 24 and 25. The field-strength variation was, in the making of these records, recorded on the same strip with the multi-tone characteristics. For this purpose a d-c amplifier was used to amplify the rectified output of the second detector in the receiving set. On the original record the "field" ordinates were, therefore,

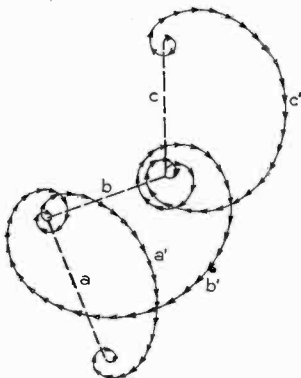


Fig. 26—Idealistic picture of probable relation between actual and assumed vector quantities representing received carrier wave components.

approximately proportional to the square of the field. In the reproduction here shown, the field variations have been reconstructed to show a direct proportionality. Allowing for a small time lag necessarily introduced by the d-c amplifier, the relative amplitude of the field corresponding to each multitone characteristic is shown graphically above the latter.

These particular records have been selected for illustration from a large number made because at this time the fading rate was high so that a more complete sequence of changes could be shown within a reasonable length of strip. At the same time the patterns are characteristic of a type which frequency appears on the 13- and 18-megacycle channels between Deal and New Southgate. Deep minima occur alternately around tones Nos. 3 and 4 (counting from the left) and 7 and 8. When the deep minimum shifts from one end of the band to the other, the change is usually brought about by a depression of

the maximum accompanied by an elevation of the minimum, somewhat as is illustrated by strip (1) of Fig. 24. At other times the minimum appears to slide from one position to the other. In this latter case the depression almost invariably becomes shallow while

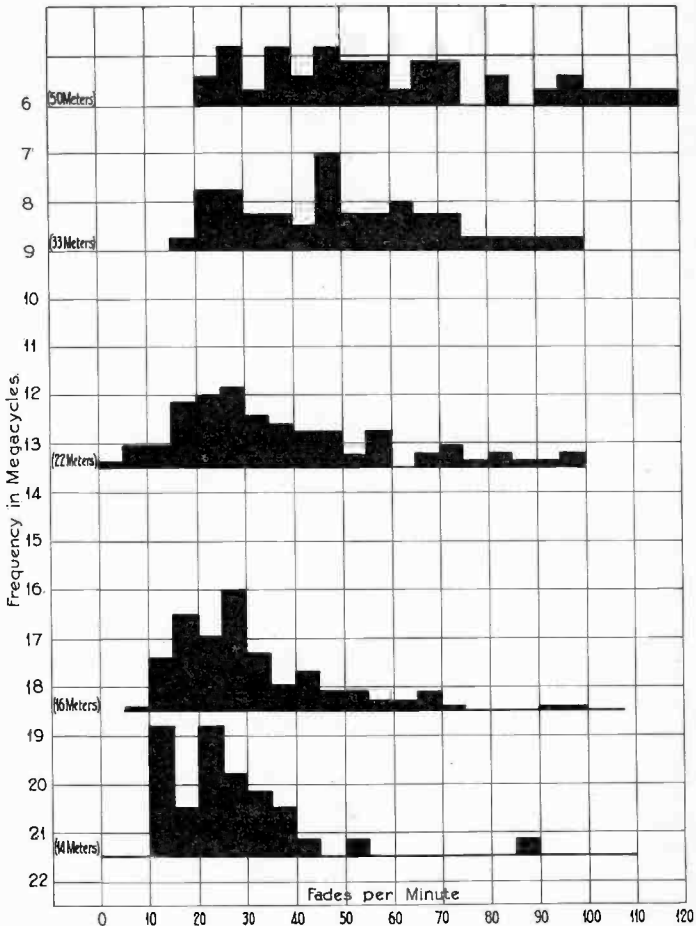


Fig. 27—Variation in fading rate with frequency on Deal-New Southgate short-wave circuit.

moving across the band. An example of this type of change is shown in strip (11) of Fig. 25. When the patterns are of the type illustrated in these figures deep minima are very common around tones Nos. 3 and 4, and the amplitude of the fading on these frequencies (765 and 935 cycles) is more pronounced than at any other point in the band. The depressions around tones Nos. 7 and 8 (1445 and 1615 cycles)

are less marked than those around tones Nos. 3 and 4. When a minimum appears between these two points in the band it is extremely transient. An examination of synthetically constructed patterns suggests that the movement of deep minima across the band requires a simultaneous and particular change in amplitude and phase of the major components. Such an occurrence could be attributed to a change in the angle of polarization or to a condition under which the major components are, in themselves, made up of components arriving over slightly different paths. In the synthetic analysis it has been assumed that the components arriving over the paths of considerable group-length difference may be represented by aggregate vectors such as (a), (b), and (c) in Fig. 26. A more accurate representation of the elementary vector quantities contributing to the received signal would probably appear somewhat as is shown by (a'), (b'), and (c') of Fig. 26. Due to transient changes in the refracting medium the configuration of (a'), (b'), and (c') would undergo constant modification so that the amplitude as well as the phase of the aggregate vectors (a), (b), and (c) would change accordingly.

If, as the discussion thus far suggests, general fading is due, in a considerable part at least, to wave interference, some relation might be expected between the fading rate and minima separation in the interference patterns. As the difference in length of the interfering paths increases, similar changes along the paths would result in a greater number of interference bands sweeping across the receiver. The multitone observations at various radio frequencies show that, in general, the minima separation increases with frequency. Fig. 27 shows a similar increase in the fading rate as taken from tone records.

In Fig. 28 is shown the relation between minima separation in the multitone band and the fading at 18 megacycles. The shaded curves representing minima in the multitone band are based upon an approximate analysis of patterns for each test period and a weighting of components according to the order of their importance. At the lower end of the scale are designated the tilting and flat characteristics which represent the limiting case in which the multitone band only covers a part of the frequency interval between minima. During all seasons there is apparently an increase in the number of minima in the band toward the end of the useful period. There is also an abrupt rise in the fading rate at this time. In summer the fading rate is, on the average, lower than during other times of the year and the minima separation is correspondingly greater.

The average depth of the selective fading becomes a maximum when the interfering components are of about the same amplitude,

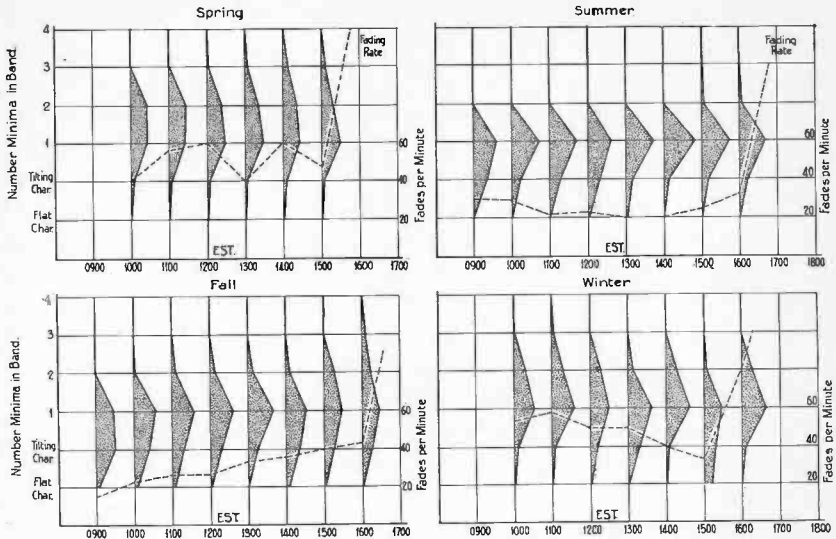


Fig. 28—Average diurnal variation of number minima in band and fading rate for 18 megacycles.

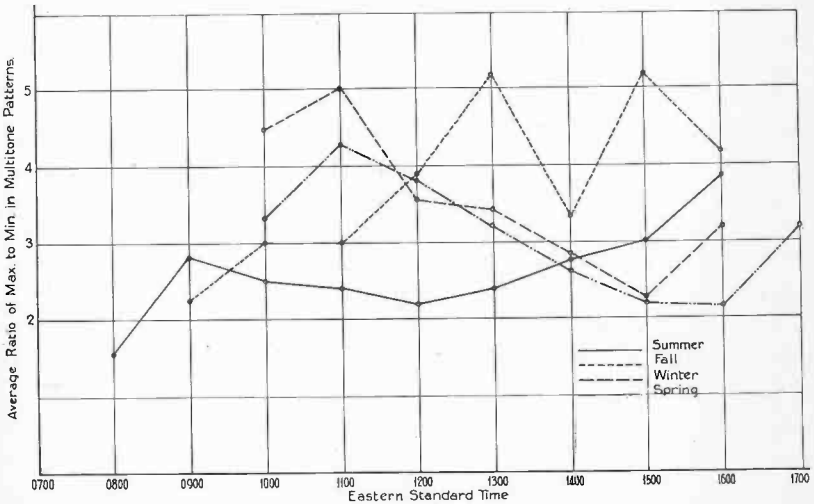


Fig. 29—Average selective fading for different seasons of year at 18 megacycles.

and it would be a minimum when there is only one wave path from transmitter to receiver. In Fig. 29 is shown the average diurnal variation in the depth of selective fading for the different seasons of the year. The depth of the fading is here shown as the average ratio between the amplitudes of the maxima and minima in the multitone

band. These values are based upon estimates by the observer viewing the patterns on the cathode-ray tube. The curves of Fig. 30 show the average diurnal variation in received field strength for the seasons. (Although these fields have not been corrected for variation in power radiated they represent the average diurnal changes reasonably well). A comparison of Figs. 29 and 30 indicates that the most selective fading generally occurs when the fields are high. This suggests that

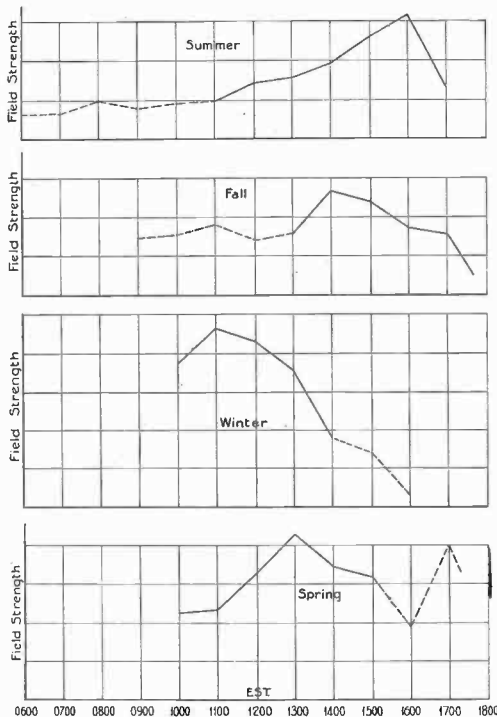


Fig. 30—Diurnal variation in field strength at 18 megacycles for period corresponding to data on Fig. 29.

the average field as measured at the receiver may be the result of a focusing of two or more ray paths rather than a decrease in the attenuation along a single path. As was previously stated these resultant field-strength curves are probably made up of three or more relatively simple individual curves representing the variation of the components which produce the selective fading. Therefore, the diurnal field-strength variation curve, such as we take at present, will probably appear somewhat complicated until we are capable of analyzing the contributing factors separately. A satisfactory method of making such an analysis is not at present apparent.

"HARMONIC" DISTORTION

Thus far the discussion has concerned largely the fundamental distortion or distortion produced by selective suppression or exaggeration of frequencies sent out from the transmitter. As a result of this fundamental distortion harmonic distortion may occur during the process of detection at the receiver. Second harmonics of the signal are accentuated at times when a minimum of the interference patterns occurs at the carrier frequency. As has been previously stated, the effect is approximately the same as if over-modulation were occurring at the transmitter. This type of distortion is very easily recognized. The voice becomes high-pitched, seeming to slide up the frequency scale an octave when the signal falls into a fade.

The second harmonic products appearing at the receiver for the case in which the signal follows three paths from the transmitter are equal to

$$E_{2q} = m^2 \sqrt{C^2 - D^2} \quad (14)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} C &= 1 + 2k_2 \cos \beta_2 \cos \alpha_2 + k_2^2 \cos 2\beta_2 + 2k_3 \cos \beta_3 \cos \alpha_3 \\ &\quad + k_3^2 \cos 2\beta_3 + 2k_2 k_3 \cos (\beta_2 + \beta_3) \cos (\alpha_2 - \alpha_3) \\ D &= 2k_2 \cos \alpha_2 \sin \beta_2 + 2k_3 \cos \alpha_3 \sin \beta_3 + k_2^2 \sin 2\beta_2 + k_3^2 \sin 2\beta_3 \\ &\quad + 2k_2 k_3 \cos (\alpha_2 - \alpha_3) \sin (\beta_2 + \beta_3). \end{aligned}$$

Definitions of the various factors entering into these equations are given under the previously discussed case for the fundamental tones.

In Fig. 31, the series (b) represents the relation between the fundamental and harmonic audio characteristics as determined by (12) and (14). These are for the case in which equal components of the signal arrive over three paths, two of which are respectively 200 and 167 km longer than the third. The series illustrates the successive changes during a portion of a fading cycle at one point in which the carrier is reduced to zero. The phase relation of the three-carrier components is shown opposite the corresponding patterns under (a). The amplitudes of the tone patterns are plotted in decibels (i.e., equal to $20 \log(E_x/E_o)$ where E_o is arbitrarily taken as the maximum audio-frequency output on a single tone). The assumption was made that there was 50 per cent modulation by each individual audio frequency. The second harmonic pattern is shown shaded in order to distinguish it from that of the fundamental.

At the beginning of series (b) in Fig. 31 it will be noted that the

harmonic is some 20 db below (i.e., 1/10 the amplitude of) the fundamental. In the vicinity of the point where the resultant carrier fades out, the harmonic approaches the amplitude of the fundamental. When the carrier fades out completely, the fundamental tones must also disappear, but the harmonic remains since the side-band compo-

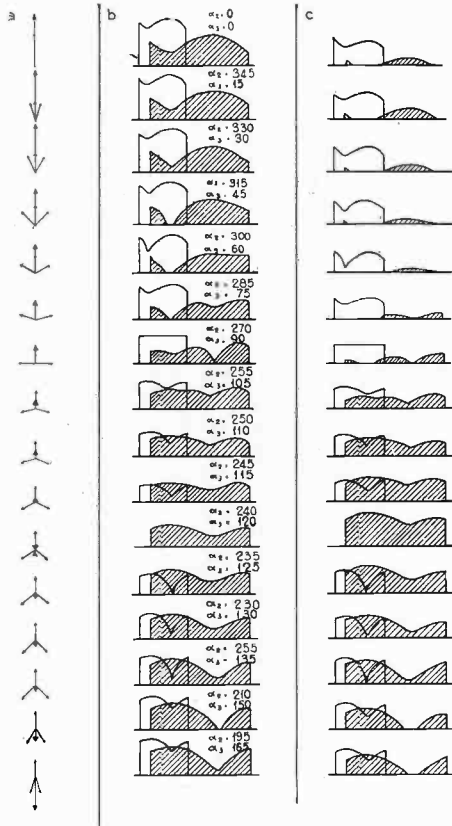


Fig. 31—Synthetic characteristics of fundamental and second harmonic distortion accompanying selective fading:
 (a) variation in carrier amplitude
 (b) normal receiver output
 (c) output of receiver with automatic gain control

nents producing them are still present. Therefore, very near the fading-out point, the harmonic may be much greater than the fundamental.

Of the 360-deg. fading cycle there is only some 5 deg. during which the fundamental is below the harmonic; that is, the duration of this poor quality interval is relatively short. It will be noticed also that

as the signal approaches a fade, both the fundamental and harmonic tone patterns change their shape. The change is quite abrupt, and is easily recognizable when listening to multitone signals. There is a sudden alteration in the sound of the tones, somewhat like that which occurs when a circular saw strikes a knot in a log.

In series (c) of Fig. 31 is shown the effect of automatically regulating the signal output by means of the carrier amplitude. This is the familiar method of reducing signal variations due to fading. When the carrier is high the radio receiver amplification is reduced, and when it becomes low the amplification is increased to some limiting value. The effect of this increased gain during periods when the carrier is low is to amplify greatly the harmonic distortion which without such gain regulation would with the fundamental signal remain somewhat in the background.

The automatic gain control operates most effectively when the minima in the wave-interference pattern are widely separated, or

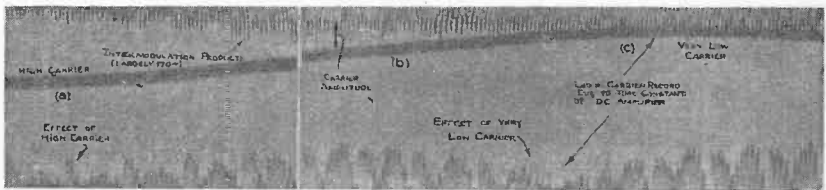


Fig. 32—Effect of automatic gain control upon audio output and intermodulation products when selective fading is present.

the variation in amplitude is about the same over the whole high-frequency signal band. Such is the case, for example, when patterns similar to those under (a) of Fig. 9 are present. If the "selective" fading is such that the side bands fade opposite to the carrier there may be a low audio output when the carrier is a maximum, a higher audio output as the carrier amplitude fades, and a low output again when the carrier fades out. This is well illustrated by the record of Fig. 32 which shows the variation in carrier and the multitone-pattern amplitude when the automatic gain control was used. The two parts of the record were taken from a single long record covering a period of several seconds. The carrier record here shown is simply the d-c component of the rectified high-frequency signal which for normal modulation and that part of the selective fading cycle where the carrier is increased in relation to the side band, is amply representative. When the carrier fades to a point where its amplitude is comparable to that of the side band, the amplitude of the field as determined by this curve is no longer accurate. For this reason the carrier amplitude,

as indicated by the "field" record at the bottom of a fade is higher than the actual carrier amplitude.

At (a) in Fig. 32 the field is high and the general amplitude of the multitone patterns is low. As the field fades down to an average value at (b) the multitone patterns increase very noticeably in general amplitude. When the carrier amplitude decreases further to a point where it is approaching zero, the multitone fades out again.

On the upper edge of this record is shown the amplitude of the side-band intermodulation components appearing below 350 cycles. These were separated from the audio signal by means of a 350-cycle low-pass filter. These modulation components consist largely of a 170-cycle wave equivalent to the multitone spacing. It will be noticed that these modulation components increase as the carrier decreases.

Fig. 32 is in fact an illustration of the change in apparent percentage modulation produced by selective fading. The function of the automatic gain control, as commonly used, is to maintain effectively a constant level of carrier into the final detector of the receiver. When the percentage modulation is altered by a selective suppression or exaggeration of the carrier, the gain control is unable to maintain a constant audio output over its operative range. The result is the same as if the percentage modulation were varied over a wide range at the transmitter. Those components of the side band which fade in and out with the carrier can be maintained at what approaches a constant level by means of the automatic gain control, but the variations of those which fade oppositely are actually magnified by controlling the receiver gain through variations in the carrier. This condition will be most pronounced when the minima spacing is comparable to the width of the signal band.

THE EFFECT OF FREQUENCY OR "PHASE" MODULATION UPON SIGNAL QUALITY

It has been recognized for some time that change in signal frequency with amplitude modulation results in distortion when selective fading occurs. Frequency modulation is not recognizable on the output of a radio receiver near the transmitter, but the distortion appears when the receiver is moved away to a point where fading takes place (indicating the existence of more than one path between transmitter and receiver). At a distance of 50 miles from a short-wave transmitter the distortion produced by frequency modulation may be as pronounced as it is at several thousand miles.

Even deviations from normal phase in the order of 90 deg. or less during amplitude modulation may produce considerable distortion

in a double side-band and carrier-transmission system if selective fading is present. Such distortion results when the difference in group time of the interfering paths which cause the selective fading is comparable to the period of the modulation frequency. Assume, for example, the carrier is modulated by a 1000-cycle tone and there are two interfering paths which differ in transmission time by $1/2,000$ th of a second (a common difference in path time). If phase modulation occurs, the carriers received over the two paths will be varying oppositely in phase. When the vectors representing the two interfering carriers are nearly equal and opposed, corresponding to the minimum of a fade at the receiver, the distortion produced by phase deviations of 90 deg. or less with amplitude modulation is approximately proportional to

$$e^2 [\sin (\Delta\phi)]^2$$

where e = amplitudes of opposing carriers and $(\Delta\phi)$ = phase deviation.

Since the distortion due to phase modulation is most pronounced during the fades it easily may be confused with distortion due to side-band intermodulation ("harmonic" distortion). It is similarly selective in character in that the harmonics which appear most prominently will depend upon the path-length difference.

The distortion produced by intermodulation of the side bands is proportional to

$$k_m^2 e^2$$

where k_m = percentage modulation.

The ratio of the distortion produced near the minima of the fades by phase modulation and by side-band intermodulation is then approximately

$$\frac{[\sin (\Delta\phi)]^2}{k_m^2}$$

Assuming a percentage modulation of 70 the ratio becomes

$$1 - \cos 2(\Delta\phi)$$

Therefore, when the deviation in phase over the amplitude-modulation cycle is 45 deg. the distortion near the bottom on the fades is comparable to that resulting from side-band intermodulation.

Deviations in phase with amplitude modulation may be produced in a transmitter by varying reaction of the amplitude-modulated power stages back upon the unmodulated high-frequency stages between the modulator and the control oscillator. It may also be produced in any high-frequency stage of the transmitter where plate or grid resistances across reactive circuits are caused to vary over the modulation cycle.

Since one of the principal limitations in realizing the full advantage of an automatic gain control is imposed by the distortion which often appears so prominently in the fading minima it is desirable to at least reduce phase modulation to a point where side-band intermodulation is the limiting factor.

In the foregoing only the case of normal transmission with both side bands and carrier has been considered. For the same amount of phase deviation, the distortion will be much less on single side band than on double side band with carrier. Although it will be present at all times when the selective fading minima are in evidence, it will be largely confined to harmonics of those fundamental frequencies at which the minima appear.

RAPID FADING

There appears at times on the short-wave circuit between Deal and New Southgate a certain distinctive type of fading to which has become attached the descriptive term "rapid fading." At 18 megacycles it usually occurs toward the end of the useful day both in summer and winter. At 13 megacycles the occurrence in the winter time is not associated with any particular part of the useful period, but in summer the tendency is again toward the end of this period. Approximately, the same may be said of 9 megacycles, although there is more of an inclination toward random occurrence in the summer time. At 6 megacycles the periods during which rapid fading was observed do not appear to depend upon the time of day either in summer or winter.

In Fig. 33 is shown the monthly variation in susceptibility of the circuit to rapid fading expressed in terms of the percentage occurrence during test periods when the field was above $3\mu\text{v}$ per meter. During the months from January to August the susceptibility is much lower than between August and January. Since this type of fading is undoubtedly regulated by circumstances associated with the ionized layer, it is apparent that a rather abrupt change takes place in this region of ionization between August and October. Probably this might be accounted for as due to an increase in the effective layer height. Carrying this conjecture further, we might anticipate from the appearance of these curves that the layer height is a maximum around October and a minimum around April or May. It also appears that the decrease in effective height, as the summer months approach, is much less abrupt and regular than the increase between August and October. This argument is, however, pure speculation, since we are not sure that other factors than effective layer height might not play an important part in the production of rapid fading.

This so-called "rapid" fading seems to fall outside the category of the type which has thus far been discussed in connection with the multitone tests. It is too rapid to be investigated by the test

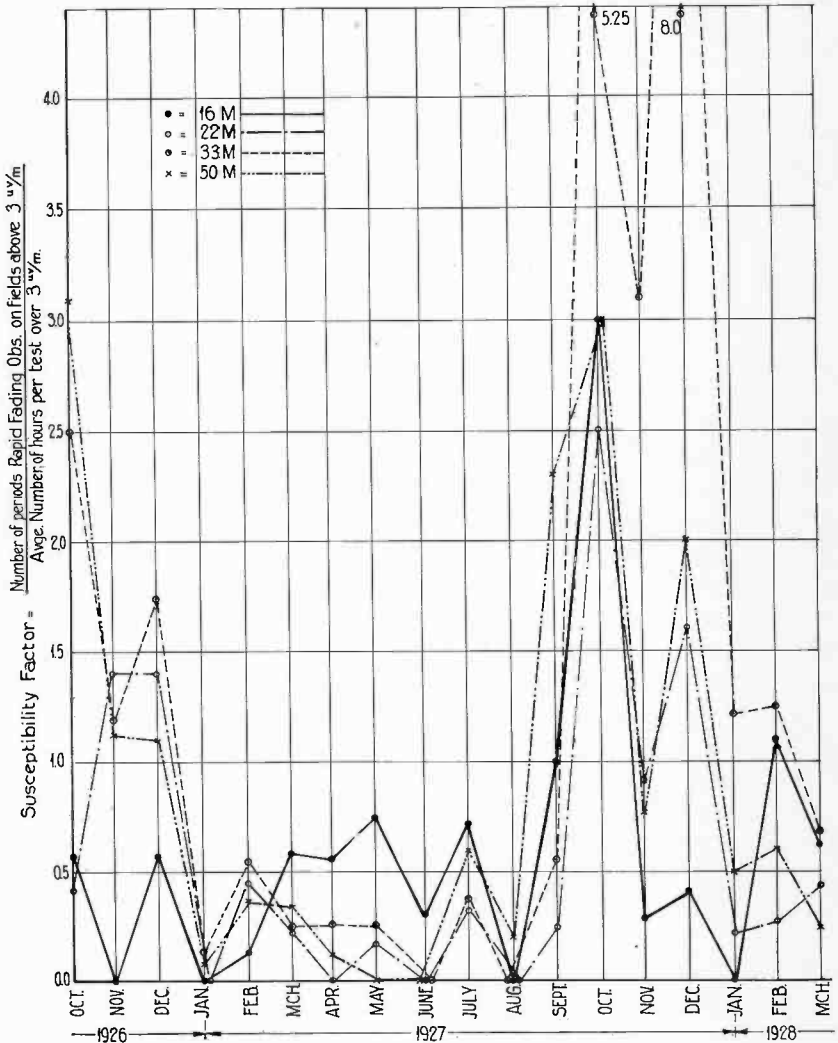


Fig. 33—Susceptibility to "rapid fading" on Deal-New Southgate short-wave circuit. (Data at 6, 9, 13, and 18 megacycles.)

method in which commutation is employed. Fig. 30 shows the distribution of normal fading rates of tone transmitted between Deal and New Southgate on frequencies ranging between 6 and 21 mega-



Fig. 34—Single side-band record of “rapid” fading on frequencies spaced 170 cycles taken at 18 megacycle Deal-New Southgate circuit at 1950 and 2025 E.S.T., May 14, 1928.

cycles. These data were taken from oscillograph records made at intervals covering about four months during the early part of 1928. They show that the normal fading rate falls somewhere between 5 and 100 fades a minute. The average rate extends from approximately 20 to 50 fades a minute, depending upon the radio frequency. For the lower radio frequencies, the average fading rate is higher and, as the distribution of values indicates, less regular. Oscillograph records of rapid fading often show fading rates ranging between 500 and 10,000 a minute. These rapid variations, when they become pronounced, cause a decided tremolo in the voice which gives to it a suggestion of pathos as if the speaker were sobbing into the microphone. At the same time the quality becomes harsh.

Rapid fading usually appears first in small quantities superimposed upon the normal, relatively slow variations. At the bottom of the slow fades the percentage variation in amplitude produced by the rapid fades makes the presence of the latter most conspicuous. For this reason the report often appears in the log sheets that "traces of rapid fading were noticed at the bottom of the slow fades." (In the single side-band record strips 6, 7, and 8 of Fig. 34 this effect is clearly shown). At the maxima of the slow fades the rapid variations may amount to only 1/10 of the average amplitude, while during the minima of the normal fades the signal appears to drop to zero between the maxima of the rapid fluctuations. Incidentally, the use of the automatic gain control at such times has the effect of magnifying these rapid changes since the set gain is increased during the normal depression. The gain control is incapable of following the faster amplitude changes.

Although it was not possible during "rapid" fading periods to make commutated multitone records of the variations such as were obtained for normal fading, it was possible to record the tones continuously to give an undistorted picture of these variations. Fig. 34 includes records of this kind. The number of tones recorded was limited by the number of oscillograph elements available to three. These are single side-band records of tones spaced 170 cycles apart. In fact they actually represent the amplitude variations of three 18-megacycle carrier waves spaced 170 cycles apart in the frequency spectrum. Despite the very small separation of these frequencies a casual examination will show the fading to be apparently unrelated. The fact that depressions occasionally appear at the same time on the two outside frequencies when the maximum is present on the middle one suggests that the minima separation is at least comparable to twice the 170-cycle spacing. It seems very likely that the fading would appear unre-

lated on frequencies separated by much less than 170 cycles during the rapid fading periods.

There appears in these records evidence that "rapid" fading is due to a wave-interference effect rather than to an irregular fluttering in and out of a signal which is barely refracted to earth. The superimposed fades conform in shape at both high and low levels to those which would be produced by interference. Such a small separation of the minima would, it seems, involve considerable differences in length of the interfering paths. At the extreme this difference in path-length might be equal to the earth's circumference, the interference taking place between direct and around-the-world signals. Since both the transmitting and receiving arrays on the Deal-New Southgate circuit are directional, the interfering signal would doubtless go completely around the earth in the same direction as the normal signal before being received. The difference in length of path would then be such that the minima spacing would be of the order of 10 cycles. Due to the great difference in path length, the fading rate would presumably be proportionately high.

If the cause of this high-speed fading is attributable to "around-the-world" signals, we should expect to find echoes on normal speech transmission. Due perhaps to conditions which will be explained later there is available among the data of these tests only one definite piece of evidence that this is the case. During the course of some tests on the circuit in May, 1928, remarkable echo effects were observed on single side-band speech transmission at 2050 E.S.T. Twenty minutes later, when the normal transmission of both side bands and carrier was resumed, the "rapid" fading was pronounced and the echoes were still recognizable though they were much more difficult to detect. (Probably they would not have been noticed except for the distinct occurrence on single side band). Later, on single side-band transmission again, the echoes were once more pronounced and accompanied by the "rapid" fading. Although no records were made from which the echo interval could be determined, the time lag was such that it might reasonably be attributed to around-the-world transmission. The evidence obtained from these few observations (which unfortunately are all that are immediately available) indicates that the echoes are actually present during the normal transmission of carrier and two side bands, but that the rapid fluctuations in carrier producing correspondingly rapid fluctuations in the audible signal tend to mask its presence. When a single side band is transmitted and the carrier is supplied locally the general fading would (according to the argument previously given under a consideration of the fading reduction accom-

plished by single side-band transmission) be largely overcome. When the minima are very close together, the average side-band amplitude would remain practically constant, which with the introduction of a constant carrier at the receiver would result in a constant audio-frequency output. Therefore, during periods of "rapid" fading, we might expect to find easily recognizable echoes and practically no apparent rapid fluctuation in the audio-frequency output of a single side-band signal. The normal transmission of both side bands and carrier would at such times be badly cut up by the high-speed fluctuations of the carrier, and though echoes might be present they would be difficult to recognize due to the excessive distortion. Records taken at the receiver of short-wave trains spaced about a fifth of a second during times when "rapid" fading is present would probably serve to determine whether around-the-world signals are responsible for this effect.

Incidentally, the high rate of change in relative path length indicated by "rapid" fading might, of course, be designated as a Doppler effect. Assuming that the length of one of the paths does not change materially, it may be considered that the other is changing at a rate which would result in an effective frequency at the receiver of $(f_c \pm f_x)$ where f_c is the normal carrier frequency and f_x is the frequency of the fades. The existence of such effects introduces the possibility of a type of distortion which may appear on single side-band transmission at the very high radio frequencies. There would be a change in pitch of the voice as a result of a change in frequency of the side band (due to transient changes in side-band path length) although the frequency of the carrier supplied at the receiver remains constant. While this type of distortion was not noticed on the Deal-New Southgate circuit during the single side-band tests at 18 megacycles herein described, it is possible that it would have been evident at other times or at other frequencies.

NORMAL-FAST FADING

In addition to the "rapid" fading which has been described above, there usually is observed toward the end of the useful period a decided rise in the normal fading rate. This is shown in the "Fading Rate" curves of Fig. 27. An example of such fading is shown in the oscillograph records of Figs. 24 and 25. These were taken toward the end of the normal useful period (1500 E.S.T.) on March 14, 1928. The field at this time was unusually high for this hour. Such fading is distinguishable from "rapid" fading both by its lower rate and the fact that the minima are spaced normally. It may be due to the approach of a critical relation between the interfering paths. Toward the end of

the day, in particular, it seems reasonable to presume that the interference is not the result of earth reflections since the higher angle ray necessary for earth reflections would not return to earth. It may be interference between two rays which would be refracted toward the receiving point from the two levels where the rate of change of ionization with height above the earth would be effectively the same. By making use of the basic assumptions employed in the paper by W. G. Baker and C. W. Rice, mentioned earlier, it is possible to form some approximate ideas concerning the group path-length relation between the two overhead rays at the time when their intensities are comparable. To do this it is necessary to determine the phase length of path by an integration of the product of the physical path length and the refractive index over the ray path. From data concerning the phase length of path for different frequencies over the same range between transmitter and receiver, it is possible to determine the group path length. The equations to be derived are for the case of a "flat earth."

Starting with equation (33) of the above-mentioned paper as the general differential equation of the ray path, we have,

$$dx = \frac{\cos \beta dz}{\sqrt{\mu^2 - \cos^2 \beta}} \tag{15}$$

where β = the angle that the ray path makes with the lower boundary of the electron layer

- μ = the refractive index of the medium
- x = the horizontal distance
- z = the vertical distance

For the physical distance along the ray path we have

$$ds = \sqrt{(dx/dz)^2 + 1} dz. \tag{16}$$

Substituting (16) in (15)

$$ds = \frac{\mu dz}{\sqrt{\mu^2 - \cos^2 \beta}} \tag{17}$$

The "phase length of path" may be defined such that

$$dL_p = \mu ds = \frac{\mu^2 dz}{\sqrt{\mu^2 - \cos^2 \beta}} \tag{18}$$

where μ is the refractive index of the medium. The phase-length dL_p in a vacuum where the velocity is c is the same as that of ds in a medium of refractive index μ . Since μ changes along the ray path, it is convenient to express the path length in terms of its equivalent in vacuum.

Using the assumption of the Baker-Rice paper, that the distribution of ionization in the refracting medium may be represented by

$$\mu^2 = 1 - \frac{\sigma N_0}{\omega^2} \sin^2 \left\{ \frac{(Z-b)\pi}{2(B-b)} \right\} \quad (19)$$

where b = height of lower layer boundary from the earth

B = height of the region of maximum ionization above the earth

N_0 = maximum ion density in number per cc

$\omega = 2\pi$ times frequency of transmitted wave

$\sigma = 4\pi e^2/m = 3.2 \times 10^9$ cgs. (esu) for electrons

equation (16) becomes

$$dL_p = \frac{\left[1 - \frac{\sigma N_0}{\omega^2} \sin^2 \left\{ \frac{(Z-b)\pi}{2(B-b)} \right\} \right]^{1/2} dz}{\sqrt{\sin^2 \beta - \frac{\sigma N_0}{\omega^2} \sin^2 \left\{ \frac{(Z-b)\pi}{2(B-b)} \right\}}} \quad (20)$$

Equation (20) may by some manipulation be converted to the form of an elliptic integral as follows:

$$L_p = \frac{C_1}{\sin \beta} + C_2 \cdot K(\sin \alpha) - C_3(K - E)(\sin \alpha) \quad (21)$$

in which the phase length of path is expressed in km.

K and E are the complete elliptic integrals, values for which may be obtained from tables.

$$C_1 = 2b$$

$$C_2 = \frac{1.415 \times 10^2 f_{mc}(B-b)}{\sqrt{N_0}}$$

$$C_3 = \frac{1.117(B-b)\sqrt{N_0}}{f_{mc} \times 10^2}$$

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{1.11 \times 10^2 \times f_{mc}}{\sqrt{N_0}} \sin \beta$$

f_{mc} = the transmitting frequency in megacycles.

The "range" equation which will be used is the one for the "flat earth" case, namely

$$R = C_1 \cos \beta + C_2 \cos \beta \cdot K(\sin \alpha) \quad (\text{km}) \quad (22)$$

If we consider the paths followed by two slightly different frequencies from transmitter to receiver, we may write for the number of wavelengths in each path,

$$N_1 = L_1/\lambda_1 = L_1 f_1/c$$

$$N_2 = L_2/\lambda_2 = L_2 f_2/c.$$

The number of group waves along these paths between transmitter and receiver is then

$$N_g = N_2 - N_1 = \frac{1}{c}(L_2 f_2 - L_1 f_1).$$

Let $L_2 = L_1 - \Delta L$ and $f_2 = f_1 - \Delta f$

Then, neglecting second-order quantities

$$N_g = \frac{1}{c}(L_1 \Delta f + f_1 \Delta L)$$

Since the group frequency is $(f_2 - f_1) = \Delta f$, the group time is $N_g/\Delta f$ and the group length of path is

$$L_g = N_g c/\Delta f = L_1 + f_1 \frac{\Delta L}{\Delta f} \tag{23}$$

Although it is difficult to determine the change in phase length of path with frequency by direct differentiation, we may determine phase length of path and corresponding range values from (21) and (22) for frequencies separated by a relatively small interval, and from these values construct curves showing the variation in group length of path with range. In Fig. 35 curves (A) and (D) show the horizontal "range" of rays launched from the transmitter at different vertical angles. The assumptions concerning layer height, dimensions, and maximum density are given with the curves. The transmission represented by that portion of the curves (A) in the vicinity of (b) and on toward (a) is that in which we are at present interested. From (21) the phase length of path was computed for frequencies sufficiently separated to give reasonable numerical differences. In order to show clearly the change in phase length of path with frequency, a difference of two megacycles was used in computing the curves (B) and (E) of Fig. 35. Similar computations using a much smaller differential show that the results have not been materially altered (except at the critical point near (b) in Fig. 35-C) by using the two megacycles. Assuming different values for the vertical angle of the ray path leaving the transmitter, values of the phase length of path L_p and the range R were computed. In curves (B) and (E) are plotted the phase length of path minus the range against the range for the differential frequencies of 18 and 20 megacycles, and 10 and 12 megacycles, respectively. In these curves we have the values necessary to determine the group length of path from equation (23). Curves (C) and (F) show the change in group length of path with range for the two cases.

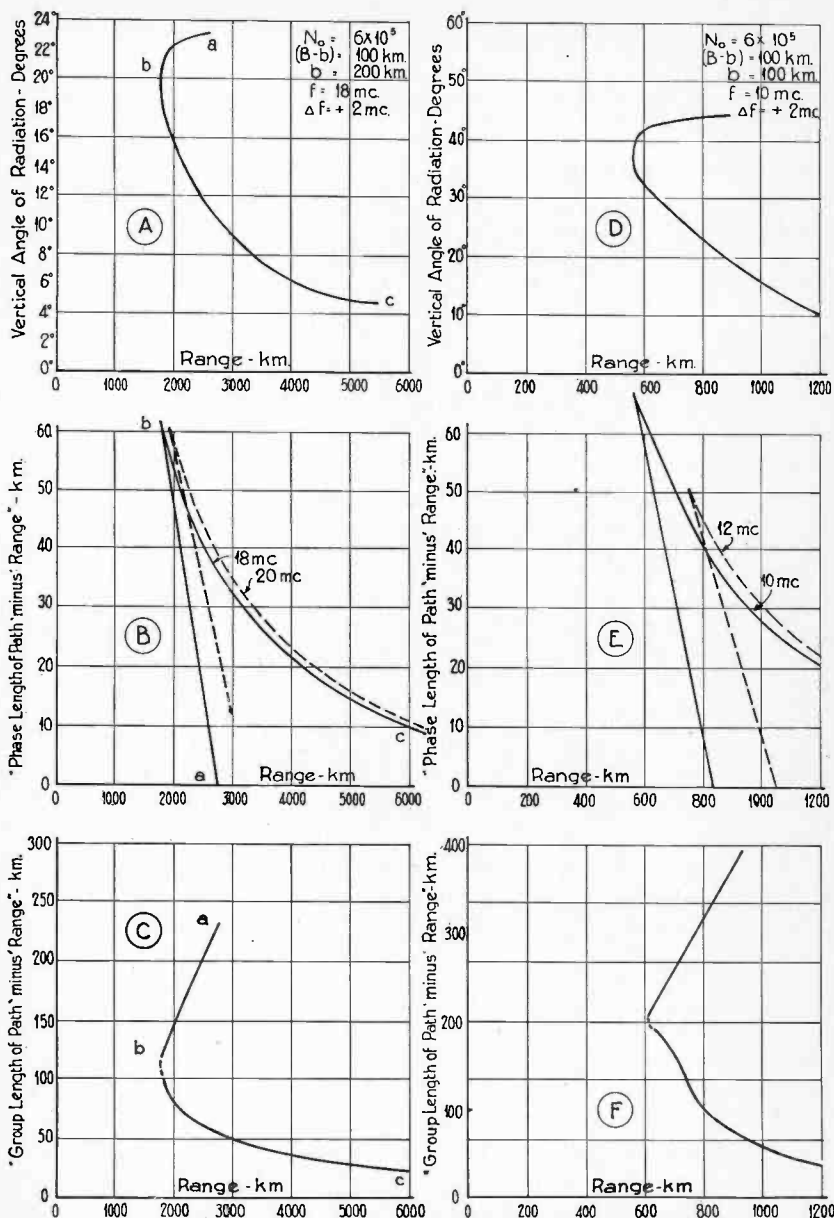


Fig. 35—Some calculated curves showing relation between vertical angle of radiation, phase length of path, group length of path, and range for "flat earth" case.

It will be noted that the group length of path increases very rapidly in the vicinity of the minimum range at (b) in curves (C) and (F). The point (b) is a critical point in the group path relation. At (b) there exists, a condition under which two components of a wave group cannot both reach the receiver. The higher frequency would not be sufficiently refracted. Let us presume that, due to dimensional or density changes (or both) in the refracting layer, the curve (a, b, c) in (C) is moved to the right past a particular range point. When point (a) reaches this receiving range, there will be two wave components present. The difference in group length of path will be considerable, and due to the steep gradient of the "group path length-range" curve at this point the path-length difference between these two components will change rapidly. This change will cause correspondingly fast fading. The depth of the fading minima will increase as the ratio between the upper and lower rays approaches unity. Normally the intensity of the upper ray is much less than that of the lower but as point (b) on the "group path length-range" is approached the two approach equality, and rapidly diminish in intensity. The fading rate would increase steadily due to the continual increase in the combined rate of change of path length. According to this line of reasoning the spacing of the minima would increase as the fading progressed, since the difference in the group path lengths would be decreasing rapidly. Although the increase in fading rate does generally occur toward the end of the useful period in accordance with this theory, it is not certain that this increase in fading rate is always accompanied by an increase in minima spacing. Unfortunately the end of the period is so confused by the relatively high noise, and by distortion of the multitone patterns due to the abnormal fading rate, that reliable data are difficult to obtain.

If some such effect as has been described does account for the rather abrupt increase in fading rate at the end of the day, it appears that the distribution of ionization must be quite different during the transient period at the beginning of the useful interval, for at this time there is rarely any evidence of fast fading.

CONCLUSIONS

The cause of fading on a short-wave, long-range circuit appears to be of a more or less orderly nature when the fading is observed on a band of frequencies rather than upon one alone. The relative simplicity of the selective fading patterns suggests that the contributing factors are limited in number. Diurnal and seasonal variations in the amplitude and character of selective fading are fully as orderly as field-strength variations. The patterns are in general most simple for the higher radio

frequencies, indicating that a smaller number of components are involved as the frequency increases. The average fading rate is correspondingly lower for the higher frequencies.

Normally the minima spacing in the selective fading patterns observed on the Deal-New Southgate circuit was more than 500 cycles. In extreme cases unlike fading on radio frequencies spaced 170 cycles apart was recorded. It appears probable that the minima spacing at these times was considerably less than 170 cycles. Such conditions were always accompanied by very rapid changes, and on at least one occasion (when single side-band signals were transmitted) by distinct voice echoes presumed to travel around the earth in the direction transmitter-to-receiver. The susceptibility of the circuit to this very rapid fading (which appears to be distinctly different from normal fading in character) varies considerably with time of year, and is a maximum between September and January. Fading rates intermediate between these extremely rapid changes, and normal variations may be due to a critical condition along one or more of the paths such that the group length of path may undergo a rapid change accompanying normal changes in dimensions and height of the ionized region.

Since the fading as observed on signals received with vertical antennas is selective, and other observers have found fading of a single frequency to differ in the horizontal and vertical planes, it seems very likely that components of the signal band are in various states of polarization when they arrive at the receiver. Approximate calculations indicate that for transmission in the direction of the earth's magnetic field the planes of polarization of the components of long-range, short-wave signals will be so selectively rotated at the receiver as to produce distortion when received on an antenna in a single plane. Intermediate earth reflections would also accentuate the distortion produced by selective rotation of the polarization plane over the signal band. The magnitude of such selective rotation of the polarization plane over the signal band would decrease rapidly with frequency. Observations on single and double side-band 18-megacycle signals at times when the patterns were extremely simple indicate that this is not the major cause of the distortion at this frequency on the Deal-New Southgate circuit. It may be a contributing factor of some importance at the lower frequencies.

The presence of distortion on both single and double side-band signals indicates that the cause cannot be assigned to side-band asymmetry.

A study of single and double side-band patterns obtained at times when the patterns were simple suggests that a considerable part of

the distortion is due to wave interference between signals arriving over paths of different group length. Normally the difference in group length of the interfering paths seems to be between 50 km (or less) and 300 km for the different components. Except in unusual cases it is necessary to assume three or more paths to account for the pattern shapes and sequence of changes observed. This is particularly true of the lower frequencies.

To account for the different paths (assuming that more than two do normally exist) there is the possibility of paths through different levels of the refracting medium where the rate of change of ionization with height is effectively the same. Two such paths are possible in a layer based upon simple assumptions. More than two might exist if the rate of change of ionization with height is actually not so simple. This latter case would be equivalent to the idea that there may be more than one layer. The apparent decrease in number of paths with frequency does not seem to adapt itself to this theory since the lower frequencies would be less inclined to penetrate to the higher layers.

A number of paths might be the result of "earth" reflections. There is apparently some substantiation of this theory in the fact that the number of paths seems to decrease with frequency. Higher frequencies would be less apt to return to earth at the higher radiation angles.

The fact that the selective fading patterns were found to be practically the same on a vertical antenna and an array directive within some 10 deg. in the horizontal plane apparently precludes any possibility of widely divergent paths in this plane.

Observations of single side-band multitone patterns at 18 megacycles show generally what appears to be a progressive change in relative path length superimposed upon which are transient variations in either direction.

The diurnal change in pattern shapes and depth of fading suggests a similar diurnal change in the various components. The diurnal field-strength curves obtained by measuring average fields are probably a composite of simple diurnal variation curves representing the contributions of different paths.

The distortion appearing in the audio-frequency signal is due to intermodulation of the side bands as the carrier is suppressed ("harmonic distortion"), and to a selective suppression or exaggeration of fundamental audio frequencies ("fundamental distortion"). The former may be reduced by a decrease in percentage modulation at the transmitter when using double side band, or eliminated by the use

of single side band. The fundamental distortion cannot be corrected by either of these methods.

On the fading maxima, corresponding to a wave interference maximum at the carrier frequency, the distortion due to selective fading on a normal double side-band signal is about the same as that on a single side-band signal. Therefore, as far as the reduction of distortion is concerned, it seems that a double side-band receiving system of distributed receivers and means for continually selecting the highest output would be as effective as the use of single side band. This statement should perhaps be limited to normal or slow fading periods when the rate of selection in the double side-band distributed receiver case is within practical limits. When the fading rate is very high—indicating, as a rule, the existence of closely spaced minima—there seems to be little doubt that single side-band transmission is most effective in reducing distortion.

An automatic gain control which regulates receiver amplification in accordance with carrier amplitude changes cannot maintain a perfectly constant audio-frequency output due to the fact that the percentage modulation of the received signal effectively undergoes a continual change when selective fading occurs. The use of an automatic gain control apparently emphasizes the distortion due to selective fading since the maximum distortion occurs during the fades. Without the automatic gain control this distortion fades with the signal so that it is less obvious though none the less present.

In conclusion it should be repeated that the multitone tests so far described encourage a closer study of fading on short waves at long ranges on the ground that they indicate the cause to be specific rather than accidental.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Obviously, tests of such a character as those which have been described could not be made single-handed. They involve the cooperative effort of a large number of individuals. This cooperation by engineers of the Bell Telephone Laboratories and the American Telephone and Telegraph Company is appreciated. Acknowledgment is particularly due H. B. Coxhead, who had charge of the multitone sending and local monitoring equipment in New York, N. Y.; A. G. Jensen, who, while in charge of the receiving equipment at New Southgate, England, cooperated in the accumulation of the multitone data; and Dr. R. Bown, and Dr. G. C. Southworth, who contributed much through their criticisms and suggestions.

SUMMARY OF PROGRESS IN THE STUDY OF RADIO WAVE PROPAGATION PHENOMENA*

By

G. W. KENRICK¹ AND G. W. PICKARD²

(¹Tufts College, Mass.; ²Consulting Engineer, Wireless Specialty Apparatus Co., Boston, Mass.)

Summary: Recent progress in the study of radio wave propagation phenomena is surveyed in the light of the history of the art. The paper is divided into three parts: (A) an historical review; (B) recent developments; and (C) conclusions and outlook for future development.

Part A. The historical development of the art from its inception to 1927 is considered. The discussion includes an outline of early isolated sphere hypotheses, their limitations and the development of the modern Kennelly-Heaviside layer theory of radio transmission. Early experimental progress, echo signals, magnetic correlations and the relation of the science of radio direction finding are also considered.

Part B. (On recent advances) reviews the progress of the last year or 18 months and includes a discussion of publications on the Störmer-van der Pol echoes and their theoretical interpretation. Progress in Kennelly-Heaviside layer height determinations and experimental studies in transmission and magnetic and solar correlations are also considered.

Part C. The rapidity of the advance during the last year is noted, but the need of further consistent observations and other means of investigation before anything approaching a complete satisfactory theory of radio transmission can be evolved is pointed out.

WHILE IT is the primary purpose of this summary to survey recent developments in wave propagation phenomena, some brief review of historical development is perhaps not inappropriate, inasmuch as such a review furnishes a desirable background against which current development may be viewed.

PART A. HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT

1. The Isolated Sphere Hypothesis.

Not long after the successful transatlantic radio transmission experiments of Marconi in 1901^{59†} mathematical physicists became interested in comparing the results of his experiments with classical theory. These early investigators considered the earth to behave as an isolated conducting sphere, and the problem to be that of determining the electric field at any point on the surface of such a sphere due to an oscillating doublet located at a point on its surface.

Prominent in this group of investigators were‡ MacDonal^d,^{54, 55, 56, 57} Poincaré,^{77, 78, 79} March⁶⁰, Rybeynski,⁸³ and Love.⁵³

* Dewey decimal classification: R113.

† References will be found in the bibliography at the end of this paper.

‡ It is the purpose of this summary to indicate only the salient points in the development and the bibliography included makes no pretense of completeness.

The results of the investigations of these competent workers indicated field strengths at distant points on the earth's surface much smaller than those required to explain experimental results. The analytical problem, however, had proved to be one of no inconsiderable difficulty which required the use of series expansions and subsequent approximations for its solution. Various investigators, proceeding by slightly different methods and approximations, were thus led to somewhat different results. While these results were in agreement inasmuch as they all indicated field strengths much too small, they were by no means identical, and investigators were, hence, encouraged to seek an explanation of the discrepancy between theory and experiment rather in the mathematical details of the solutions than in any fundamental error in hypothesis. Examples of investigations of this type, directed to a consideration of the effects of earth resistivity, are to be found in the work of Zenneck¹⁰⁰ and Sommerfeld.⁸⁷

The isolated sphere hypothesis commanded the interest of analytical workers in the field of radio transmission until most of the discrepancies between the results of the various mathematicians were reconciled and the inadequateness of the results to explain the observed phenomena definitely shown by the work of Watson⁹⁷ and van der Pol⁹⁵ in 1919.

The results of this survey established the essential correctness of the MacDonal formula as a solution of the problem on the hypothesis of the earth as an isolated sphere. According to this hypothesis, the ratio of field intensities at any two points on the earth's surface is given by

$$\frac{E_r}{E_0} = \sqrt{\frac{\sin \theta_0}{\sin \theta_r}} E \frac{-0.00375(\rho_r - \rho_0)}{\sqrt[3]{\lambda}} \quad (1)$$

where ρ = distance along the surface of the earth in kilometers.

θ = angle subtended at the center of the earth by the transmission path.

λ = wavelength in kilometers.

E = field intensity in microvolts per meter.

Although the results of the isolated sphere hypothesis were quite inadequate to explain observed phenomena, particularly with the rapid development of the art and the advent of the complex phenomena associated with high-frequency transmission, they are nevertheless worthy of note, for they represent substantial contributions to physical optics and also furnish a solution of a part of the problem, i.e., the effect associated with the so-called "ground wave."

2. Early Suggestions of the Effects of Atmospheric Conductivity. Experimental Advance. Observations of Magnetic Correlations.

While most of the analytical development of the first decade of the twentieth century was devoted to the isolated sphere hypothesis as outlined in the previous section, this period was not devoid of suggestions that this point of view was inadequate and failed to consider the factors of prime importance.

Balfour Stewart in 1882 and Arthur Schuster in 1886 had explained certain phenomena of terrestrial magnetism by postulating a conducting layer in the upper atmosphere. The first definite suggestion that such ionization might play an important part in radio wave propagation was made by Kennelly early in 1902⁴⁵ and shortly thereafter by Heaviside.³⁸ Kennelly and Heaviside considered only specular reflection from a rather sharply defined ionized layer. The effects of the conductivity of gaseous ions on the propagation of electromagnetic waves was pointed out by J. J. Thomson about this time.⁹⁴ The effects of the ionization of the air by sunlight on radio wave propagation were also early suggested by J. E. Taylor⁹³ and J. A. Fleming.³¹ Eccles in 1912 showed that radio waves might also be bent back to earth by refraction, as the wave velocity in the electronic atmosphere would be different from that in the relatively un-ionized lower atmosphere.²⁵ The effect of atmospheric ionization was also discussed by Nagaoka a few years later.⁶⁴

In 1913 Kennelly gave a qualitative explanation of the diurnal variations in long-distance radio communication, based upon the varying ionization of the atmosphere by solar radiation, which fitted the then-known facts so well as to leave little doubt not only of atmospheric ionization as an important factor in radio transmission, but also that the principal ionizing agent was of solar origin.⁴⁶

It remained for Pickard in 1926 (after the advent of the vacuum tube had permitted precise and persistent measurements of field intensity to be made) to establish quantitatively the correlation with solar phenomena by a series of observations of radio transmission in the broadcast band.^{74,75} Similar correlations for the low-frequency region have been established by the work of Austin^{9,10,99} and by observations of engineers of the American Telephone and Telegraph Co.^{1,28}

Beginning in 1915, Austin began systematic measurements of a group of European and American stations, which have continued down to the present time. From 1915 to 1922, these observations were made by audibility meter measurement of signal strength, but from 1923 to date by the telephone comparator, with a great gain in accuracy. These measurements, which have extended through fourteen years or

over a sunspot cycle, have recently shown very significant correlations with solar activity.

The first definite correlation between radio transmission and a geophysical element was made by Fessenden²² in 1908, when he found that night transmission over the north Atlantic was severely depressed during magnetic disturbances. More recently Austin and Pickard from statistical studies of day and night fields over long periods, have found striking correlations between reception, temperature, sunspots, solar constant, and terrestrial magnetism. In general they found that day and night reception were inversely related, day fields over long east-west paths increasing with solar activity, with disturbances of terrestrial magnetism, and with cold waves, whereas night reception was markedly depressed at times of magnetic storms and large sunspot groups, but increased with rising air temperature. Similar relations were pointed out qualitatively by Espenschied, Anderson, and Bailey in 1926.²³

The earliest work in the measurement of field intensity was that of Duddell and Taylor in 1905, where the current in the receiving antenna was directly measured by a sensitive thermo-galvanometer. In 1906 Pickard published a description of a method in which the received signal was directly compared with a locally generated signal of known strength, which he later (in 1921) developed into the present-day method of introducing a measured and attenuated comparison signal into the receiving aerial. The outstanding work of this period was the field-intensity measurements of Austin⁷ over sea water, upon which the Austin-Cohen transmission formula was based.

With the rapid growth of the broadcasting of radio programs for entertainment purposes, numerous surveys have been made during the last few years from which the distribution of field strength over metropolitan areas as a result of signals transmitted from a nearby broadcast station have been determined.^{15,58,23} The field strengths observed are of course mainly due to ground-wave transmission and are hence relatively independent of time and of meteorological or solar elements. However, marked evidence of shielding effects resulting from large buildings and topography are evidenced, which usually result in rather irregular contours which are difficult of prediction. In numerous cases of stations located in congested districts evidence is found for heavy local absorption of frequencies of from 0.5 to 1.5 megacycles in nearby buildings, and further justification for the present practice of locating stations in the outlying city districts (apart from the primary considerations of interference) is hence secured. Actual changes of contours during the progress of particular contemporary building

projects are in some cases reported. The effects of trees and terrain are also considered by a recent worker.¹⁴

3. Radio Direction Finding.

With the advent of consistent observations and an appreciation of the importance of the atmosphere in radio transmission, came an increasing realization of the close relation of the art of radio direction finding to the science of radio transmission and its associated "night effect" and polarization phenomena. Many difficulties (which would not have appeared had the isolated sphere hypothesis been correct) confront the radio direction-finding engineer. Thus, the loop antenna and other devices widely utilized in this art give correct maximum and minimum bearings only in the absence of abnormal polarization. The presence of abnormal polarization (resulting from transmission phenomena) therefore represents a problem in radio direction finding which has as yet found no satisfactory solution. The presence of the "night effect" was early recognized,³² although its interpretation became clear only with the development of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer theory.^{46,90,26}

4. Analytical Development of the Layer Theory. Prediction of Skip Distance Phenomena.

Perhaps one of the most notable early analytical contributions to the Kennelly-Heaviside layer transmission theory was that of Watson^{97,98} just after his analysis had shown the inadequacy of the isolated sphere hypothesis. On the suggestion of van der Pol, Watson then derived the law of propagation between two concentric conducting shells and showed that the law of attenuation corresponding to this hypothesis could be written in the form expressed earlier by the (empirical) Austin-Cohen formula. Watson's method of analysis consisted in a straight-forward solution of Maxwell's equations subject to appropriate boundary conditions. This attack, however, led to analytical complications which rendered it not well adapted to extension to a consideration of other than sharply defined boundaries of ohmic conductivity; a consideration of other types of boundaries is essential to an explanation of high-frequency transmission phenomena. Recently it has been shown that a formula of the Austin-Cohen type may be obtained on Watson's hypothesis from the usual point of view (now adopted) of reflected (or refracted) rays. A suggested modification of the coefficient in the Austin formula is also suggested by this analysis which was implicitly but not explicitly contained in Watson's work.⁴⁷

The rapid development of interest in high-frequency phenomena in the early '20's led to a rapid development of a transmission theory in

which the behavior of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer was studied by means of an application of the ray theory for non-homogeneous media (borrowed from physical optics). According to this point of view the electronic conductivity in the upper atmosphere produces a gradually varying change in effective dielectric constant and hence in index of refraction (which could be exactly determined analytically if the true distribution of electron density, temperature, pressure, etc., were known for the upper atmosphere). In the absence of such data writers have usually assumed some plausible distribution (which at the same time proves convenient analytically) and proceed by use of the Snell law to deduce the differential equation for the ray path from which critical angles, etc., may be predicted. A start on such a theory is to be found in the work of Eckersley²⁶ in 1921 and of Larmor⁵² in 1924, while a more complete development of the point of view adopted by recent workers in the field is to be found in the work of Taylor and Hulburt⁹¹ in 1926. By the critical angles associated with such trajectories (and appropriate assumptions of layer height and electronic distribution) Taylor and Hulburt were able to explain most of the skip-distance phenomena experimentally observed. Meanwhile, Nichols and Schelleng⁶⁶ had evolved a theory for the effective change in dielectric constant of the upper atmosphere (taking into account the earth's magnetic field), and pointed out the importance of this effect on radio transmission, (particularly at frequencies near 1 to 2 megacycles).

5. Layer Height Determinations.

As pointed out in the previous section, an exact quantitative determination of ray paths in the upper atmosphere requires a knowledge of the physics of the upper air beyond that now available. In the absence of such data, numerous investigators have evolved ingenious radio experiments with a view to furnishing such information by observations of radio transmission phenomena. Early experiments of this type were carried out by Appleton⁴ and Hollingworth⁴¹ in England, and by Breit and Tuve,²⁰ Brown, Martin, and Potter,¹⁶ and Heising³⁹ in the United States. The methods of these investigators each possess peculiar advantages and disadvantages. The methods of Appleton^{4,5,6} and Hollingworth⁴¹ consist in observing the phase reinforcements and oppositions introduced by multipath transmission. In Appleton's method, a fixed base is employed and rapid changes from reinforcement to opposition obtained by appropriate frequency variations at the transmitter (the frequencies employed have in general been confined to the broadcast range, i.e., of the order of 1 megacycle). Hollingworth's determination consisted in observing these changes by recording field strengths at varying distances from a low-frequency station operating on a fixed frequency.

The method of Breit and Tuve^{20,21} consists in the oscillographic reception of radio pulses of the order of 10^{-4} seconds duration. In the high-frequency region where these observations are carried on, these pulses appear at the receiver as groups corresponding to a ground wave and a series of reflected rays.

Appleton's methods, with the balanced antenna and loop systems employed, permit measurements of polarizations and other phenomena not directly disclosed by oscillographic studies alone such as obtained by the classical Breit and Tuve methods (utilizing an antenna only). There is, however, no apparent reason why loops and directional antenna arrays may not be employed to advantage to obtain additional information in applications of the pulse methods even though much of the information thus obtainable requires measurements of relative amplitudes, etc., to which the setups of Appleton have been peculiarly well adapted. There appears to be no inherent limitation of pulse methods, however, which prevent their extension to a consideration of the more difficult amplitude variations as well as purely time relations. The phase interference results are complicated by effects produced by waves corresponding to more than two paths. This difficulty also applies to Hollingworth's method. In general these limitations are of less importance at low frequencies where phase relations are less subject to rapid variations.

The methods of Breit and Tuve are largely free from this difficulty and are well adapted to studies in the high-frequency region, but may be extended to relatively low frequencies (say 0.3 megacycle) where the length of the desired pulse begins to approach the natural period of the circuit. After this, difficulties introduced by transients and other obvious modulation limitations govern. Heising employed both methods in his investigations. The method of Brown, Martin, and Potter in which selective side-band fading was noted, is similar in principle to that of Appleton.¹⁵

In a brief historical review appropriate to a summary of this sort, space hardly permits a more detailed quantitative discussion of the methods outlined in this section for which the reader is referred to articles mentioned in the accompanying bibliography. Appleton's development of appropriate loop and antenna measurements to determine angles of polarization, etc., are worthy of notes as important tools for use in further investigations. In their 1926 paper,²⁰ in addition to presenting experimental results, Breit and Tuve prove an important theorem widely used by other workers, i.e., it is proved that

"In the absence of dissipation, a ray departing with an angle ϕ_0 in a medium of variable index of refraction is subject to a group retardation equal to

that encountered by a ray traversing with the velocity of light a triangular path of the same base and initial angle of departure."

6. Pedersen Summary.

Readers interested in a more extended quantitative and historical summary of radio wave propagation may well refer to a book recently published by P. O. Pedersen⁶⁸ in which an analytical summary and survey of the development of the field is outlined. While some of the material presented, particularly as to the constitution of the upper atmosphere, is of necessity highly controversial and subject to Pedersen's own interpretation, nevertheless this book, by virtue of its completeness and the important original contributions of Prof. Pedersen in the course of the presentation, unquestionably constitutes an outstanding recent contribution to the subject of wave propagation phenomena.

7. Echo Signals.

With the advent of short-wave communication, a new series of phenomena came into prominence, *i.e.*, the so-called echo signals apparently first reported by E. Quäck^{80,81} and subsequently frequently known as the Quäck effect. As originally observed, these signals consisted of echoes of the original dots and dashes with retardation times corresponding to transits of the earth (not only once, but in later observations, several times). Extended observations by Taylor and other investigators of the phenomenon, however, subsequently disclosed many echoes corresponding to time intervals not simply related to the time for an earth transit along a great circle path.⁸² A more extended discussion of these phenomena will be given at the beginning of the next section outlining recent advances.

PART B. RECENT ADVANCES

In Part A salient points in the development of the study of radio wave propagation phenomena from the inception of the art to about one year ago have been briefly outlined. In Part B the rapid development of the art reported from the latter part of 1928 to the present will be discussed in relation to its importance in the fields previously surveyed.

1. Echo Signals.

Perhaps the most remarkable and puzzling phenomena in wave propagation to come to light recently are echoes of really enormous retardation time running into many seconds and even into minutes. These echoes were reported by Hals, Störmer, and van der Pol^{89,96} in November, 1928. As yet the explanation of echoes of this type is not by any means satisfactory. Two possible hypotheses suggest

themselves; either the signals encounter an electron distribution in the Kennelly-Heaviside layer such as to produce an extremely small group velocity over part of the ray path, or the echoes may escape through this layer at nearly normal incidence to be returned from a layer of extreme height (i.e., a diameter comparable with the moon's orbit). Both of these hypotheses are open to serious difficulties. The first hypothesis was advanced by van der Pol; and Breit has shown that an exponential distribution of electron density may give extremely small group velocities. Appleton³ and other investigators have, however, emphasized the extreme difficulties associated with the attenuation encountered by a ray passing over such a trajectory.

An important contribution to the second hypothesis, which was advanced by Störmer, is found in the recent paper by Prof. Pedersen⁶⁹ in which he considers the attenuation encountered when the group velocity is small for numerous assumed types of propagation in the Kennelly-Heaviside layer. He arrives at the conclusion that the attenuation is in every case so excessive as to render an explanation by this means quite unsatisfactory. Pedersen thus definitely allies himself with those who would explain the observed phenomena by electronic or ionic clouds in interplanetary space. Evidence for the existence of such layers due to the electrons emitted from the sun in the earth's magnetic field (according to the theory of Störmer) is found, but great difficulties still remain as a result of the extreme variability of retardation intervals reported, and the rigorous requirements for focusing made necessary in order to overcome the excessive inverse square attenuation which would otherwise appear over a path of such enormous dimensions.

Distinct from the van der Pol-Störmer echoes of extreme retardation time, numerous investigators^{81,40,92} have reported further observations of the Quäck effect or "round-the-world signals" and further studied their diurnal variations and occurrence. These signals are distinguished from the previous group by retardation times corresponding to that required for one or more transits around the earth, although many workers have reported echoes with retardation times not simply related to this interval.^{92,27,49} The investigators of these phenomena in general seek an explanation of the observed effects in multiple transits of the earth along a great circle path or from signals reflected back from the irregularities of the earth's surface or from the sea or by signals scattered by the atmosphere. The possibility remains, however, that some of these phenomena may be less marked manifestations of the van der Pol retarded echoes. Thus, a 5,000-km equivalent path difference on 4,435 kc again introduces difficulties

in attenuation and size of reflector when an echo produced by terrestrial reflection is sought as an explanation of the observed phenomena. It thus appears difficult at present to draw a sharp line of demarcation between all these phenomena, although the existence of distinct effects seems unquestioned.

In a recent (1929) comprehensive paper T. L. Eckersley has presented important further contributions to the field of retarded echoes in the form of numerous observations of the bearings obtained on a high-frequency direction-finding system.²⁶ These bearings are found in general to be correct in the case of distant stations (which are not beam transmitters). The bearings from beam transmitters are, however, found to be grossly in error (the bearing usually corresponding more nearly with the direction of the intercepting station of the beam transmission). Triangulations on very limited available base lines are made, and considerable evidence for the existence of scattering or reflecting sources at distances of from 2,000 to 3,000 km is found. The bearings of non-beam (perhaps appropriately termed "broadcast") transmitters operating within the skip distance are quite indeterminate, the energy apparently arriving from all directions.

An extended hypothesis of scattering from ionic clouds is evolved to explain the observed phenomena, and the dimensions of the clouds are predicted by the absence of observed scattering phenomena above 50 meters. While the evidence deduced for the existence of scattering is considerable, that for the existence of ion clouds of certain discrete sizes appears less complete, and worthy of further careful consideration.

2. Kennelly-Heaviside Layer Studies.

The last few months have marked a period of rapid advance in both theoretical and experimental studies of the height of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer. Notable in this development have been the theoretical papers of Schelleng,^{84,85} Eckersley,^{26,27} Hulburt,^{43,61} and Appleton,⁶ and the experiments of Eckersley²⁷ and Tuve and Hafstad.^{36,37} Kenrick and Jen^{48,49} have also contributed further data taken at Philadelphia and a further theoretical discussion of wave trajectories and retarded echoes, while Mirick and Hentschell have contributed an interesting determination of layer height by the Hollingworth method applied to the 3-megacycle frequency range.⁶³

Schelleng's papers have furnished an interesting method by means of which the difference in wave number between two paths is obtainable for a frequency f_0 in terms of an integral involving the group time retardation for all frequencies less than f_0 , i.e.

$$(N_1 - N_2)_{f_0} = \frac{1}{f_0} \int_{f=0}^{f=f_0} (Tg_1 - Tg_2) df. \quad (2)$$

Schelleng finds the height of a triangle having the wave numbers N_1 , N_2 , etc. (vacuum velocity of propagation assumed) and obtains an approximation to the height of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer by this means which is applied to the world data available (as a function of frequency) to obtain a revised height curve.

Appleton⁶ has discussed the ratio of true to virtual heights on several assumptions of electron density distribution, and shown for any given distribution that the same group retardation times are obtainable by either the pulse method of Breit and Tuve or the wave number method utilized in his investigations.

Kenrick and Jen,⁴⁸ in their theoretical discussion, have considered the estimates of height of Schelleng in their relation to the true height and also the ratio of true to virtual heights for various electron distributions. (Some of this latter discussion closely parallels the work of Prof. Appleton, although it represents an independent development prepared before Prof. Appleton's results appeared in print*). Kenrick and Jen also present layer height determinations showing diurnal variations as observed at Philadelphia on transmission of multivibrator signals from NKF in three distinct tests.

Tuve and Hafstad have presented similar height determinations as observed at the Department of Terrestrial Magnetism and also reported an application of a new method by which the phase of the outgoing and incoming echo signals are compared, and accurate determinations of layer movement thereby obtained. The transmitter crystal phase is used as a system of reference. This paper represents an ingenious and interesting further development of the pulse method for a study of phase relations.²⁷ It appears, however, that layer measurements have hardly yet reached a state of refinement to warrant the extended application of such methods for the production of significant results.

The effects of magnetic storms upon layer heights and movements have also been observed and reported.³⁶

Eckersley's recent contributions to the Kennelly-Heaviside layer problem are to be found in two papers.^{26,27} The contributions contained in the first of these papers have already been in part discussed. Important among the later conclusions contained in this paper are the

* Prof. Appleton's paper was presented at the U.R.S.I. meeting at Brussels on September 13, 1921, and appeared in print in January, 1929.⁶ The Kenrick and Jen paper was presented at a meeting of the Philadelphia Section of the Institute of Radio Engineers on November 23, 1928; see bibliography (No. 48) at end of paper.

author's reaffirmation of the variation of attenuation with angle of departure rather than electron limitation as the major cause of the observed phenomena of skip distance. Objection is raised to the electron limitation hypothesis because of alleged observations of the reception of 10 mc waves returned at nearly normal incidence and of local scattering at 21 mc. The absorption attenuation theory of an earlier paper²⁶ is further discussed and developed. Another important question as to the validity of the ray theory when applied to waves of greater length than 1.5 mc is raised and Prof. Pedersen's discussion of low-frequency propagation from this point of view termed "entirely unwarranted." The use of Watson's theory in the treatment of low frequencies is recommended.

The discussion of the validity of the ray theory thus raised is indeed interesting, and it is to be hoped that Eckersley will further support his contentions by a more adequate and complete theoretical discussion which will serve to disclose more exactly the range of validity of the wave theory and the errors to be expected by its use in the low-frequency region, beyond the statement that "it is difficult to trace the transition between the two methods and therefore determine what modification of the ray theory is necessary." Failure of the author to include such a discussion is no doubt due to the great length of his paper and it is to be hoped that it may be soon included in another communication.

It is generally recognized that the ray theory represents but an approximation for the treatment of problems in the propagation of radio waves, but the exact order of the approximation and the range of its validity do not appear to be generally known. It yet remains to be definitely established that these approximations are seriously in error for the low-frequency region, as would be indicated by Mr. Eckersley's formulas and graphs. It should not be overlooked, however, that Watson's formulas were derived on the assumption of a sharply defined bounding surface for the layer, and that similar conclusions for this case have been found to be derivable by the use of the ray theory.⁴⁷ Watson's theory is thus definitely limited if questions of depth of penetration or the lack of sharp definition of the surface of the layer are to be considered.

In his second paper,²⁷ Mr. Eckersley presents interesting evidence of multipath long-distance communication on the high frequencies as obtained from high-speed facsimile reception, and deduces figures for the height of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer. Close accord is found with the figures for height obtained by Kenrick and Jen in observations on 4435 kc and the agreement termed "more than fortuitous." The point

of view adopted, however, differs from that of these latter investigators in that several rather sharply defined gradients of electron density are pictured. The waves are thus postulated as first refracted from the lower layer and later in the night from the upper layer. Apparently the gradients in each layer are supposedly so rapid as to cause the observed heights to be nearly independent of frequency. Support of this point of view is found also in some of Prof. Appleton's observations and the results of some American observers.*

The point of view of Kenrick and Jen, however, was not extended to several layers but rather considers a continuous and gradual changing electron density with height. This apparently proves sufficient to explain the gradually and continuously varying virtual heights they observed during the evening periods. Such changes are supposedly due to a variation in virtual height due to redistributions of electron densities during the night period over a wide range of height in the upper atmosphere. From this point of view a close agreement in height between observations made over widely different distances on widely different frequencies would be largely fortuitous even when the possibility of several rather sharp maxima is duly considered.

Hulburt's interesting estimate of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer on Mars proceeding from the known physical constants, etc., is worthy of note.⁴²

We are also indebted to Hulburt for a recent contribution to the Kennelly-Heaviside layer theory in which the problem of the ionization in the upper atmosphere is further considered from the point of view of the physicist.⁴³ Difficulties encountered in a previous paper where the layer was calculated as lower during the night period as a result of thermal effects are reconciled by noting an opposing (probably predominant) factor in the form of a difference in electrical potential produced by a circuital ionic current. This effect produces a force causing the ions on the night side of the earth to tend to rise. The observed facts, as obtained from radio observations, are found to be in accord with those predictable by this theory when the best available assumptions of physical constants for the upper atmosphere are made. The constants involved are, however, so much in question as to render a quantitative agreement hardly conclusive.

Breit has recently contributed a further theoretical discussion of echoes of long retardation times in which he produces an exponential form of electron distribution consistent with the observed results but still subject to difficulties of excessive attenuation.¹⁸ It is possible, however, that a close study of the form of electron collisions and the

* *loc. cit.*

mechanism of the dissipation may disclose relations consistent with a satisfactory theory. It is to be hoped that Dr. Breit will consider this phase of the subject in a subsequent communication. Kenrick and Jen⁴⁹ have applied a modification of Breit's distribution in discussing a possible explanation of observed echoes of moderate retardation of some 5000 km retardation on 4435 kc.

Another recent paper of Dr. Breit's considers the theoretical aspects of the phase-echo experiments of Hafstad and Tuve.¹⁹

3. Transmission Studies. Experimental Advances.

Observations of field strengths and a study of their variation have been continued during the past year to an increasing extent. Results of such studies have been reported in papers by Austin,¹¹ Sreenivasan,⁸⁸ and Wymore⁹⁹ in the low-frequency range and by Parkinson in the broadcast band.⁶⁷ Magnetic and meteorological correlations have been studied and discussed in these communications including the effect of magnetic storms.

Kenrick and Jen have also reported the results of a limited series of observations in the low-frequency region at Philadelphia, and compared the results with simultaneous reception of the same station (WCI) by Pickard at Newton Center, Mass. Evidence for a consistent progressive change from a direct to inverse correlation of the receptions is found, but the interval of the observations is not considered sufficient to render such conclusions final.⁴⁹

A rich store of Kennelly-Heaviside layer height determinations have also been contributed as outlined in a previous section, but many more data of this sort are necessary before anything approaching a complete and consistent picture of the phenomena involved can be obtained. Some means of automatic recording which will enable such observations to be continued over long periods would doubtless furnish many data of interest and enable interesting correlations to be established. Such observations over a wide range of frequencies are evidently needed.

Valuable supplementary data of related skip distance phenomena have been contributed by the work of Clapp²² and Krüger and Plendl.⁵⁰

Eve and co-workers have also reported interesting observations of underground reception which have opened up a further interesting field for research and discussion.^{29,30}

The results of these observations have already been the subject of discussion contributed by Englund and others.²⁹ Suitable carefully controlled radio experiments underground thus give promise of considerably extending our knowledge of ground conductivity ef-

fects at very high frequencies, which is a subject still very little understood.³⁰ Practical applications to the location of ore bodies or other earth conductivity discontinuities are also suggested.

A knowledge of effective earth conductivities would also be of great assistance in other branches of the art, such as the prediction of antenna characteristics, etc.

4. Radio Direction Finding.

Further data from radio direction-finding observations as to the variation of apparent bearings resulting from radio transmission polarization phenomena are to be found in a comprehensive paper by Smith-Rose⁸⁶ on radio direction finding, while further interesting light is found in the published discussion of this paper.⁸⁶

Conversely, observations of the type contributed by Eckersley²⁶ and Parkinson⁶⁷ in papers already reviewed are of direct bearing on the problem of high- and intermediate-frequency direction finding. These problems are rapidly becoming of paramount importance in this art due to the demands of aerial navigation for radiobeacons.

The possibility of ultra frequencies of the order of 30 to 100 megacycles or higher (which are apparently not in general returned from the Kennelly-Heaviside layer) remains, however, as a very interesting and let us hope fruitful field of current development and research in aerial navigation, where line of sight communication over considerable distances is available for the operation of directed ray beacons or general communication services.

The use of frequencies of from 1 to 30 megacycles for radio direction finding remains at present a rather unsatisfactory problem because of disconcerting effects introduced by the violent polarization changes encountered on these frequencies and the short range of the ground wave.

A fruitful method for the investigation of short-wave polarizations is opened up by the work of Friis, in which phases of received waves on antennas located at several points are studied by means of a cathode-ray oscillograph.³³

PART C. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSION—OUTLOOK FOR FUTURE DEVELOPMENT

The published developments in wave propagation phenomena during the past year have perhaps been more voluminous and varied in scope than in any other period of similar duration. However, the progress recorded represents but a start toward anything approaching a reasonably complete quantitative theory of radio transmission.

The Störmer-Hals-van der Pol echoes, (opening up a quite unsuspected field of research), have further served to emphasize how far we still are from even a complete qualitative picture of all of the factors involved. Kennelly-Heaviside layer studies, and observations in nearly all fields of the subject, have emphasized the extreme variability of the observed phenomena and the necessity of extended observations before general conclusions may be drawn. With an ever increasing number of workers interested in this field of research, however, it appears that the coming year should be even more productive of fruitful results.

Theoretical progress is much handicapped by lack of accurate quantitative data as to the actual conditions in the upper atmosphere, and workers in this field hence view with much interest the progress of such experiments as those now being carried on by Prof. R. H. Goddard of Clark University, with a view to devising a rocket which would render a direct observation of the conditions existent in the upper air possible. Meanwhile, many data of importance may be contributed from consistent observations along the lines outlined above and by further theoretical discussion and interpretation of the results thus obtained. It is to be hoped also that new experiments and lines of investigation may be devised which will further serve to separate and clarify the complex factors which contribute to the phenomena of wave propagation. A further study of the magnetic factors entering into wave propagation, and a completely satisfactory theoretical explanation of the phenomena associated with magnetic storms appears also to rest largely in the future, as does a wholly satisfactory explanation of the Störmer-Hals-van der Pol* echoes.

Bibliography

1. Anderson, C. N., "Correlation of long-wave transatlantic radio transmission with other factors affected by solar activity," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 297-347; March, 1928.
2. Anderson, C. N., "Transatlantic radio transmission," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1528-1535; September, 1929.
3. Appleton, E. V., *Nature*, 122, 879; 1928.
4. Appleton, E. V., "On some direct evidence for downward atmospheric reflection of electric rays," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 109, 621; 1925. See also *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 113, 450, 1926; 115, 305, 1927; 115, 291, 1927. *Electrician*, 398, April 3, 1925. *Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc.*, 22, Part 51, 672-675; 1925.
5. Appleton, E. V., "On a method of determining the state of polarization of downcoming wireless waves," *Proc. Roy. Soc. A*, 117, p. 576-588. "Study of signal fading," *Jour. I.E.E.*, (London) 872-885; August, 1928.
6. Appleton, E. V., "Some notes on wireless methods of investigating the electrical structure of the upper atmosphere," *Proc. Phys. Soc.* 41, 43, (London) December 15, 1928.
7. Austin, L. W., *Bulletin of the Bureau of Standards*, Washington, 7, No. 3, 315; 1911.
8. Austin, L. W., "A suggestion for experiments on apparent radio direction variations." *Proc. I.R.E.*, 13, 3-4; February, 1925. (Dr. Austin published

- articles on long-wave reception tests in nearly every issue for several years at about this period.)
9. Austin, L. W., "Long-wave radio measurements at the Bureau of Standards in 1926 with some comparison of solar activity and radio phenomena," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 825-843; October, 1927.
 10. Austin, L. W., "Long-wave radio receiving measurements at the Bureau of Standards in 1927," *Proc. I.R.E.* 16, 1252-1260; September, 1928.
 11. Austin, L. W., "Experiments in recording radio signal intensity," *Proc. I.R.E.* 17, 1192-1205; July, 1929.
 12. Baeumler, M., "Recent investigations of the propagation of electromagnetic waves," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 13, 5-29; February, 1925.
 13. Baker, W. R. G. and Rice, C. W., "Reflection of short radio waves in the upper atmosphere," *Jour. A.I.E.E.*, 14, 535-539; June, 1926.
 14. Barfield, R. H., "The attenuation of wireless waves over land," *Jour. I.E.E. (London)*, 204-218; February, 1928. Discussion *Jour. I.E.E. (London)* 931; July, 1929.
 15. Bown, R., and Gillett, G. D., "Distribution of radio waves from broadcasting stations over city districts," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 12, 389-409; August, 1924.
 16. Bown, R., Martin, D. K., and Potter, R. K., "Some studies in radio broadcast transmission," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 14, 57-131; February, 1926.
 17. Breit, G., "A suggestion of a connection between radio finding and small fluctuations in the earth's magnetic field," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 709-723; 1927.
 18. Breit, G., "Group velocity and retardations of echoes," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1508-1512; September, 1929.
 19. Breit G., "The significance of observations of the phase of radio echoes," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1815-1821; October, 1929.
 20. Breit, G., and Tuve, M. A., "A test of the existence of a conducting layer," *Phys. Rev.*, 21, 554-576; 1926.
 21. Breit, G., Tuve, M. A., and Dahl, O., "Effective heights of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer in December, 1927, and January, 1928," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 1236-1239; September, 1928.
 22. Clapp, J. K., "Some experiments in short distance short-wave radio transmission," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 479-493; March, 1929.
 23. Cherry, R. O., "Signal strength measurements of 3L0," 1928 Specialty Press, Ltd., Melbourne, Australia. (Two papers).
 24. Dobson, G. M. B., Harrison, D. M., and Lawrence, J., "Measurements of the amount of ozone in the earth's atmosphere and its relation to other geophysical conditions," *Proc. Roy. Soc.* 110, 660; *Proc. Roy. Soc.* 114, 521.
 25. Eccles, W. H., "On the diurnal variations of the electric waves round the bend of the earth," *Proc. Roy Soc.*, 87, 79-99; 1912. Also see *Electrician*, 71, 969-970; 1913.
 26. Eckersley, T. L., "The effect of the Heaviside layer on the apparent direction of electromagnetic waves," *Radio Review*, 2, 60-65, 231-248; 1921. "An investigation of short waves," *Jour. I.E.E. (London)*, 992-1032; August, 1929. See also *Jour. I.E.E. (London)*, 85-128; June, 1927.
 27. Eckersley, T. L., "Multiple signals in short-wave transmission," *Proc. I.R.E.*, January, 1930.
 28. Espenschied, L., Anderson, C. N., and Bailey, A., "Transatlantic radio telephone transmission," *Proc. I.R.E.* 15, 7-56; February, 1926.
 29. Eve, A. S., Steel, W. A., McEwan, A. R., Thompson, J. H., and Olive, G. W., "Reception experiments in Mount Royal tunnel," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 347-376; February, 1929. Discussion, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 892-894; May, 1929.
 30. Eve, A. S., Keyes, D. A., and Lee, F. W., "The penetration of rock by electromagnetic waves and audio frequencies" (preliminary report), *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 2072-2074; November, 1929.
 31. Fleming, J. A., "Principles of electric wave telegraphy," Longmans and Co., 1st Edition, 1906.
 32. Fessenden, R. A., "Wireless Telephony," *Proc. A.I.E.E.*, 27, Part 1, 553-629; see pages 610-611.
 33. Friis, H. T., "Oscillographic observations of the direction of propagation and fading of short waves," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 658-665; May, 1928.

34. Goddard, R. H., "A method of reaching extreme altitudes," Smithsonian Institution, 1919, publication 2540.
35. Guyot, Lt., "Etude sur la propagation des ondes courtes," *L'Onde Électrique*, 7, 509-528.
36. Hafstad, L. R., and Tuve M. A., "Further studies of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer by the echo method," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1513-1523; September, 1929. See also "Note on Kennelly-Heaviside layer observation during a magnetic storm," *Terr. Mag. and Atmos. Elec.*, 39-44; March, 1929.
37. Hafstad, L. R., and Tuve, M. A., "An echo interference method for the study of radio wave paths," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1786-1792; October, 1929.
38. Heaviside, O., "Telegraphy," *Encyclopedia Britannica*, (ninth edition, published 1902), 33, 215.
39. Heising, R. A., "Experiments and observations concerning the ionized regions of the atmosphere," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 75-99; January, 1928.
40. Hoag, J. B., and Andrew, V. J., "A study of short time multiple signals," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 1368-1374; October, 1928.
41. Hollingworth, J., "The propagation of radio waves," *Jour. I.E.E.* (London), 579-595; May, 1926.
42. Hulburt, E. O., "Ionization in the atmosphere of Mars," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1523-1527; September, 1929.
43. Hulburt, E. O., "Ions and electrical currents in the upper atmosphere of the earth," *Phys. Rev.*, 31, 1018-1039; 1928. *Phys. Rev.*, 1167-1183; October, 1929.
44. Jelstrup, H. S., "Essai d'explication de l'écho Störmer—Hals sur les ondes de 31.4 metres de PCJJ," *L'Onde Electrique*, 7, 538-540.
45. Kennelly, A. E., "On the elevation of the electrically-conducting strata of the earth's atmosphere," *Elec. World and Eng.*, 473; May 15, 1902.
46. Kennelly, A. E., "The daylight effect in radio telegraphy," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 1, 3-16; July, 1913.
47. Kenrick, G. W., "Radio transmission formulae," *Phys. Rev.*, 16, 1040-1050; June, 1928. *Phil. Mag.*, 289-304; August, 1928.
48. Kenrick, G. W., and Jen, C. K., "Measurements of the height of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 711-733; April, 1929.
49. Kenrick G. W., and Jen, C. K., "Further observations of radio transmission and the heights of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 2034-2052, November, 1929.
50. Kruger, K., and Plendl, H., "The propagation of low power short waves in the 1000-kilometer range," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1296-1312; August, 1929.
51. Laporte, O., "Zur Theorie der Ausbrietzung Elektromagnetischen wellen auf der Erdkugel," *Annalen der Physik*, 70, 596-616; 1923.
52. Larmor, Sir Joseph, "Why wireless electric rays can bend round the earth," *Phil. Mag.*, 48, 1025-1036; 1924.
53. Love, A. E. H., "The transmission of electric waves over the surface of the earth," *Philosophical Transactions*, 215, 105-131; 1915.
54. MacDonald, H. M., "The bending of electric waves round a conducting obstacle," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 71, 251-258; 1902-03.
55. MacDonald, H. M., "The bending of waves round a conducting obstacle:—Amended results," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 72, 59-68; 1903.
56. MacDonald, H. M., "The transmission of electric waves around the earth's surface," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 90, 50-61; 1914.
57. MacDonald, H. M., "The transmission of electric waves around the earth's surface," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 98, 409-418; 1920-1921.
58. MacIlwain, Knox, and Thompson, W. S. "A radio field strength survey of Philadelphia," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 181-192; February, 1928.
59. Marconi, G., "On the progress of space telegraphy," *Electrician*, 49, 392; 1902. *Proc. Royal. Inst.*, 17, 208.
60. March, H. W., "Über die Ausbrietzung der Wellen der drahtlosen Telegraphie auf der Erdkugel," *Annalen der Physik*, 37, 29-50; 1912.
61. Maris, H. B. and Hulburt, E. O., "Wireless telegraphy and magnetic storms," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 479-493; March, 1929. See also *Terr. Mag. and Atmos. Elec.*, 17, 55-58; March, 1929.
62. Mesny, R., "Les ondes électrique courtes," *Presses Universitaires de France*, Paris, 1927.

63. Mirick, C. B., and Hentschel, E. R., "Height of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1034-1041; June, 1929.
64. Nagaoka, H., "Effect on radio telegraphy of atmospheric ionization," *Math. Physical Soc. (Tokyo) Proc.*, 7, 403-412; October, 1914.
65. Nagaoka, H., "Effect of solar eclipse on wireless transmission," *Math. Physical Soc. (Tokyo) Proc.*, 2, 428-430; December, 1914.
66. Nichols, H. W., and Schelleng, J. C., "Propagation of electric waves over the earth," *Bell Sys. Tech. Jour.*, 4, No. 2, 215-234; April, 1925.
67. Parkinson, T., "Observations of short period fading," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1042-1061; June, 1929.
68. Pedersen, P. O., "The propagation of radio waves," published by "Danmarks Naturvionskabeliagi Samfund," Copenhagen, 1928.
69. Pedersen, P. O., "Wireless echoes of long delay," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1750-1785; October, 1929.
70. Pickard, G. W., "Determination of wireless wave fronts," *Elec. Rev. (N. Y.)* 494-495; October, 1908.
71. Pickard, G. W., "Short period variations in radio reception," *Proc. I.R.E.* 12, 119-158; April, 1924. (Like Austin, Pickard published his results in this field at very frequent intervals in the *Proc. I.R.E.* from 1924-1928. Several articles will be found in nearly every volume. A complete bibliography of these articles is not given here.)
72. Pickard, G. W., "Polarization of radio waves," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 14, 205-212; April, 1925.
73. Pickard, G. W., "The effect of the solar eclipse of January 24, 1925 on radio reception," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 13, 539-569; October, 1925.
74. Pickard, G. W., "Correlation of radio reception with solar activity and terrestrial magnetism," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 83-97, February, 1927; 15, 749-766, September, 1927. See also discussion by Dellinger, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 326-329; April, 1927.
75. Pickard, G. W., "The relation of radio reception to sunspot position and area," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 1004-1012; December, 1927.
76. Pickard, G. W., "Some correlations of radio reception with atmospheric temperature and pressure," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 765-772; June, 1928.
77. Poincaré, H., "Sur la diffraction des ondes électriques: a propos d'un article de M. MacDonald," *Proc. Royal Society*, 72, 42-43; 1903.
78. Poincaré, H., "Sur la diffraction des ondes hertziennes," *Rivista di Palermo*, 29, 169-259; 1910.
79. Poincaré, H., *Comptes Rendus*, 54, 795; 1912.
80. Quäck, E., Ballantine, S., "Propagation of short waves around the earth." Ballantine reviews Quäck article in *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 341-345; April, 1927. Original article in *Zeitschrift für Hochfrequenztechnik*, 28, 177; 1926.
81. Quäck, E., and Mögel, H., "Double and multiple signals with short waves," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 791-829; May, 1929.
82. Rayleigh, Lord (Strutt, J. W.), "On the bending of waves round a spherical obstacle," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 72, 40-44; 1904. *Jahr d. drahtl. Tel.*, 3, 445; 1910. *Rend. d. Circ. Mat. di Palermo*, 169-261; 1910.
83. Rybczynski, W., "Über die Ausbreitung der Wellen in der drahtlosen Telegraphie auf der Erdkugel," *Annalen der Physik*, 5, 191-208; 1913.
84. Schelleng, J. C., "Note on the determination of ionization in the upper atmosphere," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 1471-1476; 1928.
85. Schelleng, J. C., "Further note on the ionization in the upper atmosphere," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1313-1321; August, 1929.
86. Smith-Rose, R. L., "Radio direction finding by transmission and reception," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 425-475; March, 1929. Discussion, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1440-1453; August, 1929. Discussion *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1897-1898; October, 1929.
87. Sommerfeld, A., "Über die Ausbreitung der Wellen in der drahtlosen Telegraphie," *Annalen der Physik*, 28, 663-736; 1909.
88. Sreenivasan, K., "On the relation between long-wave reception and certain terrestrial and solar phenomena," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1793-1814; October, 1929. See also discussion *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 155-157; February, 1927. See also discussion *Proc. I.R.E.*, 15, 1002-1003; December, 1927.
89. Störmer, C., "On an echo of short electromagnetic waves arriving several

- seconds after the emitted signal and its explanation from the theory of aurora borealis," *Nature*, 122, 681, 1928; 123, 16, 1929. *C. R.* 187, 811; 1928. *Ent.* 5, 483; 1928. *L'Onde Electrique*, 7, 531-532; 1928.
90. Taylor, A. H., "Variation in direction of propagation of long electromagnetic waves," Bureau of Standards Scientific Paper No. 353, 1919.
 91. Taylor, A. H., and Hulburt, E. O., "The propagation of radio waves over the earth," *Phys. Rev.*, 27, 189-215; 1926.
 92. Taylor, A. H., and Young, L. C., "Studies of high frequency radio wave propagation," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 16, 561-578; May, 1928. *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1491-1507; September, 1929.
 93. Taylor, J. E., "Characteristics of earth-current disturbances and their origin," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 71, 225; 1903.
 94. Thomson, J. J., "On some consequences of the emission of negatively electrified corpuscles by hot bodies," *Phil. Mag.*, 253; August, 1902.
 95. van der Pol, B., "On the propagation of electromagnetic waves around the earth," *Phil. Mag.*, 38, 365-380; 1919.
 96. van der Pol, B., "Short wave echoes and the aurora borealis," *Nature*, 122, 878, 1928. *L'Onde Electrique*, 7, 534-537; 1928.
 97. Watson, G. N., "The diffraction of electric waves by the earth," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 95, 83-99; 1918-19.
 98. Watson, G. N., "The transmission of electric waves round the earth," *Proc. Royal Soc.*, 95, 546-563; 1918-19.
 99. Wymore, I. J., "The relation of radio propagation to disturbances in terrestrial magnetism," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 17, 1206-1213; July, 1929.
 100. Zenneck, J., *Ann. der Physik*, 23, 846; 1907.



CASCADED DIRECT-COUPLED TUBE SYSTEMS OPERATED FROM ALTERNATING CURRENT*

By

EDWARD H. LOFTIN AND S. YOUNG WHITE

(Loftin-White Laboratory, New York, N. Y.)

Summary—An outline is given of the characteristics which are desirable in an audio amplifier or detector-amplifier. A description is given of some direct-coupled cascaded tube systems operating from a-c supply. Among the features which are discussed are: the reduction of current drain on the filter, the elimination of "motor-boating", stabilizing against drift of plate current, the elimination of hum and the provision of automatic change of grid bias with change of carrier input. The paper gives circuit constants and amplification-frequency characteristics for certain circuit arrangements.

STATEMENT OF PROBLEM

IN ANY audio amplifier or detector-amplifier the following characteristics are desirable:

1. minimum frequency discrimination
2. minimum wave-form distortion
3. minimum hum if a-c operated
4. reasonably high gain from the tubes used
5. low cost
6. permissive large tolerance in manufactured parts

In a-c operated direct-coupled cascaded tube systems the characteristics depend upon or are influenced by the following features:

1. maintaining the operation of all tubes at the midpoint of their operating or output current curves, or what may be termed stabilizing against "drift" tending to arise from—

- (a) changing tubes (they are not all alike),
- (b) change of constants or conditions due to—
 - (1) aging of resistors,
 - (2) temperature coefficient effects in resistors,
 - (3) line voltage variations,
 - (4) grid emission from tubes,
 - (5) gas current in output tubes, and
 - (6) manufacturing tolerances.

2. feed-back phenomena at audio frequencies
3. the hum problem
4. motor-boating

* Dewey decimal classification: R342.7. Presented at Eastern Great Lakes District Convention of the Institute, November 19, 1929.

5. trigger action
6. maximum gain of tube
7. providing current for auxiliaries, such as speaker field
8. increase to very high gain, such as that required by photo-electric cell operation.

Since the direct-coupled cascaded system is usable as a most effective detector-audio-amplifier it is well to keep in mind that the following additional essentials can be secured in this system:

1. low grid bias for weak carrier currents and high grid bias for strong carrier currents, automatically self-adjusting.
2. supply of potentials for the radio-frequency tubes sufficiently filtered to prevent modulation hum.

SOME DEVELOPMENTS IN A-C OPERATION

Some of the inherent difficulties which had to be overcome in making the direct-coupled cascaded system stable and practical are discussed in a prior paper¹ by the authors, but owing to lack at that time of commercial a-c tubes having sufficiently high amplification constants for satisfactory direct-coupled operation our discussion was confined to battery-operated systems. The a-c work had to be commenced and carried on in large part with commercially non-available a-c high- μ tubes such as could be constructed on special order, and they were secured in both the heater-type and filament-type cathodes having values of μ ranging from 16 to 80. In the case of the filament type for raw a-c heating it was found practically desirable to go as low as 1/4 volt on a heavy filament, since the excellent amplifying ability of the system at 120 cycles makes even very slight filament hum troublesome.

It is thought that the technical and practical features encountered in our research and experiences that have led to an extremely simple, efficient, and remarkably hum-free a-c operated system will be more certainly understood and appreciated if we follow through some of the developments that have resulted in success in one way and another.

An early workable a-c operated system employing our specially constructed a-c high- μ tubes is shown in Fig. 1. A current large compared to that required for the plate circuit of tube VT_2 flows through potentiometer R_1 from source S to develop the grid and plate potentials required by the tubes. In our early experience we found a large current in R_1 necessary to avoid what might be termed a "trigger

¹ Edward H. Loftin and S. Young White, "Direct coupled detector and amplifiers with automatic grid bias", Proc. I. R. E., 16, 281-286; March, 1928.

action," an effect not wanted in amplifiers and amplifying detectors, but which may be otherwise turned to good account.²

This trigger action is peculiar to direct-coupled systems and, unless harnessed, may operate to prevent operating the last tube at the midpoint of its plate-current curve, so essential to good amplification. It is apparent in the arrangement of Fig. 1 that if the plate current of VT_3 is a substantial fraction of the total current through R_1 there is possibility of changes in this plate current so effectively modifying the bias of preceding tubes as to result in snapping the plate current of VT_3 to one or the other end of the curve and holding it there in an effective blocked or saturated condition of the last tube, and there-

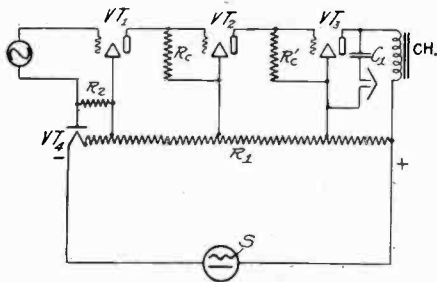


Fig. 1—Direct-coupled cascaded tube system having potentiometer potential distribution, and thermionically-controlled drift correction.

fore render the system ineffective until something is done to reestablish original conditions.

Continuing with Fig. 1, the output of the last tube comprises a choke coil and condenser combination which tends to localize audio signal current flow (except in the case of lowest frequencies), thus limiting audio signal current in arm R_1 where, if present, it can cause regenerative phenomena owing to its ability to act on the grids and plates of preceding tubes.

The system of Fig. 1 is prevented from drifting (is stabilized) by the inclusion of the filament of tube VT_4 , the 199 type for example, in the potentiometer R_1 . The emission from this filament flows through the resistance R_2 , and with the filament operated at a critical point for emission, a slight change in current through the filament changes the plate current and therefore the potential across resistance R_2 . This potential across R_2 is the biasing potential for tube VT_1 , and with a proper choice of constants a relatively small change in plate current of VT_3 produces a large change in the grid bias of VT_1 .

² Nicholas Minorsky, *Jour. Franklin Institute*, 203, No. 2, 181-209; February, 1927.

Obviously the degree of plate current of tube VT_3 is dependent upon its grid bias, but since its grid bias is obtained from the flow of plate current of tube VT_2 through resistance R_c' , and so on through the system to tube VT_1 , a change in the grid bias of VT_1 will carry through the system; that is, the grid bias of VT_1 is the controlling factor in determining the amount of plate current of VT_3 .

Thus, the tying together of the plate current of VT_3 and the grid bias of VT_1 by a means opposing any change in the plate current of VT_3 , the system is corrected against drift and the plate current of VT_3 can be set to a desired value and be maintained at substantially that value.

In using the 199 type of tube as the stabilizer VT_4 , we prefer to operate at a temperature at which the filament is just on the threshold of emission (32 ma), so that the thermal inertia is great and requires an appreciable length of time for noticeable change of temperature. If the current in R_1 exceeds this amount the excess can be by-passed by a resistance shunt. With this selection of conditions any audio-frequency component flowing in R_1 alternates much too rapidly to affect the emission noticeably, but any change enduring more than a second or so will give the filament of VT_4 time enough to change temperature and emission sufficiently to correct the result of the change. Thus the arrangement is in effect a low-pass filter for everything beyond the order of several cycles per second, and consequently relieves the grid of VT_1 from any audio signal current flowing in the arm R_1 .

The practical undesirabilities of high current in the potentiometer R_1 and the use of a rather costly tube as a stabilizer in the arrangement of Fig. 1 are overcome in the arrangement of Fig. 2.

In this Fig. 2 arrangement a proper choice of constants permits the substitution of a simple resistance arm R_1 for the potentiometer, and a standard output transformer can be used with the last tube, the audio circuit being completed by a condenser C_1 .

The stabilizing effect is accomplished in a bridge formed by resistances R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 . Since the object of drift prevention is to avoid any permanent displacement of the point of operation in the plate-current curve of the last tube, the plate current of the last tube is passed through resistances R_1 and R_2 to give opportunity for control thereby. The resistances R_3 and R_4 , forming the other two arms of the bridge, are connected across the relatively unvarying potential of the filter supply, and the resistance values of the bridge are so chosen that with normal plate current in the output tube the potential between the balance points x and y of the bridge is of correct polarity

and magnitude for a desired grid bias of VT_1 . For example, R_1 may be calculated to develop 160 volts at 50 ma of current for a 250-type output tube, R_2 , 10 volts at the same current; R_3 , 8 volts at 1 ma; and R_4 , the difference between the 8 volts of R_3 and the total potential of the supply source also at the 1-ma current of R_3 . High resistance for $R_3 + R_4$ will keep a desirable low current drain on the supply source.

With such an arrangement when anything happens to vary the plate current of the output tube the potential across R_2 likewise varies, while the potential across R_3 remains substantially constant. The result is the development of a counter grid-bias potential for VT_1 opposing a change in either direction in the plate current of the output tube. As a practical matter, the arrangement can be designed to be capable of maintaining the conditions of Fig. 2 against drift within very

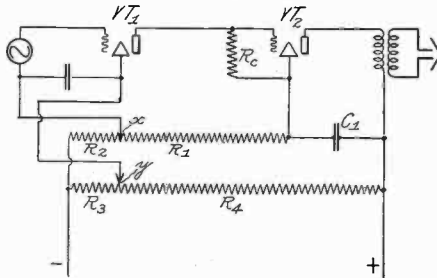


Fig. 2—Direct-coupled system with potentiometer eliminated and with bridge drift correction.

close approximation to a predetermined desired operating adjustment in the presence of a rather wide variety of conditions tending to cause drift.

One drawback of the arrangement of Fig. 2 is that hum currents, if the system is a-c operated, and audio signal currents are in assisting phase in the arms R_2 and R_3 with respect to the grid bias of VT_1 , thus making it difficult to handle hum producing causes and signal current feed-back causes. Since only small resistance is needed in arms R_2 and R_3 , success through by-passing of the hum and signal currents can be had only in the use of several hundred μf of by-pass condenser inserted, for example, between the points x and y . Since the difference of potential between these points is very small, it is not outside of the realm of practical possibilities that a small and cheap electrolytic condenser of sufficient capacity to be effective could be produced, but for the time being no such condenser with satisfactory life characteristics is known to be commercially available.

The hum and feed-back problems of Fig. 2 can be met by substituting for the by-pass condenser idea a thermal effect along with a re-arrangement of the bridge system, these features being included in the arrangement of Fig. 3.

Here the two major legs of the bridge are connected in parallel with respect to the plate current of the output tube, thus making the hum and audio current components in them of like direction and phase. Under these conditions if the arms R_2 and R_3 are substantially balanced for direct-current components in establishing the grid-bias potential for VT_1 , likewise the hum and audio current components are substantially balanced.

In order to make attempted changes in the predetermined plate current of the output tube effective to produce a correcting change in bias potential of VT_1 , a thermal effect is employed. For example, the

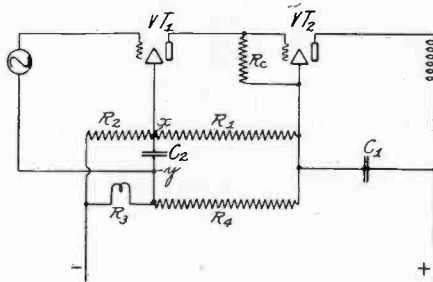


Fig. 3—Direct-coupled system having temperature-resistance drift correction.

resistance R_3 may be the filament of an ordinary 10-watt, 115-volt incandescent lamp caused to operate at a dull red heat by selecting the right amount of current for this operation in choosing the value of resistance R_4 . At such a temperature the filament of the usual incandescent lamp changes its resistance pronouncedly with slight temperature changes either side of the selected point of operation. Since R_2 is an unvarying resistance, any change in the plate current of the output tube divided between the arms R_2 and R_3 will result in an unbalance to develop a correcting change in the bias potential of VT_1 .

Due to the high thermal inertia of the filament of the incandescent lamp, the bridge only unbalances for effects lasting an appreciable fraction of a second, thus eliminating audio-frequency signal-current effects. For this reason no feed-back difficulty is had with the arrangement of Fig. 3. The condenser C_2 shown is merely a radio-frequency by-pass condenser which need be included only when the arrangement is intended to function as a carrier-current detector. Obviously an

interchange of the grid and filament connections of VT_1 of Fig. 2 with respect to points x and y , and interchanging the lamp R_3 and resistance R_2 in Fig. 3 will reverse the action to stabilize a 3-tube or any odd-numbered tube system, the corrections shown being for even-numbered tube systems.

The hum resulting with a-c energizing of the arrangement of Fig. 3 may be made indeed low in the presence of extremely poor filtration, and the reason why such result is obtainable may be more readily explained by reference to the simple diagram of Fig. 4.

Fig. 4 is an arrangement similar to what is commonly termed the "Miller bridge," it being noted in the figure that the direct-current energizing components are supplied from the bridge arm. If attempt be made to balance out the hum of the fluctuating source S , it is found that when the grid potentiometer is moved far enough to

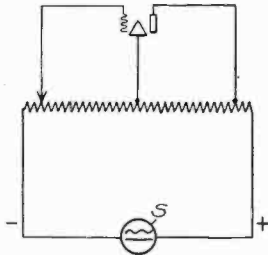


Fig. 4—Hum elimination explanatory diagram.

the left to have the grid fluctuating component neutralize the plate fluctuating component, the tube is in a practically blocked condition. However, in the present mode of operating the direct-coupled system resort is had to such high impedance conditions as to approach closely the blocked condition. In consequence the form of operation is inherently adapted to hum neutralization on the Miller bridge principle, so that the hum in the system of Fig. 3 is remarkably low.

The system of Fig. 3 has a limitation in that the amount of change of grid-bias potential of VT_1 in practical constructions is not sufficient to adequately compensate the system against the effects of strong carrier currents when using the system as a detector. The amount of compensation obtainable is however amply sufficient when the system is used as an audio amplifier where only limited cause for drift exists, such as changing from one tube to another and change in potential of energizing supply.

A system having an arrangement capable of any ordinarily re-

quired degree of stabilization is shown in Fig. 5, in this instance a screen-grid tube being used in the input position.

In the arrangement of Fig. 2, in trying to solve the signal feedback and hum current difficulties previously mentioned, attempt was made to filter these effects at the grid of the input tube by inserting therein a fraction of a megohm of resistance by-passed to the filament by a fraction of a microfarad of capacity. All these attempts were frustrated by motor-boating at the period of the filter employed. When the screen-grid tube became available it was immediately realized that the screen grid introduces hum and audio signal feed back, and like attempts to isolate this element by filtering also resulted in motor-boating.

Further investigation disclosed the fact that effective filtration without motor-boating could be obtained by inserting a filter im-

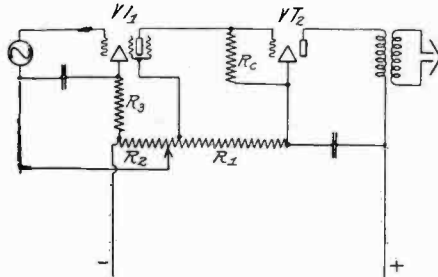


Fig. 5—Direct-coupled system including screen-grid tube, differentially acting drift correction and automatic grid-bias change.

pedance R_3 in a position common to the circuits of all three elements of the screen-grid tube, as shown in Fig. 5, the location bringing about a cancellation of the effects tending to motor-boating production.

A resistance R_3 , combining as it does both the plate current and the screen-grid current, develops rather a large potential across its terminals when of a value to be effective for low-frequency current filtration. In order to prevent this fact resulting in a disadvantage and rendering the system inoperative, advantage was taken of it to form a bridge composed of resistances R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and the impedance of the tube combined with resistance R_c . For example, R_3 may have 20 volts developed across its terminals when the system is balanced. Then, merely for analysis, we may assume that it is desired to have the grid bias of VT_1 initially set at zero. In order to overcome the 20 volts of R_3 the grid return is made to a point on R_2 substantially 20 volts positive, thus cancelling the 20-volt potential across R_3 to leave

an initial zero bias for VT_1 , and to leave everything in balance. It is of course understood that any initial bias can be given to VT_1 by selecting the point of return of the grid circuit to a position on resistance R_2 .

Now with the balance established, or any selected initial grid bias applied, a strong carrier current will cause pronounced rectification and consequent increase of plate current in VT_1 , say of the order of 10 per cent. The potential across R_3 will consequently rise to approximately 22 volts, thus contributing 2 volts towards a negative bias on the grid in lieu of the previous zero bias. However, this is not yet the full action. There also takes place a decrease of plate current of the output tube, and since the potential across R_2 is a function of the plate current of the output tube, the differential potential developed in R_2 will be reduced. That is, where there was originally 20 volts across R_2 opposing 20 volts across R_3 to give zero bias with no incoming signal, we now have 18 volts in R_2 opposing approximately 22 volts across R_3 to give an effective bias of 4 volts. It is thus seen that the stabilizing arrangement of Fig. 5, including as it does a differential effect, permits of the development of a most powerful stabilizing reaction against drifting arising from very strong carrier currents.

While the problem of stabilizing is more than adequately solved by the stabilizing arrangement of Fig. 5 for all ordinary requirements, it isolates the grid of VT_1 from the hum source R_1 , R_2 , and consequently completely eliminates the Miller bridge arrangement for hum neutralization. However, because of the freedom of the direct-coupled system from phase shifting and harmonic production, it is admirably adapted to hum elimination by hum bucking. The arrangement of Fig. 6 shows one practice, and a very simple one, employed most effectively for hum balancing in combination with an extremely poor filter. It comprises merely a connection of the filament to a point of preferably variable selection on the resistance R_1 through a condenser C_{hb} of $1/10 \mu f$, for example. If it were not for the variability in the commercial screen-grid tubes the connection to R_1 might well be once determined and left fixed.

OPERATIONAL CHARACTERISTICS OF SOME PROPOSED DIRECT-COUPLED SYSTEMS

Almost an endless series of different characteristics and performances may be obtained from direct-coupled cascaded systems, through choice of elements in number and character, of circuit constants and potentials, so that the uses to which such systems may be put are manifold. In carrying out our work we have repeatedly been surprised and gratified with new and seemingly impossible results.

For example, Fig. 7 is a simple 2-tube system comprising a 224 screen-grid input tube and a 250 power-amplifier output tube, supplied with current from a single 281 half-wave rectifier tube. The general constants are shown or later stated. With this simple system over-all voltage amplifications ranging from 50 to a seemingly impossible 1000 are obtained through selection of constants and energizing potentials

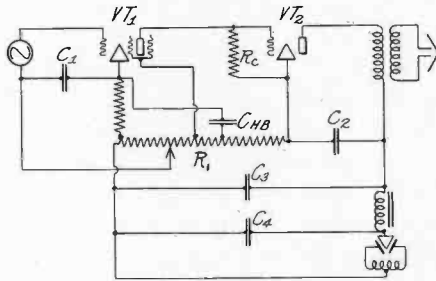


Fig. 6—Modification of figures to include hum balancing.

as later illustrated in part through two such changes in the graphs of Fig. 8. By adding a second 224 tube to make a 3-tube system the over-all amplification has been increased to 50,000 even with a 245 power-amplifier output, and there is apparently no reason why the 3-tube system cannot be worked up to a calculated over-all amplification of

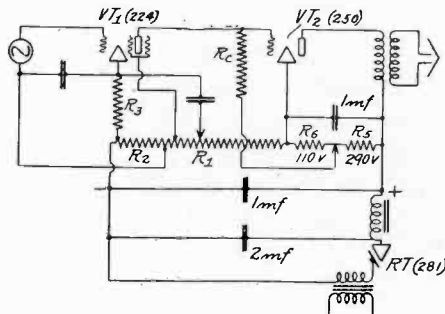


Fig. 7—Direct-coupled system designed for high potential on input tube electrodes.

250,000 with careful selection of optimum values in the case of each 224 tube, though this is a matter we have not as yet had time to determine practically.

To give a practical idea of the effectiveness of these systems, the 2-tube one gives good dynamic speaker volume on most of the New York broadcast stations at a point in the heart of the city using only antenna input, while the 3-tube one accomplishes the same result on a

3-inch coil loop reception for a number of stations. The 3-tube system, preceded only by a so-called band-pass filter, makes an extremely good broadcast receiver. In general, the 2-tube system is about 10 times as sensitive as the power detector, 1-stage audio system.

It is well to point out here that the damping of a tuned input circuit is extremely low in the direct-coupled system, and more so when the screen-grid type of tube is used because of elimination of the effect on the input circuit of the capacitive reactance of the output circuit. In other words, when using the system as a detector-amplifier good selectivity and resonant increase is had in the input circuit as compared to other forms of detection, thus lessening the amount of tuning needed in the preceding radio-frequency system if that is used. In fact, the selectivity obtained in the single circuit when coupled directly to an antenna is unusual.

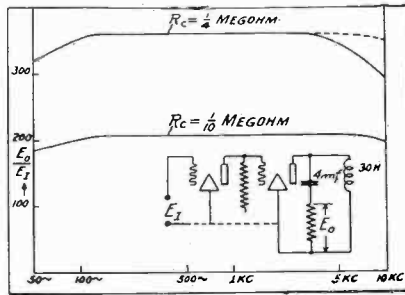


Fig. 8—Amplification frequency characteristics of two adjustments of system of Fig. 7.

In the case of three-electrode tubes the overall gain depends upon the μ of the tubes and the value of coupling resistance R_c , with the exception that with low values of R_c wide changes of μ do not make much difference. In going to screen-grid tubes the over-all gain further depends upon plate, screen-grid and grid potentials.

The two graphs of Fig. 8 show with the aid of logarithmic abscissas and linear ordinates the measured and plotted voltage gain throughout the entire audio range of the 2-tube system of Fig. 7, the system being the same for the taking of both graphs except for change in the value of coupling resistor R_c and suitable change of resistance of R_s and screen-grid potential, 1/10 megohm being used in one case and 1/4 megohm in the other, as indicated on the graphs. The skeleton diagram accompanying the graphs shows and states the details of the output of the system employed in measuring for these graphs. In Fig. 7 the potential developed by the filter was 650 volts at 50 ma, 400 volts

of this being across the 250 output tube and 250 volts across the arm R_2 . Grid potential with the system at rest was about 2 volts, and screen-grid potentials were 45 and 30 volts respectively. A 400- μ 224 tube was used.

In order to operate on this occasion with the high potential of 180 volts on the plate of the 224 tube, the 400 volts across the 250 tube were divided into the 110-volt and 290-volt portions by high resistances R_6 and R_5 respectively, as shown, the high resistances not noticeably increasing the current drain on the filter. R_c was connected at this division, thereby adding 110 volts to the 250 volts in R_1 and R_2 , a total of 360 volts to divide into 180 volts across coupling resistance R_c and the plate of the 224 tube, this equal division being what we term "symmetrical operation." Of course the 180 volts across R_c are too much for grid bias of the 250 tube, but the opposed 110 volts in R_6 reduces the overall grid bias to a satisfactory 70 volts. It might be added that the systems can be operated with a potential distribution on plate and across R_c equal to the normal bias potential of the succeeding power amplifier tube, as in Fig. 6, thereby not requiring the R_5 and R_6 resistances of Fig. 7. In this case only 140 volts are required across the resistance arm, thus making the filter output 540 volts for 250 tube operation.

The 1/10-megohm graph shows the most useful gain of 208 substantially uniform from 140 cycles to 5 kc with a loss of but 10 per cent at the low point of 50 cycles and a loss of but 6 per cent at the extreme range of 10 kc. These end droops can in large part be accounted for in the frequency-reactance relations of the output circuit, substantiating the theoretical constancy of the direct-coupled amplification *per se*.

The 1/4-megohm graph shows the much greater gain of 360 (80 per cent increase) substantially uniform from 140 cycles to 3 kc. Like the 1/10-megohm graph, it shows a 10 per cent loss at 50 cycles, indicating that the increase of R_c has no effect upon the low-frequency side. However, the 10-kc point shows an increase of loss to 16 per cent. This fact requires a little consideration, for it is obvious that if R_c be increased to the megohms order frequently used the high-frequency may become of serious proportions.

This fall-off is due in part to a feed-back effect. In the direct-coupled system the increasing of the resistance of R_c makes the feed back through the internal capacity of the non-screen-grid output tube increasingly effective and, being a capacitively reacting plate-circuit feed back at the high-frequency end for most output systems, the feed back decreases amplification to a greater degree with increase of R_c . Of course, if a screen-grid power amplifier becomes available we need

give the feed back no further attention, there being none of this action in the screen-grid input tube, but for the time being properly chosen but simple feed-back neutralizing easily overcomes this effect in large degree. By way of example, the dotted portion of the 1/4-megohm graph shows the improvement had with a hastily adjusted neutralizer arrangement.

While some explanatory examples around a zero grid bias of the input tube are cited, in usual practice an initial bias of about 2 volts allows for the fact that the emission pressure in some tubes may be such as to start a grid current at 1 volt. In general the screen-grid potential may be low, as good operation may be had with only a few μa in the plate circuit and a too high screen-grid potential will materially reduce amplification. It is also necessary to adjust the screen-grid potential to operate near the mid point of its current curve, as is done in the case of all plate electrodes, since otherwise this additional member in the system may cause some severe unwanted rectification on its own account.

From what is explained in connection with arrangements for drift correction in direct-coupled systems, it may be seen that these effects, and those of the arrangement in Figs. 5, 6, and 7 in particular, may be used to advantage in the usual detection systems, and further are capable of automatically producing large voltage differences for automatic volume-control effects without the addition of an auxiliary tube. If there should be need for it, the drift correction responsiveness may be reduced to such low frequency that the system can be made capable of high amplification for frequencies as low as 1 cycle. Usual audio work allows plenty of margin in which to obtain drift compensation without interfering with the very lowest audio tones.

One very interesting characteristic is the ability to receive unmodulated CW signals without heterodyne for printer, tape or other relay operated recording, since the high-frequency rectifying action that carries through the system is of the square-wave type and ideal for the necessary result.

The mildness of the hum difficulties is apparent from examination of the rectifier and filter system constants of Fig. 7. Here a single-wave (281) rectifier is followed by a single-stage filter of 2 and 1 μf , respectively, separated by a 20-henry choke. The 2- μf condenser is really not used because needed for filtering but to develop the required high potential from the 281 tube. Another high-voltage 1- μf condenser is used in the signal circuit of the output tube. Even with this simple filter and half-wave rectifier, the hum is well within estimate of what is commercially tolerated. When it is appreciated from

Fig. 8 that the gain at 60 and 120 cycles is practically the same as elsewhere, the result is remarkable.

There is little or no difficulty with hum from induction since there is no effective magnetic pickup in the system, and wiring loops are easily taken care of. Even in the extremely high gain systems mentioned, electrostatic shielding is all that is necessary, and electrostatic shielding is simple and cheap compared with electromagnetic. Close location of parts is not at all a troublesome feature.

Reference to Fig. 7 also makes clear that there is plenty of high potential and current for energizing the tubes of a preceding radio-frequency amplifier without increased drain on the filter, and also for energizing the field coils of dynamic speakers, the current in the arm R_1 being adequate for this. The system also lends itself to push-pull operation as two complete systems in push-pull relation, or the equivalent of simple push-pull output tubes, but in view of the extremely fine characteristics we really see no need for push-pull for the reasons it is now so generally employed. Photoelectric cell operation becomes a simple and satisfactory matter through the medium of the very high gain amplifier.

In general we feel that direct-coupled systems offer unusual possibilities in space and cost savings, our estimate being that the present radio receivers, amplifiers, and like apparatus can be reproduced with improved quality at costs well below those now existing.



NOTE ON DAY-TO-DAY VARIATIONS IN SENSITIVITY OF A BROADCAST RECEIVER*

BY
RALPH P. GLOVER

(Crosley Radio Corporation, Cincinnati, Ohio)

Summary—A series of sensitivity measurements on a highly sensitive broadcast receiver over a period of one month indicates that large variations in sensitivity may occur. The importance of these variations in sensitivity is pointed out with particular reference to intercomparison of receiver measuring equipment and production testing of radio receivers. In this particular study, a high degree of correlation between relative humidity and sensitivity was found; i.e., days of high relative humidity were also days of low sensitivity and vice versa. This effect is probably attributable to increased losses in the radio-frequency transformers during periods of high relative humidity. It is shown that changes in sensitivity may be delayed as much as four days after the corresponding changes in relative humidity.

IMPORTANCE OF THE PROBLEM

FOR THE intercomparison of radio receiver measuring equipment, it is customary to have a receiver measured under standardized conditions by the various laboratories concerned. The results are then compared, usually on the assumption that characteristics have remained unchanged over the total period of time involved. In a previous paper¹ by Van Dyck and Dickey it was stated that a 10 per cent variation in characteristics of a particular set was due to changes within the set itself as it was moved from one laboratory to another. However, no data have been furnished to show how this conclusion was reached. It is obviously important to recognize the magnitude of changes in characteristics and the conditions affecting them. It is only in this way that the true magnitude of experimental and systematic errors can be determined and the results of such intercomparison properly interpreted.

Some systems of production testing of radio receivers are based on comparison, either direct or indirect, of the product with a master set of approved characteristics. The reliability of such a system is dependent to a large extent on the retention of calibration by the master set.

In both of the above instances it is difficult, if not impossible, to attribute changes in sensitivity to any specific cause. In the case of the

* Dewey decimal classification: R161. Presented at organization meeting of the Cincinnati Section, September 16, 1929.

¹ Van Dyck and Dickey, "Tests of broadcast receiving sets," Proc. I. R. E., 16, 1530; November, 1928.

receiver which has been passed about from one laboratory to another, the elements of possible mechanical damage, actual change of characteristics, and errors attributable to the various measuring equipments enter into observed differences. It was therefore thought advisable to determine whether or not variations in sensitivity could be detected from day to day under what may be called "ideal conditions"; that is, with all measurements carried on under as nearly identical conditions as possible and with all factors likely to produce changes in sensitivity removed with the exception of those encountered in normal operation of the receiver.

CAUSES OF VARIATIONS IN MEASURED SENSITIVITY

The measured sensitivity of a receiver may vary from time to time, and under various conditions for any of the following reasons:

- (1) lack of precision in the measuring system
- (2) inaccurate tuning of the receiver
- (3) circuit instability
- (4) improper operating conditions
 - (a) line voltage
 - (b) input and load impedance
 - (c) tube characteristics
- (5) uncertain operating conditions such as:
 - (a) misalignment (due to mechanical damage, condenser bearing play, movable control-grid leads, etc.)
 - (b) variable contact resistances
 - (c) temporary effects of temperature, moisture, etc.

Variations in sensitivity attributable to improper or uncertain operating conditions may be chiefly eliminated when all measurements are carried on in the same laboratory by an experienced operator, using precision equipment and adhering to a definite procedure. Under such conditions it may be reasonably assumed that errors are entirely experimental and of small magnitude.

EXPERIMENTAL ERRORS

Tuning. Experience shows that under such conditions, errors are chiefly due to inaccurate tuning. This accuracy is affected by the mechanical "smoothness" of the tuning system and by the rate of change of frequency with movement of the control knob. In order to determine the order of magnitude of tuning errors, the following test was performed. The sensitivity of a receiver of the same type as that used in this investigation was measured ten times in succession at each of three different carrier frequencies. Retuning of the receiver to the

carrier frequency was involved in each measurement. The output level of the set was adjusted to about 100 mw while tuning, since small gains in response are more apparent when larger fluctuations of the output indicating device occur. The conventional normal output level of 50 mw was used for all sensitivity determinations. Table I gives the results of this test. This would indicate that the average error in tuning the receiver for maximum response is about 1 per cent.

PROCEDURE

The receiver used was a commercial chassis employing 3 UY-224's, 2 UY-227's, 2 UX-245's and 1 UX-280 as radio-frequency amplifiers, detector and first audio, push-pull output stage, and rectifier, respectively. Tuning was accomplished by means of a three-gang condenser. The tubes used were of normal characteristics and had been aged about 20 hours prior to the test. No tubes were removed from the sockets after the test was started with the exception of the output tubes, thus minimizing the chance of indeterminate misalignment due to shifting of the position of the control-grid leads in the radio-frequency stages and possible damage to tubes through handling. The set was handled as carefully as possible during the process of setting up the test. Following a measurement, the receiver was carefully stored to prevent mechanical injury of any sort.

TABLE I

Carrier Frequency kc per second	Mean Deviation from Mean Sensitivity per cent	Maximum Deviation from Mean Sensitivity per cent
600	0.51	1.64
900	0.45	1.05
1500	1.28	4.13

The measuring equipment used, with the exception of minor changes, was as described previously in the PROCEEDINGS.² Briefly, the apparatus consisted of the standard signal generator and associated apparatus which is installed in the Receiver Development Laboratories of the Crosley Radio Corporation at Cincinnati. The equipment is capable of adjustment to a high degree of precision, thus providing a signal which may be readily duplicated as to magnitude and character from time to time. No question of the absolute accuracy of measurements was involved since comparative data only was required. The test consisted of 15 sets of sensitivity measurements spread over the period of August 5, 1929 to August 31, 1929. In the earlier portion of

² K. W. Jarvis, "Radio receiver testing equipment", Proc., I.R.E., 17, 664; April, 1929.

the test, measurements were taken at 11 different carrier frequencies covering the broadcast band. Later measurements were taken at 6 carrier frequencies.

RESULTS

From the very first, large variations in sensitivity were observed. On August 21st the set began to oscillate at 1100 and 1200 kc. There had been no previous indication of instability. The set was apparently stable on August 26th and remained so for the remainder of the month.

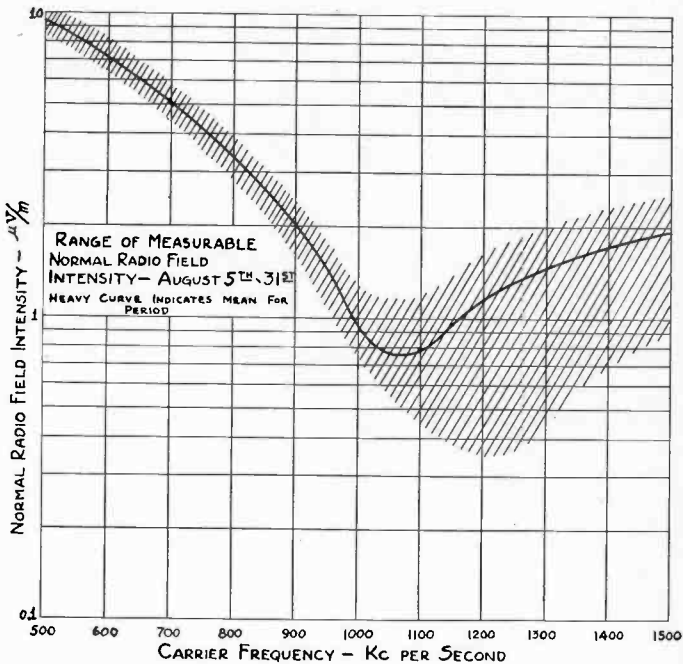


Fig. 1—Range of measurable normal radio field intensity.

Fig. 1 shows the total range of measurable normal radio field intensity for the period of the investigation. The heavy curve in the cross-hatched area represents the arithmetic mean normal radio field intensity. As can be seen, the maximum variations from the mean were from 20 to 70 per cent, being greatest over the most sensitive portions of the frequency range, that is, from about 1100 to 1500 kc. It should be remembered that the sensitivity of a receiver is inversely proportional to the normal radio field intensity.

Correlation with Humidity. Hourly readings of humidity during working days were available. From this data daily morning to morning two-day moving averages of relative humidity were computed. Con-

sidering the fact that nighttime variations in humidity were not considered and that relatively few sensitivity measurements were obtained, a rather high degree of correlation between relative humidity and normal radio field intensity was found. These data are presented in Fig. 2.

The upper group of curves represents daily humidity and field-intensity variations for frequencies of 600 and 800 kc, plotted as per cent deviation from the respective means for the month. The lower

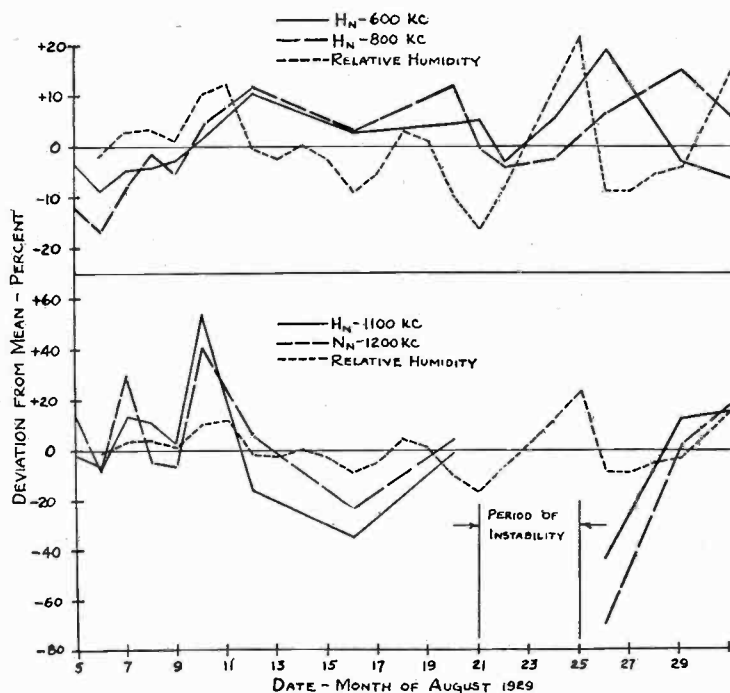


Fig. 2—Daily deviations from mean for month at 600, 800, 1100, and 1200 kc.

group of curves shows corresponding data for carrier frequencies of 1100 and 1200 kc. It should be noticed that the ordinate scale for the lower group of curves is twice that of the upper group.

Both groups of field-intensity curves follow relative humidity quite closely. In the case of the 600- and 800-kc curves, changes in field intensity are roughly proportional to changes in humidity. The effect of humidity is apparently delayed in the less sensitive portion of the range, the time-lag averaging about two days in the case of the 600-kc data and from two to four days in the case of the 800-kc data.

This time-lag is apparently very much less for the 1100- and 1200-kc group, the humidity and normal radio field intensity being practically in phase throughout the period of stable operation. It is interesting to note that the period of instability begins on the 21st of August when the relative humidity was at the lowest value for the month, and ends on the 25th when the humidity reached the peak for the month. It should be noted that the percentage changes in field intensity are from three to five times the corresponding percentage changes in humidity.

Fig. 3 summarizes the foregoing data and shows mean deviations

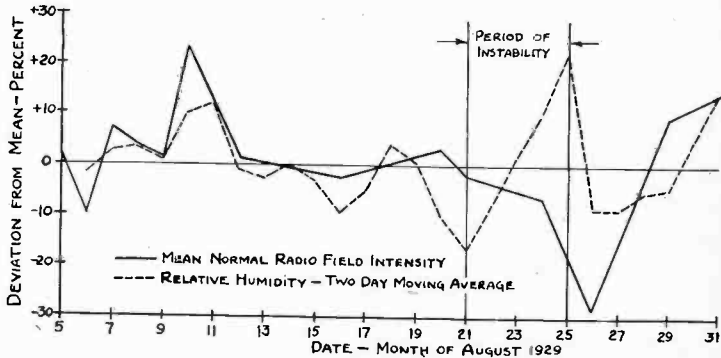


Fig. 3—Daily deviation of mean normal radio field intensity from mean for month.

from mean normal radio field intensity for the entire range of the receiver against corresponding humidity deviations.

CONCLUSIONS

The following conclusions may be drawn from the investigation:

(1) Broadcast receivers of high sensitivity may show large variations in sensitivity even when maintained under ideal conditions. The changes in characteristics may be sufficiently great to cause oscillation over the more sensitive portion of the frequency range.

(2) Changes in sensitivity appear to be highly correlated with changes in relative humidity in the negative sense: that is, periods of high sensitivity are generally periods of low relative humidity and vice versa.

(3) The effect of humidity changes may be delayed from one to four days, the time-lag being greater at frequencies of relatively low sensitivity.

(4) Changes in sensitivity with humidity are probably attributable to variable losses in the radio-frequency portion of the receiver.

(5) The observed changes in sensitivity, while highly important from the technical standpoint, are of small importance to the average listener, since usually they may be compensated for by adjustment of the volume control.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

In conclusion, the writer wishes to acknowledge the valuable assistance of Miss Helen Klein in the taking of data and computation of results.



CONSIDERATIONS IN SUPERHETERODYNE DESIGN*

By

E. G. WATTS, JR.

(Formerly, Victoreen Radio Co., Cleveland, Ohio)

Summary—Factors involved in the suppression of the characteristic double response of the superheterodyne are considered. Design details are given for the oscillator circuit, and oscillator-modulator coupling, as affecting the inherently uniform response characteristics. A method of aligning the circuits for single control purposes is given.

DUE TO its inherently uniform selectivity and amplification over a tuning range, and stability of operation at high values of either factor, the superheterodyne method of selection and amplification approaches the characteristics of an ideal receiver. Notwithstanding the necessity for tubes and components which contribute nothing directly to the amplification, in practice it will be found that a properly designed superheterodyne can be built with less material, and in a smaller space, than other types of receivers for the same performance.

SUPPRESSION OF DOUBLE RESPONSE

An obstacle which has, in the past, prevented the superheterodyne from more nearly approaching the ideal, is the difficulty of suppressing the double response due to the higher- and lower-frequency beats of signal and oscillator. The use of an "intermediate" frequency on the order of 400–500 kc cannot be considered as a means to this end, since it entails a sacrifice of the advantages of low-frequency amplification, as well as a reduction of the selectivity factor resulting from a reduced intermediate-frequency signal-frequency ratio. However, experience indicates that an intermediate frequency lower than 150 kc is not advisable. At this frequency, two tuned circuits before the modulator (first detector) will provide sufficient signal frequency selectivity to reduce the undesired response to a level below that of the component which unavoidably feeds through the circuit capacity to the modulator grid.

It can be seen that precautions must be taken to keep both capacitive and inductive intercircuit coupling at a low value, and the direct pickup of the modulator grid circuit must be minimized by thorough shielding. With antenna disconnected a strong signal should be barely perceptible. This condition is readily obtainable in practice.

* Dewey decimal classification: R134.75.

Even after the modulation of the interfering signal has been reduced to inaudibility, there will still remain the heterodyne whistle produced by the difference of the oscillator beats with the desired and interfering signals. If the percentage modulation of the interfering signal is low, this whistle may be of sufficient intensity to cause objectionable interference on the desired signal. It will be discerned that the frequency of the whistle thus produced can be controlled by varying the intermediate frequency slightly. In this manner, if the frequency of the whistle be made 5000 cycles, it will fall in intensity,

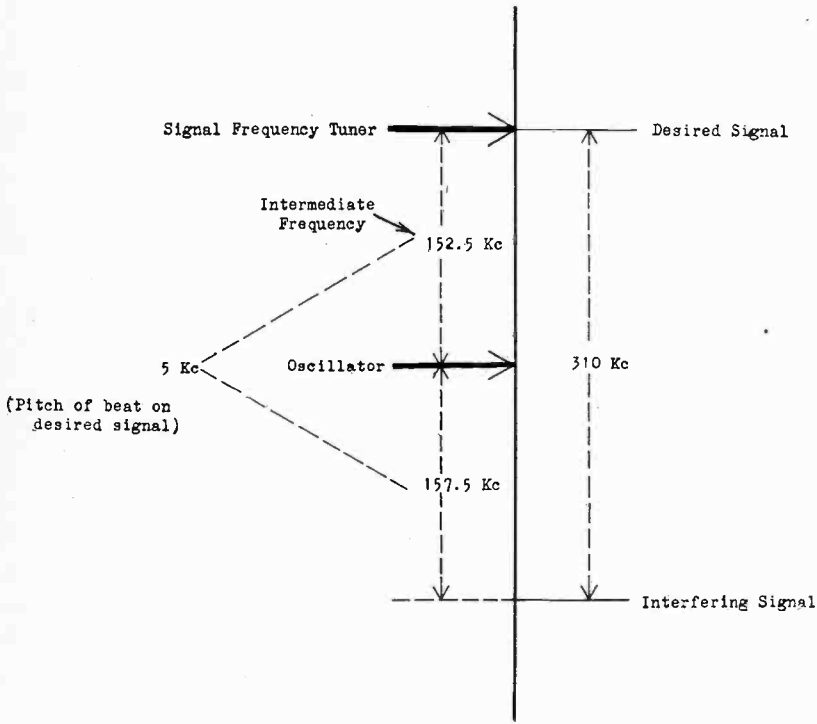


Fig. 1—Frequency relations between desired and undesired beats.

due to the drop in the sides of the selectivity curve of the intermediate-frequency amplifier. At the same time, one of the adjacent channels 10 kc from the desired channel forms another 5000-cycle beat when the oscillator is tuned to this channel. This is by virtue of the fact that on one channel the interference-frequency oscillator-frequency difference is 5 kc more than the intermediate frequency, and on the other channel, 5 kc less. The two audible beat frequencies are equal only at 5000 cycles, for a 10-kc channel separation. Any higher frequency on one

channel will result in a lower one on the other. It can be seen that if the intermediate frequency is given any value ending in 2.5 or 7.5 kc, this optimum figure of 5000 cycles will result, as shown diagrammatically in Fig. 1. This procedure places the modulation of the interfering signal midway between the channels, where it is in a position to cause least interference. The high-frequency attenuation of the usual audio systems further reduces the beat-frequency interference. It is not economically practicable to reduce the interfering signal to negligible values entirely in the signal frequency tuner, due to the difficulty of reducing the circuit capacity to a favorable value. However, the interference from the highest field-strength signals which are likely to be encountered may be minimized by adjusting the intermediate frequency to the proper value, as described. Little difficulty is had in maintaining stability of the various constants, to allow effective operation of this method.

OSCILLATOR DESIGN

Unless the oscillator voltage on the modulator grid remains above an optimum value over the frequency range of the oscillator, the inherently uniform response of the superheterodyne will depart from normal. This uniformity can be preserved by the selection of a suitable oscillator circuit, and the proper design of coupling between it and the modulator. The oscillator level cannot be raised as a whole to compensate for a deficiency at one end of the range, as this will cause the modulator to be overloaded at the opposite end. The design of most "kit" superheterodynes in past years was defective in this respect. However, the modulator may be made capable of handling a wider range of grid voltages by providing it with automatic grid bias. An increase in oscillator voltage will then cause a corresponding increase of grid bias, and prevent the grid from swinging positive. The efficiency of the modulator is also considerably improved with automatic grid bias. The coupling between oscillator and modulator must, of course, be kept below the value at which the tuning of the latter drags the oscillator at the higher frequencies.

In Fig. 2 are shown curves of response against frequency for various oscillator circuits and coupling combinations. The response is plotted in terms of modulator plate current. Curve *A* is for a Hartley oscillator coupled to a few turns in the grid return of the modulator. *B* is the same oscillator coupled loosely to the modulator grid tuned circuit. *C* represents a tuned grid, and *D* a tuned plate oscillator with the same coupling. *E* shows the latter with the addition of automatic grid bias on the modulator.

The use of a properly selected grid leak and condenser is important if maximum oscillator efficiency and uniformity are to be obtained. An oscillator operating at low efficiency is more subject to frequency change from varying voltages. Better uniformity of efficiency over a frequency range will be obtained with large grid condensers; on the order of $0.005 \mu\text{f}$.

It can be seen that the use of a non-uniform signal-frequency amplification stage will be detrimental to the over-all uniformity. It will be found, however, that the effect of one stage is negligible, even when the plate inductance is kept at a low value as a means of preventing oscillation.

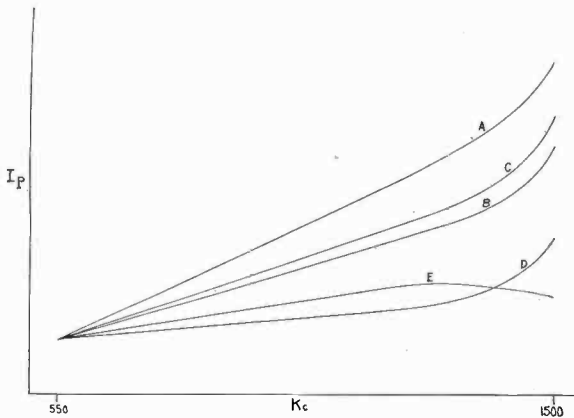


Fig. 2—Response-frequency characteristics of various coupling combinations.

While amplification before the modulator is not primarily intended to increase sensitivity, a certain amount of amplification at this point is desirable. Due to the fact that the oscillator output contains some modulation due to tube noise and supply voltage ripple, this is passed on to the demodulator (second detector) the same as the modulation of the signal, and appears in the audio amplifier as hiss and hum. The hum, which can be kept at a low value in a well-designed oscillator, is usually negligible; and the hiss is appreciable only when the ratio of signal and oscillator voltages on the modulator grid is large; i.e., when signals are weak. Since amplification before the modulator reduces this ratio, the oscillator noise is reduced in proportion. For the same reason, volume should be controlled after the modulator, so that signal voltages are as large as possible at the modulator grid.

At an intermediate frequency of 150 kc, it is practicable to operate the oscillator only on the higher-frequency side of the signal, when the

oscillator range is to be aligned with that of the tuned circuits for single-control purposes. This is on account of the larger capacity ratio necessary to cover the lower-frequency beat range. The same type variable condenser is used for the oscillator as for the tuned circuits, but with a smaller inductance. The oscillator frequency range is then shortened by a fixed condenser in series with the tuning condenser until the setting for the proper beat with a given frequency coincides with that of the tuned circuits.



THE PIEZO-ELECTRIC RESONATOR IN HIGH-FREQUENCY OSCILLATION CIRCUITS*

BY

YASUSI WATANABE

(Department of Electrical Engineering, Tohoku Imperial University, Sendai, Japan)

Part I. Motional Admittance of the Piezo-Electric Resonator†

Summary—Cady developed theoretically the motional admittance circle diagram of the piezo-electric resonator. The object of the first part of the present paper is an experimental verification of Cady's theoretical considerations regarding motional admittance.

The effect of an air-gap between the resonator and the electrodes upon the motional admittance is also studied theoretically and experimentally. The determination of the equivalent electrical constants of the piezo-electric resonator with an air-gap is developed by a simple mathematical treatment. The relation between motional admittance and size of electrodes is discussed, as well as the experimental arrangement when a high voltage is to be impressed upon the resonator.

1. INTRODUCTION

JUST AS it is very important to study the telephone receiver from the point of view of a motional impedance, it is also very important and convenient to treat the characteristics of the piezo-electric resonator with special reference to its motional admittance for the resonance of mechanical vibration.

From the properties of the motional admittance circle diagram of the piezo-electric resonator, we can determine its equivalent electrical constants. These equivalent electrical constants are very important for the scientific study of the characteristics of the resonator itself as well as of the electrical circuits containing the resonator, such as the piezo-electric oscillator and the piezo-electric frequency stabilizer.

Any simple and accurate method of measuring the motional admittance is so useful that the writer desires to treat in the following some new measuring methods as well as some experimental results.

The writer has studied the motional admittance of resonators for the following special cases:

(1) The apparent equivalent electrical constants of the resonator, when an air gap exists between the crystal and the electrodes, are given

* Dewey decimal classification: R214. This investigation was done in Tohoku Imperial University at Sendai, Japan, with aid from Saito Hō-On Kai (the Saito Gratitude Foundation). The remaining parts of the paper, on the piezo-electric coupler, oscillator, and frequency stabilizer, will appear in the May issue of the PROCEEDINGS.

† This part is a translation of a paper, written previously in Japanese. (*Jour. I. E. E. of Japan*, No. 466, May, 1927.)

simply by mathematical treatment of the equivalent circuit, and the result is fairly well verified by experiment.

(2) The diameter of the motional admittance circle is approximately proportional to the square of the electrode area, and the natural frequency of the resonator increases as this area diminishes.

(3) By means of two pairs of electrodes, connected diagonally, we can change the mode of the resonant vibration from its fundamental into its first harmonic, and also by the same principle, the original first harmonic vibration of a resonator made of a twinned crystal of quartz can be changed into the fundamental vibration corresponding to its length.

(4) The more the amplitude of the resonant vibration is increased, the more the mechanical loss increases with the result that the diameter of the motional admittance circle diagram decreases remarkably.

(5) When the amplitude of the mechanical vibration at resonance is intense, the stress at the node of vibration becomes so large that the electric field intensity in the air-gap between the resonator and the electrode can attain a value high enough to start there a bluish discharge. This phenomenon leads us to the idea of the production of high voltage by means of a piezo-electric resonator.

(6) Many interesting phenomena are observed in experiments with the resonator at a comparatively high voltage, such as the production of an audible sound, or of a mechanical force exerted by the resonator. The writer also describes some experiments made by means of a cathode-ray oscillograph in order to observe the dynamic characteristics of the resonator.

2. MOTIONAL ADMITTANCE OF THE PIEZO RESONATOR AND THE EQUIVALENT ELECTRICAL CONSTANTS

We must define first the motional admittance of the piezo-electric resonator, which is cut from a quartz crystal with the dimensions [b (width), t (thickness), l (length)] as shown in Fig. 1.

Now let us suppose that this resonator is placed freely between the electrodes without any air-gap, the electrodes being perpendicular to its electrical axis, and that any potential difference V , of a frequency which is nearly equal to the natural frequency of mechanical resonance, is applied across these electrodes.

When we consider the longitudinal vibration of the resonator, the mathematical treatment is comparatively easy, as shown by Cady¹ and others.

¹ Cady, Proc. I.R.E., 10, 83; January, 1922.

The piezo-electric stress caused by the applied potential difference V is equal to $\epsilon V/t$ and it acts on the resonator uniformly along the length. ϵ is the piezo-electric constant. By the law of superposition, this uniformly distributed stress may be represented by two forces acting on the ends in opposite directions with the value $(\epsilon V/t)bt$. Therefore the force making the resonator vibrate longitudinally is

$$F = 2b\epsilon V. \quad (1)$$

Letting x, z_m be the displacement and the mechanical impedance of the resonator respectively, referred to the end points, the velocity of the vibration at the end is given simply by the following equation; the

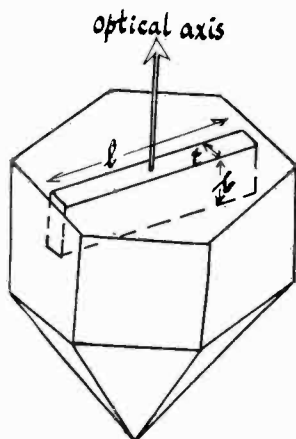


Fig. 1—Orientation of crystal plate.

symbol t for *time* in the differential expression dt must of course be distinguished from the same symbol as used elsewhere for *thickness*.

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{F}{z_m} = \frac{F}{r + j\left(\omega M - \frac{S}{\omega}\right)}. \quad (2)$$

In this equation $r, M,$ and S denote respectively the mechanical resistance, inertia, and stiffness of the crystal. They correspond to Cady's $N, M,$ and g .

The total displacement is clearly equal to $2x$ and it includes the equilibrium elongation $\epsilon V/Gt$ where G is Young's modulus for quartz, but this value is so small compared with the elongation due to mechanical resonance that we may neglect it in the study of the motional admittance of the piezo-electric resonator. As the strain is $2x/l$, a polari-

zation of magnitude $P_1 = 2\epsilon x/l$ is produced as the result of the piezo-electric converse effect. Moreover, there is another polarization due to the potential difference V , i.e., $P_2 = kV/4\pi t$.

Consequently, when the impressed potential difference varies sinusoidally, the electric current in the external electric circuit is found as follows:

$$i = bl \frac{d(P_1 + P_2)}{dt}. \quad (3)$$

Combining (2) with (3), we have

$$i = 2be \frac{F}{z_m} + \frac{kbl}{4\pi t} \frac{dV}{dt} = Y_m \cdot V + C_a \frac{dV}{dt}. \quad (4)$$

From this result, together with (1), we can now define the motional admittance Y_m and the normal capacity C_a of the piezo-electric resonator as follows:

$$Y_m = \frac{(2be)^2}{z_m}, \quad C_a = \frac{kbl}{4\pi t}. \quad (5)$$

Y_m is the motional admittance of the C_m , L_m , R_m branch in Fig. 2.

It is evident that the locus of the ends of the vectors representing the motional admittance for a variable frequency is a circle.

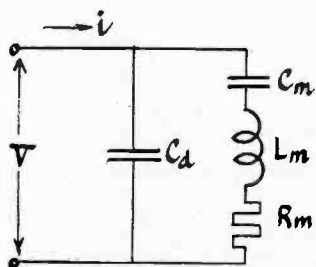


Fig. 2—Equivalent circuit of a piezo-electric resonator.

The relation between the mechanical impedance Z_m and the physical constants of the resonator is based upon the assumption that the mechanical loss is only because of the viscosity of the crystal.

$$\left. \begin{aligned} M &= \frac{1}{2} \rho b l t, \\ S &= M \omega_0^2 = 4 M \pi^2 f_0^2 = \frac{\pi^2 G b t}{2l}, \\ r &= \frac{\pi^2 Q \rho b t}{2l}. \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (6)$$

In (6), ρ is the density and Q is Cady's "viscosity" of quartz. ω_0 and f_0 refer to crystal resonance. Considering (4), we can represent the resonator by the equivalent electrical circuit (4), (5), (6) as shown in Fig. 2, where the constants of the series resonance circuit corresponding to the motional admittance are

$$\left. \begin{aligned} Z_m &= \frac{1}{Y_m} = \frac{z_m}{(2b\epsilon)^2}, \\ R_m &= \frac{r}{(2b\epsilon)^2} = \frac{\pi^2 Q \rho}{8\epsilon^2} \left(\frac{t}{bl} \right), \\ L_m &= \frac{M}{(2b\epsilon)^2} = \frac{\rho}{8\epsilon^2} \left(\frac{lt}{b} \right), \\ C_m &= \frac{(2b\epsilon)^2}{S} = \frac{8\epsilon^2}{\pi^2 G} \left(\frac{bl}{t} \right). \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (7)$$

For the quartz resonator, the equivalent capacity C_m is very small and is given approximately by

$$C_m = 0.0025 \left(\frac{bl}{t} \right) \mu\text{f}. \quad (8)$$

For some purposes (see below) it is more convenient to represent the C_m, L_m, R_m branch of the resonator by a capacity (positive or negative) C_m' in parallel with a pure conductance g_m . Both C_m' and g_m are thus functions of the frequency, and C_m' changes sign on passing through resonance. These two quantities are analogous to Cady's C_1'' and R_1'' .*

3. METHODS OF DETERMINING THE MOTIONAL ADMITTANCES

It is, of course, possible to find the equivalent electrical constants of the resonator by measuring directly the current through the resonator by means of a thermojunction.^{2, 6} Also, the a-c bridge connection, as shown in Fig. 3, is applicable, but it has a drawback, in that a variable non-inductive high resistance is required.

In the following the writer intends to deal with some new and simple methods of determining motional admittance.

(1) Method A. Substitution method by means of the tube voltmeter.

The circuit is shown in Fig. 4. The oscillator on the left side must be a so-called constant-frequency oscillator, unaffected by any causes such as filament-current variation or plate-voltage variation.

* Cady, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 10, 103; April, 1922.

² Cady, *Proc. I.R.E.*, 2, 83; April, 1922.

⁶ Dye, *Proc. Phys. Soc. (London)*, 38, August, 1926.

We must first measure by the beat method the slight variation of frequency near the resonant point of the resonator corresponding to a small change of the precision condenser C of the oscillation circuit.

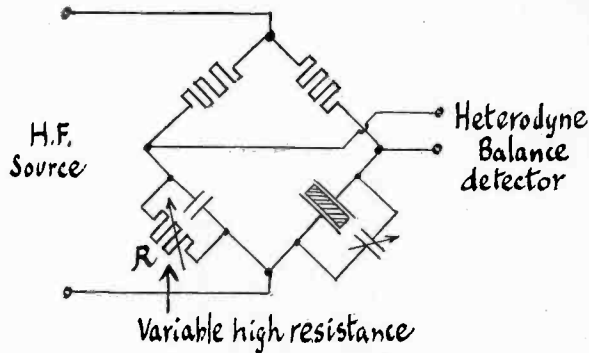


Fig. 3—High-frequency Wheatstone bridge.

Another precise tuning condenser C_2 , which is connected across the main condenser C_1 of the receiving resonance circuit, must be of such value as to measure the variation of the apparent capacity of the resonator.

In the discussion below we consider the piezo-electric resonator as replaced by the equivalent parallel capacity G_m' and conductance g_m defined above, together with the geometric capacity C_d .

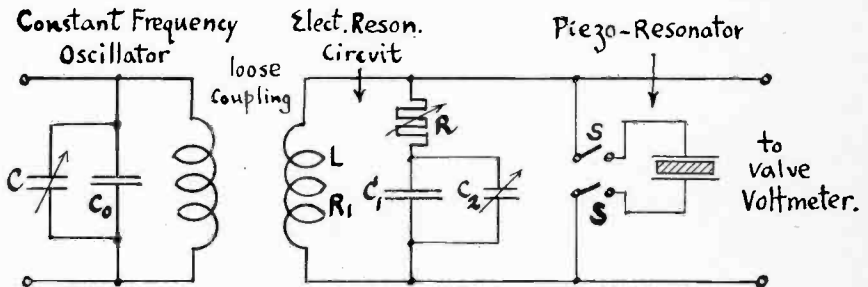


Fig. 4—Measuring circuit arrangement for method A.

The method of measurement is as follows: First, closing the switch S , that is, connecting the resonator across the electrical oscillation circuit, and adjusting the precision condenser C_2 we observe the maximum deflection of the tube voltmeter at the resonant point. Next, opening the switch, we again vary the precision condenser C_2 by the amount $\Delta C_2 = C_d + C_m'$ to obtain resonance for the new condition, and increase the variable non-reactive resistance by inserting R ohms in order to make the resonant deflection of the valve voltmeter the same

as before. Thus we can find the equivalent capacity ΔC_2 from the difference between two observed values of the precision condenser C_2 ; and also the equivalent conductance g_m of the resonator, at the frequency employed, from the increased value of the resistance R by the following equation:

$$g_m = R\omega^2(C_1 + C_2 + C_d + C'_m)^2 \doteq R\omega^2(C_1 + C_2)^2. \quad (9)$$

This equation is derived by equating the expressions for the total impedance to the right of LR , Fig. 4, with switch S closed and open respectively. The last part of the equation is an approximation, based on the assumption that C_d and C'_m are relatively small quantities.

Similarly, changing the frequency step by step, we can obtain the motional admittance circle diagram. As an approximation, we may use the following equation, for C_1 is usually much larger than C_2 :

$$g_m \doteq R\omega_0^2 C_1^2 \quad (10)$$

Consequently we can find the value of R_m and the damping constant from the diameter g_{\max} and the quadrant angular velocity respectively of the observed motional admittance circle diagram, and hence the equivalent electrical constants may be given as follows:

$$\left. \begin{aligned} R_m &= \frac{1}{g_{\max}}, \\ L_m &= \frac{R_m}{2\Delta} = \frac{R_m}{\omega_2 - \omega_1}, \\ C_m &= \frac{1}{\omega_0^2 L_m}, \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (11)$$

where Δ , the damping constant $= (\omega_2 - \omega_1)/2$.

A few remarks concerning this substitution method may be appropriate.

(a) One example of the experimental results is shown in Fig. 5, (A), (B). The latter is the experimentally obtained motional admittance circle diagram of resonator No. 2, the dimensions of which are $l = 5.72$ cm, $b = 0.78$ cm, $t = 0.20$ cm, and the natural wavelength, 6070 meters approximately.

Curve I represents the relation between the tube voltmeter deflection and the frequency, under the condition that the electrical resonance circuit is kept constant. Therefore this curve represents the absorption effect of the resonator on account of its mechanical resonance, and the writer wishes to call it the *inverted resonance curve* for

the piezo-electric resonator. Curve II corresponds to the case when the precision variable condenser C_2 is varied in order to hold the condition of electrical resonance. The motional admittance circuit diagram shown in Fig. 5 (B), is derived from the relation between R and ΔC_2 of the directly observed values in the experiments. Now, as $\omega_0 = 304,000$ and $C_1 = 2490 \mu\mu\text{f}$, two values of the diameters of this circle in the directions of the axes are $g_{\text{max}} = 14 \times 10^{-6}$ mho, and ω_0

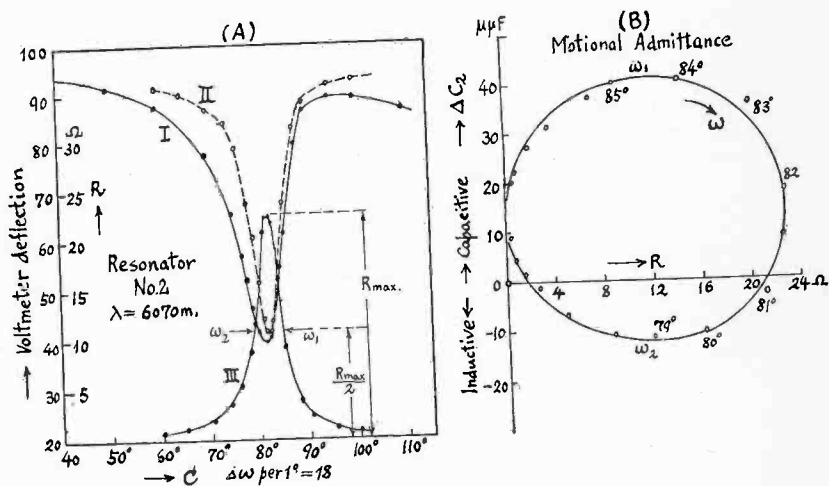


Fig. 5—Experimental result by method A.

$(\Delta C_2)_m = 15 \cdot 10^{-6}$ respectively, which shows that the observed locus is very nearly circular.

(b) While the observation of the resistance of R can be made very accurately, C_2 cannot be so precisely observed, especially when the damping at resonance is large. Therefore it appears preferable to determine the damping constant from the relation between R and ω of curve III of Fig. 5 (A), in which the ordinates are values of R , Fig. 4.

(c) As (10) shows, the smaller the condenser C_1 , the larger becomes the value of R , with the result that $R\omega_0^2 C_1^2$ is equal to g_m , but there is no appreciable change in ΔC_2 . In the following table, the maximum value of R at the resonant point is recorded for the different values of the condenser C_1 .

(d) This method is very simple and it is unnecessary to measure the electrical constants of the inductance coil L or to calibrate the tube voltmeter. In our experiments, we use as a variable resistance Campbell's constant inductance variable resistance.

But this method has two drawbacks. First, it is necessary to use a constant-reactive or non-reactive variable resistance, and secondly, the frequency of the oscillator must be kept constant, unaffected by any causes except the variation of the condenser C , Fig. 4, for the comparatively long time required for measurement. These conditions

TABLE I

$C, \mu\mu f$	2400	4200	6100
R_{\max} ohms	22	7.4	3.7
g_{\max} mho $\times 10^{-6}$	11.7	12.0	12.7

become more difficult as the frequency increases. It may take twenty minutes or more in order to observe the complete circle diagram of the motional admittance, and therefore even a slight gradual variation of the frequency of the oscillations is not permissible. In order to overcome these difficulties, the author devised the following second method.

(2) Method B. Inverted resonance curve method.

The circuitual arrangement is very simple and is shown in Fig. 6. We must first calibrate the valve voltmeter and measure the effective resistance R_1 of the inductance coil L at a frequency nearly equal to the

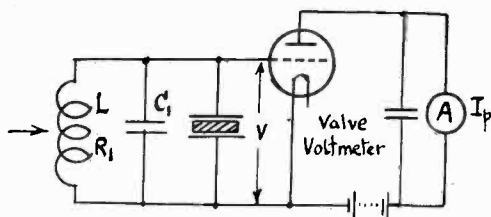


Fig. 6—Circuits for method B.

natural frequency of the resonator. In this method it is only necessary to observe as quickly as possible the inverted resonance curve of symmetrical shape as shown in Fig. 7, curve I.

Curve II is obtained by inverting curve I. Now it may be said that, within the narrow range of frequency near the natural frequency f_0 the electrical circuit of C_1 and L is approximately always in the resonance condition with the result that the terminal voltage v across the resonator is given by the following equation, which is approximately correct so long as C_1 is large:

$$v = \frac{e}{j\omega_0 C_1} \frac{1}{R_1 + \frac{Y_m}{\omega_0^2 C_1^2}} \quad (12)$$

where e is the e.m.f. impressed on the inductance coil and may be considered as a constant unaffected by the slight variation of frequency near f_0 , and R_1 is the effective resistance of the coil at the frequency f_0 . Consequently we have

$$\frac{1}{v} = \frac{j\omega_0 C_1}{e} \left\{ R_1 + \frac{1}{\omega_0^2 C_1^2} \left(\frac{1}{R_m + j \left(\omega L_m - \frac{1}{\omega C_m} \right)} \right) \right\} \quad (13)$$

This equation shows that curve II, representing the reciprocal of v , consists of a constant part of a value which we call c and a variable part which is similar exactly to a resonance curve and has a maximum value r .

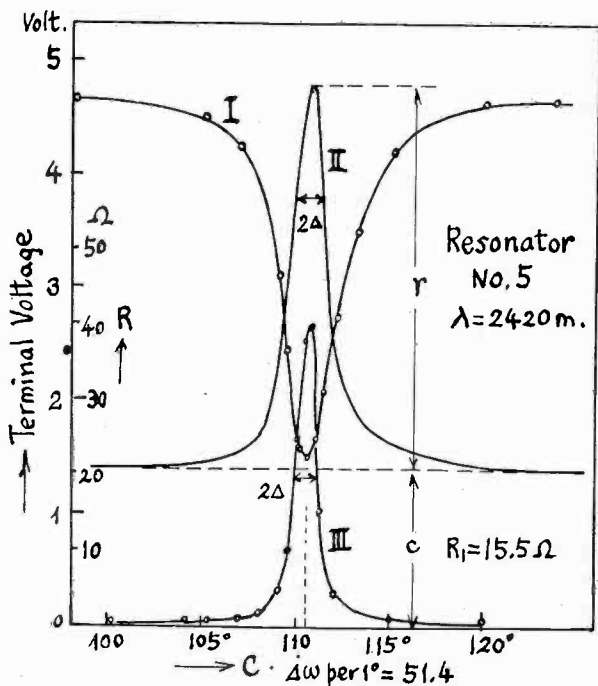


Fig. 7—Experimental result by method B.

As shown by (13), the apparent circuit resistance, which is increased as a result of the mechanical resonance of the piezo-electric resonator when close to resonance, is approximately equal to $1/R_m \omega_0^2 C_1^2$, and this value must according to Fig. 7 be equal to $R_1 r/c$, and corresponds to R_{max} in the previous method. Hence the effective resistance of the resonator is found by

$$R_m = \frac{c}{\omega_0^2 C_1^2 R_1 r} \tag{14}$$

Moreover, the damping constant Δ may be found by the ordinary method from the shape of the resonance curve, and consequently the values of L_m and C_m are found easily by (11).

In this example of Fig. 7, $R_1 = 15.5$, and $R_1 r / C = R_{max} = 36$ ohms; the value of the maximum R obtained by the previous method is 40 ohms, and the damping constants obtained by the two methods are in agreement.

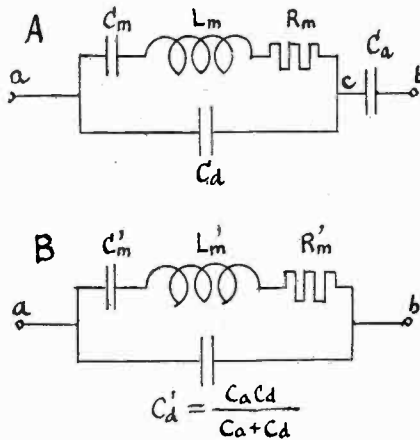


Fig. 8—Equivalent circuit of a resonator with an air-gap.

4. THE APPARENT EQUIVALENT ELECTRICAL CONSTANTS OF THE PIEZO-ELECTRIC RESONATOR WITH AN AIR-GAP

Dye⁶ has verified experimentally that the equivalent circuit of the piezo-electric resonator with an air-gap between the electrodes and the crystal may be represented simply by the circuit shown in Fig. 8(A), where C_a is the electrostatic capacity of the air-gap.

It may be more convenient to represent it by an alternative equivalent electric circuit such as shown in Fig. 8(B).

Our problem is to find the relation between the equivalent constants of the resonator with air-gap and those of the resonator without gap, that is, the effect of the air-gap upon mechanical resonance.

(A) Letting $\alpha = R_m \omega C_m$, $\theta = 1 - (\omega / \omega_0)^2$, we have as the impedance of the resonator itself

$$Z_{ac} = \frac{1}{\omega C_d} \frac{\alpha - j\theta}{\left(\frac{C_m}{C_d} + \theta\right) + j\alpha} \tag{15}$$

⁶ loc. cit.

The total impedance of the resonator in series with an air-gap becomes

$$Z_{ab} = Z_{ac} + \frac{1}{j\omega C_a} = \frac{1}{\omega C_d C_a} \frac{\alpha(C_d + C_a) - j[\theta(C_d + C_a) + C_m]}{\left(\frac{C_m}{C_d} + \theta\right) + j\alpha} \quad (16)$$

Therefore, the apparent motional admittance Y_m' is given according to Fig. 8 (B) by

$$Y_m' = \frac{1}{Z_{ab}} - j \frac{\omega C_d C_a}{C_d + C_a} = \frac{\omega C_m C_a^2}{(C_d + C_a)^2 \left[\alpha - j \left(\theta + \frac{C_m}{C_d + C_a} \right) \right]} \quad (17)$$

Consequently, the resonance point is given by the value of θ for maximum admittance Y_m'

$$\theta = 1 - \left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_0} \right)^2 = - \frac{C_m}{C_d + C_a},$$

or

$$\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 \left(1 + \frac{C_m}{C_d + C_a} \right), \quad \text{or } \omega = \omega_0 \left[1 + \frac{C_m}{2(C_d + C_a)} \right]. \quad (18)$$

We may rewrite Y_m' in the following form

$$Y_m' = \frac{1}{Z_m'} = \frac{1}{R_m' + j \left(\omega L_m' - \frac{1}{\omega C_m'} \right)}. \quad (19)$$

Then

$$R_m' = \frac{\alpha(C_d + C_a)^2}{\omega C_m C_a^2} = R_m \left(1 + \frac{C_d}{C_a} \right)^2 = R_m \left(1 + \frac{kl'}{t} \right)^2. \quad (20)$$

where l' = air-gap length, t = thickness of resonator.

Rewriting (17)

$$\begin{aligned} \omega L_m' - \frac{1}{\omega C_m'} &= -\theta \frac{(C_d + C_a)^2}{\omega C_m C_a^2} - \frac{C_d + C_a}{\omega C_a^2} \\ &= \omega \frac{(C_d + C_a)^2}{\omega^2 C_m C_a^2} - \frac{1}{\omega} \left[\frac{C_d + C_a}{C_a^2} + \frac{(C_d + C_a)^2}{C_m C_a^2} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (21)$$

Consequently we get the following results

$$L_m' = \frac{1}{\omega_0^2 C_m} \left(1 + \frac{C_d}{C_a}\right)^2 = L_m \left(1 + \frac{C_d}{C_a}\right)^2 = L_m \left(1 + \frac{kl'}{t}\right)^2 \quad (22)$$

$$C_m' = \frac{C_a^2}{(C_d + C_a) \left(1 + \frac{C_d + C_a}{C_m}\right)} = C_m \frac{C_a^2}{(C_d + C_a)(C_d + C_a + C_m)} \quad (23)$$

$$\Delta' = \frac{R_m'}{2L_m'} = \frac{R_m}{2L_m} = \Delta. \quad (24)$$

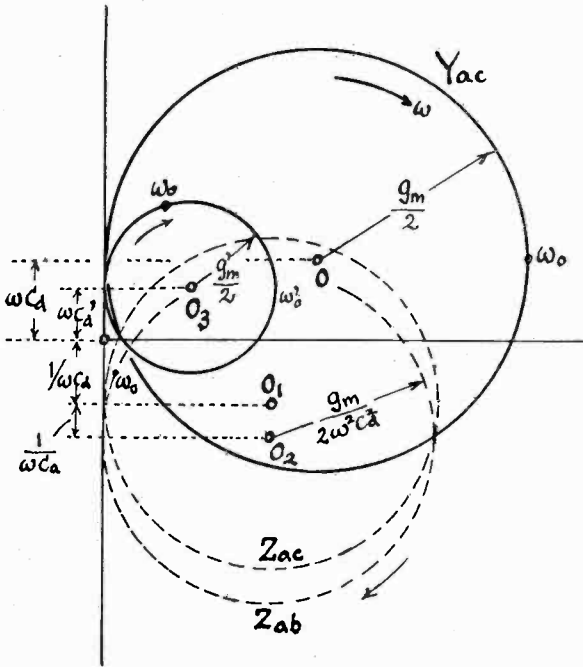


Fig. 9—Graphical method of obtaining a circle diagram of a motional admittance.*

* The circle O_1 is the locus of vectors which are the reciprocals of the vectors of circle O , that is O_1 is the circle diagram of the impedance $Z_{ac} = 1/Y_{ac}$. Circle O_2 has vectors $Z_{ac} - j/\omega C_a = Z_{ab}$, that is, it is the diagram for the entire network Fig. 8(A) or 8(B). The reciprocal of these vectors, $Y_{ab} = 1/Z_{ab}$, has as its locus the circle O_3 . The radius of the circle O is $g_m/2$; that of circles O_1 and O_2 is $g_m/2(\omega C_d)^2$; that of circle O_3 is

$$\frac{1}{2}g_m' = \frac{1}{2} \frac{g_m/(\omega C_d)^2}{\omega^2 \left(\frac{1}{C_d} + \frac{1}{C_a}\right)^2} = \frac{1}{2}g_m \left(\frac{C_a}{C_a + C_d}\right)^2.$$

As (18) and (20) show, the natural frequency of the resonator increases and the motional admittance circle diagram diminishes as the air-gap increases, and the maximum change in frequency, when $C_a = 0$, is given by

$$\Delta\omega_0 = \omega_0 \frac{C_m}{2C_d} \quad (25)$$

(B) The result of (20), which shows a reduction of the motional admittance circle diagram with an air-gap, may be otherwise and graphically obtained.

It is easy by simple geometrical calculations to find that in Fig. 9* the diameter of the circle diagram O_1 of the impedance Z_{ac} is equal to $g_m/\omega_0^2 C_d^2$, and then the required diameter of the apparent motional admittance is given by

$$g_m' = \frac{1}{R_m} = g_m \cdot \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{C_d}{C_a}\right)^2} = \frac{1}{R_m} \cdot \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{kl'}{t}\right)^2} \quad (25a)$$

From the graphical representation in Fig. 9, we note that the natural frequency is increased on account of an air-gap.

(C) The above relation can also be seen from another point of view.

The intensity of electric field inside the crystal due to the *P.D.* applied between the electrodes is equal to $X_e = V/(kl' + t)$, and the vibrating force is given by $F = 2betX_e$, and consequently the polarization caused by this force is $(2x/l)\epsilon$, where it is evident from (2) that $j\omega x = F/z_m$.

The e.m.f. induced within the crystal is clearly equal to $(2x/l)\epsilon$ (bl/C_d), and the current forced by this e.m.f. through the series circuit of C_d , C_a and the external impedance, which, owing to the relatively large value of C_1 can be assumed to be negligibly small compared with the capacitive impedance of C_d and C_a , can be given as follows

$$i = j\omega \left(\frac{C_d C_a}{C_a + C_d} \right) \frac{2x\epsilon b}{C_d} \quad (26)$$

On substituting the values of x , X_e , and F (see (1) and (20)) in this equation, we get

$$i = \frac{(2b\epsilon)^2}{z_m} \frac{V}{\left(1 + \frac{C_d}{C_a}\right)^2} = Y_m \frac{V}{\left(1 + \frac{C_d}{C_a}\right)^2} \quad (27)$$

* See footnote on page 707.

From the results of an experiment as depicted in Figs. 10 and 11, the writer has derived the motional admittance circle diagrams showing dependence upon the air-gap length.

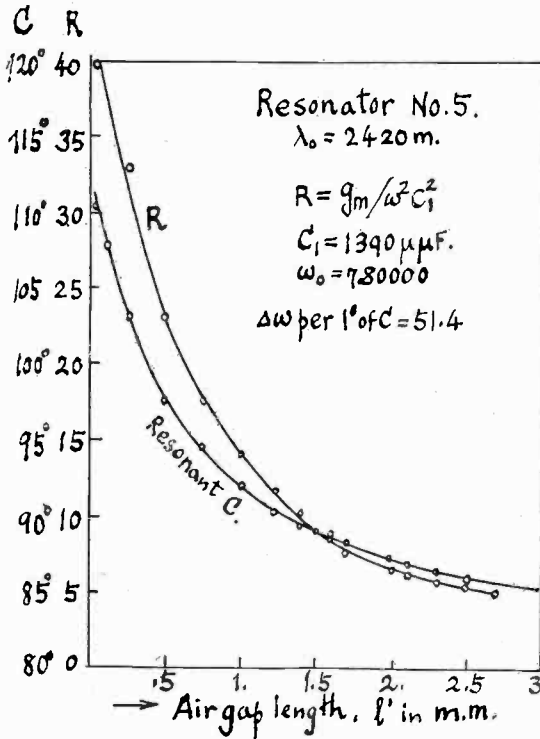


Fig. 10—Effect of air-gap upon natural resonant frequency and damping of a resonator.

Fig. 10 shows the relation between the air-gap length and the value of R_{max} , which is proportional to the diameter of the circle, and the variation of the resonant frequency, which is represented in terms of settings of the precision condenser C of the oscillator. Fig. 11 shows some of the motional admittances g_m' , from which we can find the

TABLE II

l' mm	R'_{max} ohms	g_m' mho 10^{-4}	R_m' ohms	Δ'	L_m' Henry	C_m' μf	C_a' μf	g'_m ωC_a
0.05	41	0.50	20,000	26	390	0.0042	34.8	1.85
0.50	24	0.29	34,500	18	950	0.0017	3.48	10.4
1.0	15.5	0.19	53,000	15	1,770	0.00093	1.74	14.1
1.5	11.5	0.14	72,000	13	2,770	0.00057	1.16	12.8
2.0	10	0.12	82,500	13	3,800	0.00051	0.87	17.6
3.0	6	0.073	138,000	13	5,300	0.00031	0.58	16.2

values of R_m' and Δ' , and then L_m' and C_m' . The apparent equivalent constants thus derived are shown in Fig. 12 and Table II.

While the mathematically obtained results show that the damping constant Δ' is independent of the air-gap, the experimental result shows an increase in Δ' as the air-gap length decreases. The writer believes that it may be due to the existence of damping caused by the vibration of the very thin air film. From the experiment we know that $C_m = 0.005 \mu\text{mf}$, and $C_a = (kbl/4\pi t)\text{cm} = 1.64 \mu\text{mf}$. Hence by (25), the

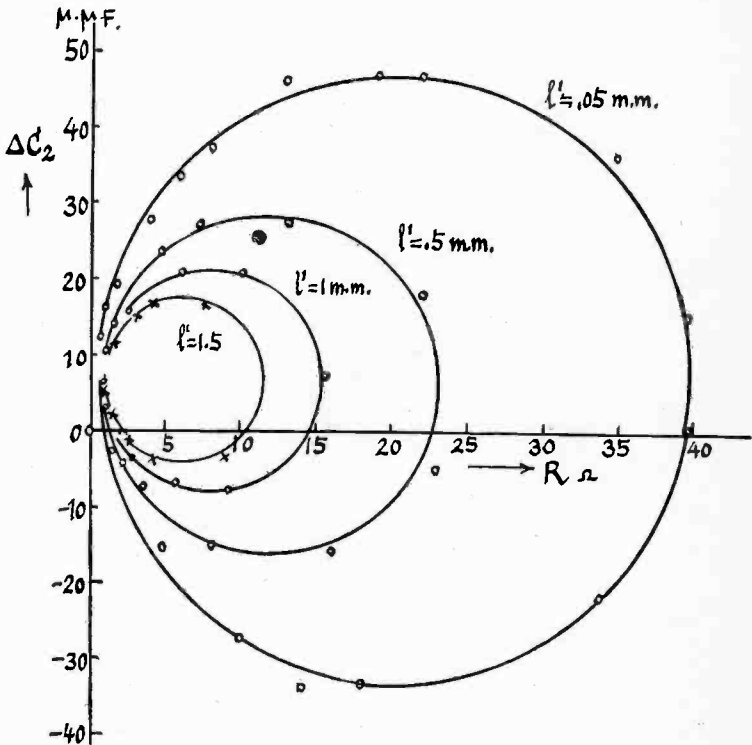


Fig. 11—Circle diagrams for various values of air-gap.

maximum variation of the resonant angular velocity is $\Delta\omega_0/\omega_0 = .005/3.28 = 0.0015$ and this value is in good agreement with the experimental result of the value $[(110 - 85) 51.4]/780,000 = 0.0016$.

Although the above-mentioned experimental results represent an example of a simple mode of vibration, we have often experienced the fact that the piezo-electric resonator resonates in a complicated mode of vibration.

The result shown in Fig. 13(A), (B), represents a case where two resonant frequencies are very close together.

5. RELATION BETWEEN MOTIONAL ADMITTANCE AND SIZE OF ELECTRODE

It is easy to imagine that the greater the size of the electrodes, the larger is the motional admittance of a resonator. Fig. 14 shows the relation between the inverse resonance curves and length of the electrodes, which is varied as shown in this figure.

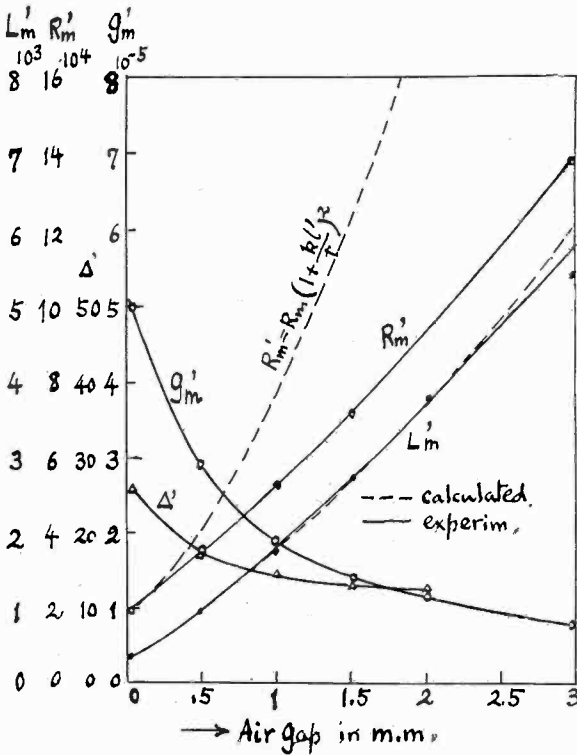


Fig. 12—Relation between the electrical constants and air-gap length.

Fig. 15, obtained with resonator No. 4, represents the dependence of the value of g_m , that is, the diameter of the motional admittance circle diagram, on the value of l_0^2 . According to these results, we may say that both the resonant frequency and the effective resistance R_m of a resonator increase as the size of the electrode decreases.

6. CHANGING THE MODE OF RESONATOR VIBRATION BY MEANS OF TWO PAIRS OF ELECTRODES

We can easily understand the fact that when two pairs of electrodes ($ab, a'b'$) are connected diagonally by throwing the switch to

the *A* side in Fig. 16, then the resonator resonates at a frequency which is approximately twice that corresponding to *B*, which corresponds to the normal connection of two pairs of electrodes. In other

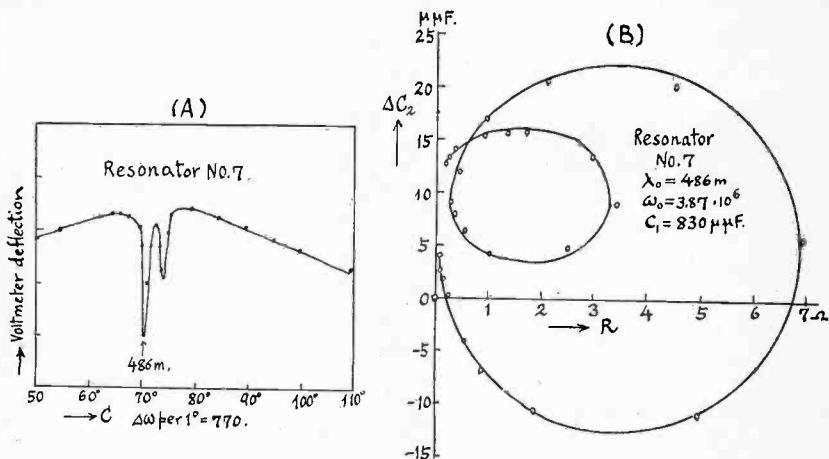


Fig. 13—One example of a somewhat complicated motional admittance of a resonator.

words, in case *A*, the length of the resonator corresponds to the whole fundamental wavelength.

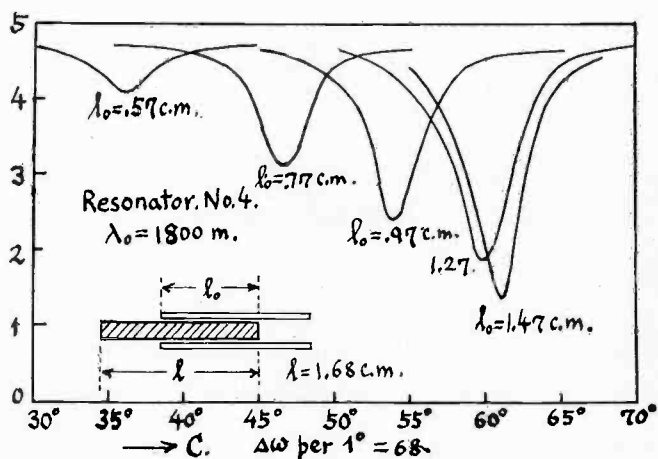


Fig. 14—Relation between inverse resonance curves and length of electrodes.

Suppose now that a piezo-electric resonator is cut out from a twinned crystal of quartz, as shown in Fig. 17. Then we can easily see that this resonator has a frequency approximately twice as high

as the natural frequency of a resonator of the same size cut from normal quartz.

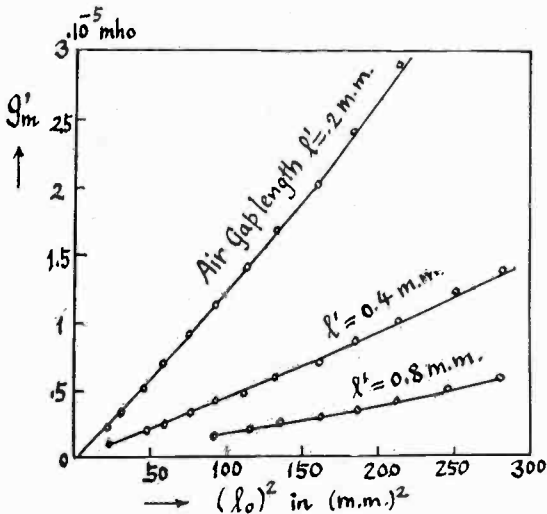


Fig. 15—Relation between g'_m and l_0^2 .

Resonator No. 3 ($l=4.0$ cm, $b=1.05$ cm, $t=0.4$ cm) is such, that it has a resonant wavelength of 2160 m (not about 4400 m).

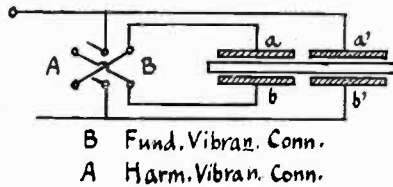


Fig. 16—Connections for two pairs of electrodes.

Such an abnormal characteristic can easily be studied by the following experiment. Placing this resonator between the two diag-

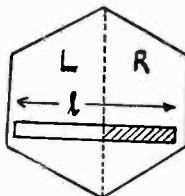


Fig. 17—Twinned crystal.

onally connected pairs of electrodes of dimensions shown in Fig. 18, and changing its relative position, we measure the effect due to resonance of the resonator at two different frequencies, 2,160 m and

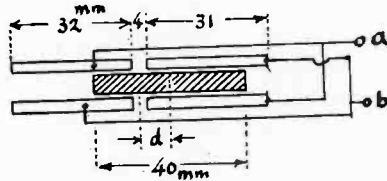


Fig. 18—Connection of electrodes to test a resonator cut from a twinned crystal.

4,300 m impressed on the resonator. Fig. 19 represents the experimental result, from which we infer that this resonator is cut from a twinned quartz crystal and moreover that the boundary of the twinning is situated at a point for which $d = -4$ mm, approximately.

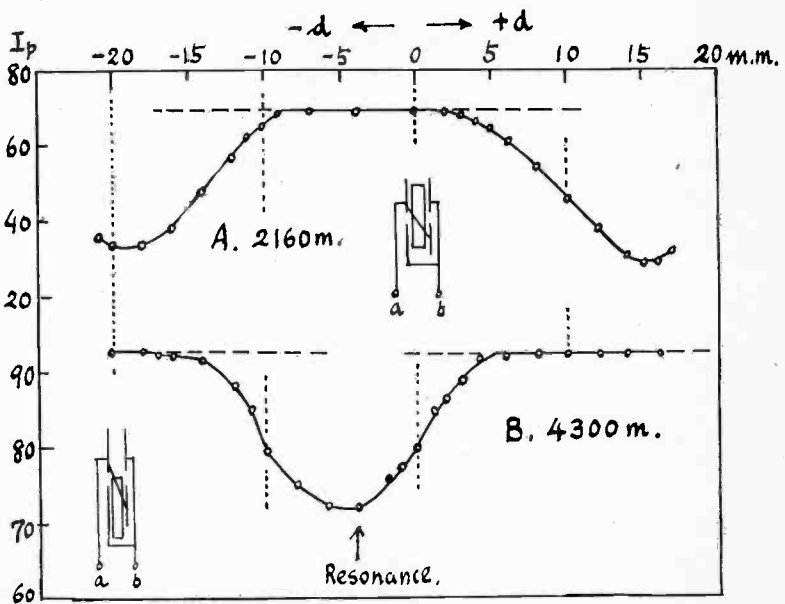


Fig. 19—Curves showing the resonance of a resonator of twinned crystal.

7. MOTIONAL ADMITTANCE UNDER A HIGH IMPRESSED VOLTAGE

The coupling between the oscillator coil and the receiving coil in Fig. 3 must be very loose, otherwise the resonance of the resonator can have an appreciable effect not only on the frequency, but also on the intensity of the oscillation. Therefore it is necessary to employ an

amplifier between an oscillator and a resonator, when a high voltage is to be impressed on the resonator.

Fig. 20 shows one type of measuring circuit, where a portion of the terminal voltage V across the resonator is measured by means of a tube voltmeter. By a procedure similar to that employed in the second

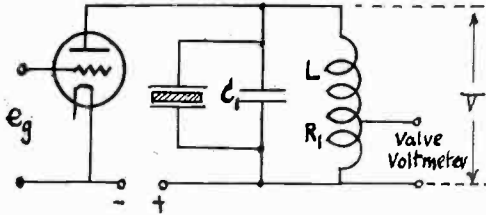


Fig. 20—Circuit to test a resonator under high voltage.

method of determining a motional admittance circle diagram, the reciprocal of the terminal voltage V as a function of the frequency is expressed by the following equations

$$\frac{1}{V} = \frac{1 + \frac{R_i}{Z_p}}{k e_o} = \frac{1 + R_i \left[\frac{1}{R_e} + Y_m \right]}{k e_o} \tag{28}$$

$$= \frac{1 + \frac{R_i}{R_e}}{k e_o} + \frac{R_i}{k e_o} \cdot \frac{1}{R_m + j \left(\omega L_m - \frac{1}{\omega C_m} \right)}$$

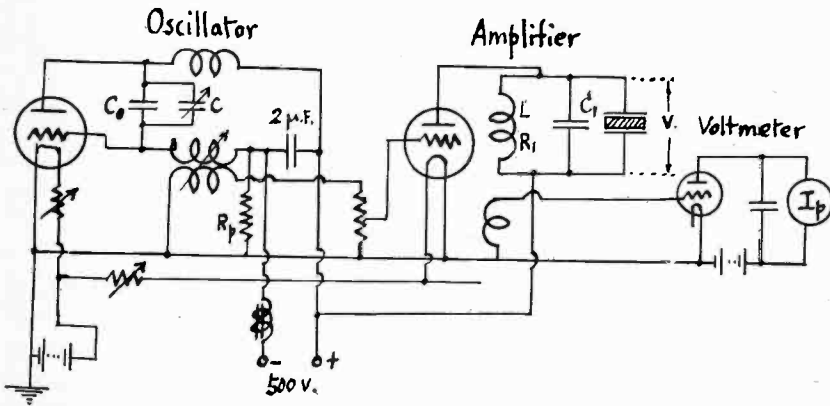


Fig. 21—Complete circuit arrangement of Fig. 20.

where $R_e = L/C_1 R_1$ is the effective resistance of the oscillation circuit at resonance. From the calculated values of the latter term of this

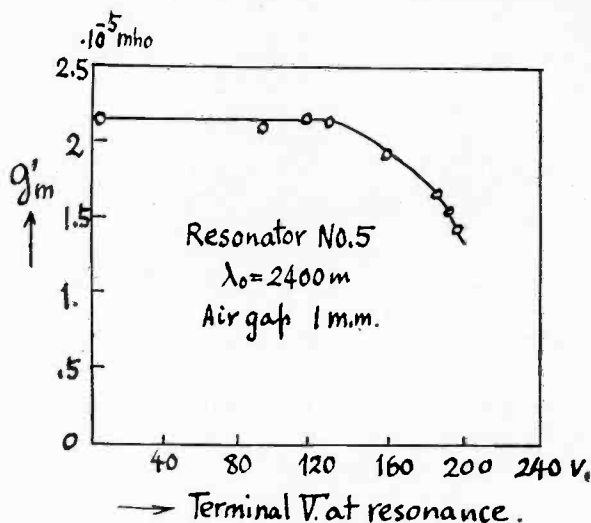


Fig. 22—Increase in damping due to high voltage.

equation for a number of frequencies near resonance we determine the equivalent constants of the resonator.

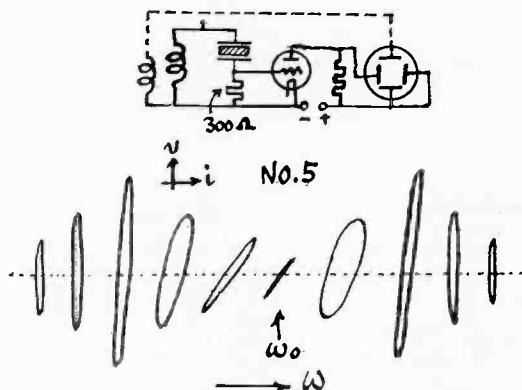


Fig. 23—Test of a resonator by cathode-ray oscillograph.

Fig. 21 shows the circuit arrangement, and Fig. 22 shows one of the experimental results, which represents the relation between the effective conductance $g'_m = 1/R_m$ and the terminal voltage across the electrodes at resonance. This experiment was performed with resonator No. 5 ($l = 2.23 \text{ cm}$, $b = 0.87 \text{ cm}$, $t = 0.4 \text{ cm}$) with an air-gap of 0.1 cm.

When the impressed voltage is increased to more than about 100 volts, a brush discharge takes place near the middle of the resonator, and the effective conductance begins to decrease.

Here it must be noted that the potential difference across the air gap can be very much higher than the impressed e.m.f., and we can approximately represent this ratio as follows

$$\frac{V_a}{V} = \frac{g_m'}{\omega C_a} \quad (29)$$

As g_m' is related according to (25a) with C_a , this ratio has the maximum value of $g_m/4\omega C_a$ under the condition that $C_a = C_d$.

The last column of Table II, shows the dependence of this ratio upon the length of air-gap.

The author has also obtained the dynamic characteristics of a resonator by means of a cathode-ray oscillograph. Fig. 23 shows the circuit arrangement and an example of the experimental results.

(To be continued in the May issue of the PROCEEDINGS)



SOME EXPERIMENTS ON NIGHT ERRORS FOR LONG WAVES*

By

ISAO TANIMURA

(Electrotechnical Laboratory, Ministry of Communications, Tokio, Japan)

Summary—This paper describes the results of experiments on night errors observed for a 19.7-kc station located at a distance of 148 km, and compares them with the results of theoretical analysis. Cyclic variations of bearings, mostly two, are noticed at sunset and the same at sunrise in inverse way, the maximum shifts being about 30 deg. At the moments when the maximum shifts occur, the bearings are distinctly observed, while they are broad at others. From observations using a horizontal loop and a unidirectional antenna, polarization angles and intensities of space waves are found after Eckersley's process, assuming or empirically determining phase differences between surface and space waves, incident angles of space waves, and intensities of reflected waves on the ground. It is pointed out that the observed and theoretical values of bearings and their broadnesses are in good agreement.

IT HAS already been known that the so-called night errors can be distinctly observed by the directional reception on long waves at a distance of 150 to 700 km, and its theoretical explanation has been given by Eckersley¹ that the phenomenon is due to the polarization of space waves. It is the object of the present paper to describe some similar experiments carried out in Japan on night errors for long waves, and to compare their results with the theoretical ones.

When the transpacific station JAA (wave frequency = 19.7 kc; wavelength = 15,250 m; great circle distance = 148 km; bearing = 13 deg. east from the true north), is observed at an experimental station at Isohama near Tokio, the following shifts of the apparent bearing are noticed in general.

The bearing begins to shift towards east at three or four hours before sunset, and the shift gradually increases to a maximum when the direction of shift is reversed. The apparent bearing passes across the true bearing to a maximum towards west, and the shift is then reversed, thereby increasing until the true bearing is again observed. Another cyclic variation of this nature is generally followed without interruption, and then nighttime takes place. During night, an irregular variation continues till sunrise, when a regular shift begins to occur; and then simi-

* Dewey decimal classification: R113.3. The paper in full will be published shortly in Japanese in "The Researches of the Laboratory."

¹ Eckersley, T. L., "The effect of the Heaviside layer on the apparent direction of electromagnetic waves," *Radio Review*, II, 231; May, 1921.

lar cyclic variations as at sunset are repeated nearly in inverse way; that is, at the beginning the bearing shifts towards west and then east, until the true bearing is observed at three or four hours after sunrise. In the remaining daylight hours, no appreciable variation can be observed, the bearing being in fair coincidence with the true bearing, while the night errors sometimes reach nearly 30 deg., plus (towards east) or minus (towards west) at maxima. The results of similar observations at sunrise and sunset times have been published by Austin.² Similar observations have been made for some other stations of different distances and directions, but among them the station JAA gave the greatest shift for bearing.

On observations of night errors with a frame aerial which rotates about a vertical axis, the zero point of the e.m.f. induced is sometimes found distinctly, but at other times not so distinctly. In the latter case, the direction is determined by rotating the aerial through a few degrees on either side of the probable minimum point. The angle of rotation may be a measure of broadness of the minimum point. The repeated observations on the station JAA have revealed the fact that the distinct zero point was mostly found when the shift in the bearing was at plus or minus maxima. The above-mentioned shift of bearing and its broadness are, for example, as shown in Fig. 1 where curve *AA* is for bearing and curve *BB* for its broadness.

A series of experiments was conducted by the author in order to interpret theoretically the shift of bearing and its broadness. The intensity of vertical components of magnetic forces of space waves radiated from the station JAA was measured by means of a suitable horizontal loop. The results of the measurements are shown by curve *CC* in Fig. 1. The intensity was measured by a substitution method using a local oscillator and expressed by the e.m.f. induced in the loop, which is the product of the current I in milliamperes in the primary of the coupling coil and its mutual inductance M in microhenries.

As seen in Fig. 1, curve *CC*, a certain value of e.m.f. was apparently induced in the horizontal loop even in the daytime when there is little evidence of space waves. This seems to be due to the antenna effect of the loop circuit. It was, however, doubtful as to whether the variation of the e.m.f. induced in the horizontal loop, as seen in the figure, resulted from the polarization of space waves, or whether it resulted from change in the intensity of surface waves owing to the antenna effect. This question was solved by experiments using a vertical antenna and by comparing the result with that of the horizontal loop. It was ascer-

² Austin, L. W., "A suggestion for experiments on apparent radio direction variations," *Proc. I.R.E.*, 13, 3; February, 1925.

tained that the variation seemed to be due to the former. In the figure, it is also seen that the e.m.f. induced in the horizontal loop varies almost directly as the bearing during the time from sunset to sunrise, and also varies above and below the daytime values. Judging from these results of experiments, the surface and space waves behaved *additively* when the values of the e.m.f. induced in the horizontal loop were above the daytime values, whereas both waves behaved *subtractively* when they were below. It is also shown theoretically that surface and space waves are to be in phase or in opposite phase at the moment when the minimum point of bearing is distinctly observed. It may, therefore, be con-

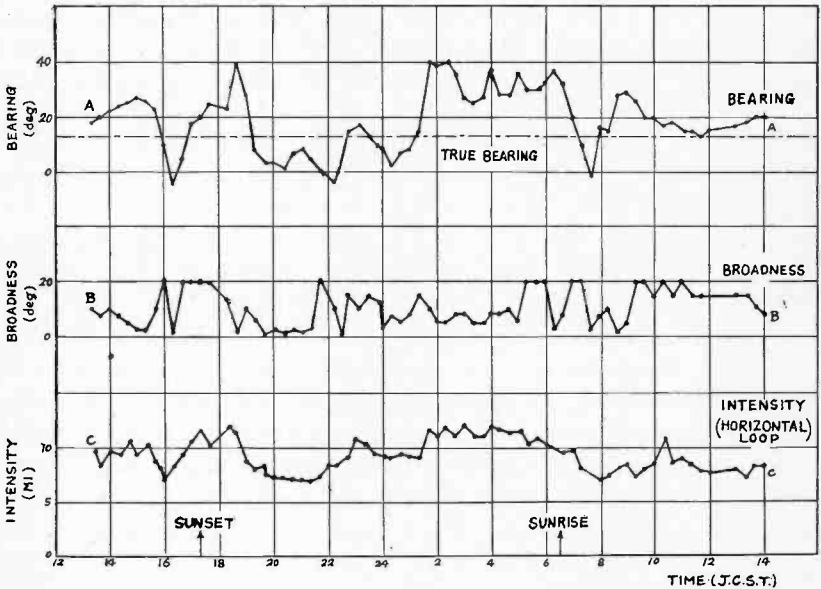


Fig. 1—Observed bearings and their broadness and measured field intensities with a horizontal loop for station JAA on February 12 to 13, 1929.

cluded in the case of sunset in the present experiments that both waves were in phase when the values of shift reached the positive maxima where the bearings were distinctly observed, whereas they were in opposite phase when the values of shift reached the negative maxima where the bearings were also distinctly observed.

By the experiments above-mentioned, the relative values of the vertical components of magnetic forces due to space waves are found by means of a horizontal loop, and the intensities of surface waves by a frame aerial with a vertical axis. Therefore, in accordance with the theory established by Eckersley, the polarization angles and the inten-

sities of space waves can be graphically determined by assuming that, in the present case, both surface and space waves will propagate in the vertical plane including the sender and the receiver, and space waves will be plane-polarized. In this graphical solution, certain conceptions are, however, necessary as to the phase difference between surface and space waves, the incident angles of space waves, and the reflection of space waves on the ground.

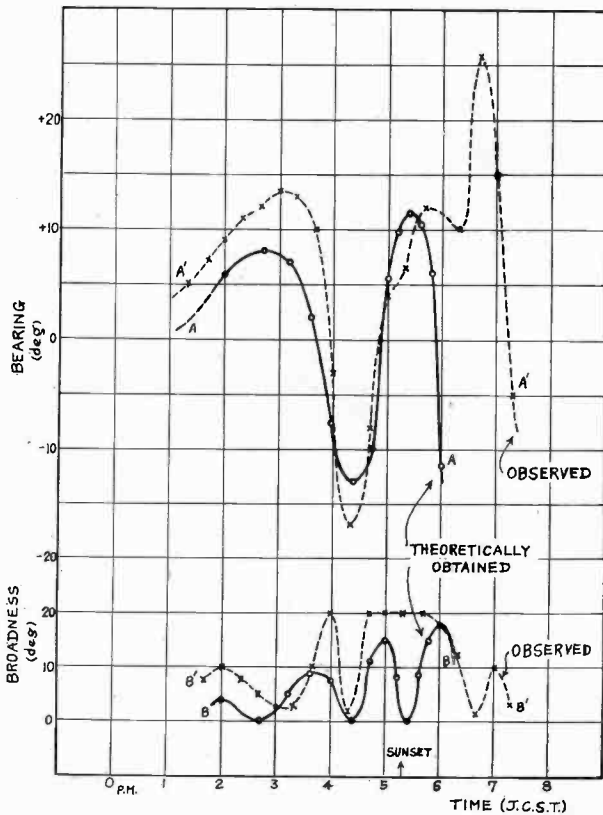


Fig. 2—Comparisons of bearings and their broadness theoretically obtained and observed for station JAA at sunset on February 12, 1929.

The phase difference between surface and space waves could be judged from the distinctness of the minimum point in the direction measurement. At the moment when the zero point can be distinctly found by a frame aerial, both waves are in phase or in opposite phase as described above. The incident angles of space waves were determined by assuming the height of the Kennelly-Heaviside layer, and it was confirmed by the experiments using a unidirectional antenna composed

of a frame aerial and a vertical antenna that the assumption was fairly correct. The amount of the reflection of space waves on the ground could be made known by assuming the conductivity of the ground and by applying Fresnel's reflection equation in optics.

From the results of measurements for station JAA, the shift of bearing and the broadness of the minimum point were theoretically determined by the above-mentioned process, and those at the time of sunset were plotted in Fig. 2. In the figure, the full-line curve AA shows the shift of bearing theoretically obtained, and the broken-line curve $A'A'$ shows that observed, while the full-line curve BB shows the variation of the broadness of the minimum point theoretically obtained, and the broken-line curve $B'B'$ shows that observed. It is noticeable that the theoretical and the observed values are in fair coincidence, though not quite exactly on account of the several assumptions made.

Acknowledgments are due to E. Yokoyama under whose direction the present investigation was carried out, to E. Takagishi and T. Nakai who gave the author some valuable advice in drafting the present paper, and also to C. Asakawa, K. Kamiya, and K. Nakanishi, who all rendered the author great assistance in carrying out these experiments.



BOOKLETS, CATALOGS, AND PAMPHLETS RECEIVED

The Roller-Smith Co., 233 Broadway, New York City, has recently issued two new bulletins. Bulletin No. 300 covers various types of instruments for making resistance measurements, and No. 210 treats portable direct-current ammeters, milliammeters, voltmeters, millivoltmeters, volt-ammeters, galvanometers, circuit testers, shunts, multipliers, etc.

Ferranti, Inc., of 130 West 42nd Street, New York City, issues a booklet describing audio amplifiers, transformers and radio instruments. It may be obtained at fifteen cents a copy.

"Visitron" is the name of a photoelectric cell available from the G-M Laboratories, Inc. of Grace and Ravenswood Avenues, Chicago, Ill. Their Bulletin PE-14 describes the application, theory, and characteristics of these cells.

A price list covering a number of new transmitting type audions has recently become available from the DeForest Radio Company located at Central Avenue and Franklin Street, Jersey City, N. J. Brief descriptions of the various new audions are given in the list which comprises triodes rated from 15 watts to 5,000 watts (water-cooled), tetrodes of 7.5 to 500 watts, and two mercury-vapor half-wave rectifier tubes rated at 5,000 volts maximum peak inverse voltage and maximum peak plate currents of 0.6 and 2.5 amperes. More detailed information is available on the following tubes:

- 510. Triode, Oscillator and Amplifier. Output as Oscillator—15 watts.
- 511. Triode, Audio- and Radio-Frequency Amplifier. Undistorted Audio Output—10 watts.
- 503-A. Triode. R. F. Oscillator and Audio Amplifier. Output as R-F Oscillator—50 watts.
- 545. Linear Power Amplifier and Modulator. Undistorted Output as Audio Amplifier—20 watts.
- 500. Radio-Frequency Oscillator. Output—250 watts.

The characteristics of the new CeCo pentode for a-c operation are given in some data sheets recently made available by that organization which may be addressed at 1200 Eddy Street, Providence, R. I. Data on adopting the pentode to receivers now using tetrodes is also ready for distribution. In addition, a chart giving the average characteristics of the various types of tubes manufactured by CeCo will be forwarded upon request.

The three most recent additions to the many technical bulletins issued by the RCA Radiotron Co. of Harrison, N. J., describe the UX-171-A, power amplifier; the UX-222, tetrode r-f amplifier; and the UX-226 a-c operated amplifier tubes. These technical bulletins describing radiotrons were previously obtainable from Radio-Victor Company of America.

The Weston Electrical Instrument Corporation of Newark, N. J., will be glad to forward upon request copies of their literature describing various test equipment and meters suitable for radio measurements. Material on the following instruments is available:

- Model 526 Direct Reading Radio Tube Tester.
- Model 547 Radio Set Tester.
- Model 533 Counter Tube Checker.
- Portable a-c, d-c, and r-f meters.

Several diagrams showing circuit arrangements for various test setups and methods of increasing the use of meters may also be had for the asking.

MONTHLY LIST OF REFERENCES TO CURRENT RADIO LITERATURE

THIS IS a monthly list of references prepared by the Bureau of Standards and is intended to cover the more important papers of interest to professional radio engineers which have recently appeared in periodicals, books, etc. The number at the left of each reference classifies the reference by subject, in accordance with the scheme presented in "A Decimal Classification of Radio Subjects—An Extension of the Dewey System," Bureau of Standards Circular No. 138, a copy of which may be obtained for 10 cents from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C. The various articles listed below are not obtainable from the Government. The various periodicals can be secured from their publishers and can be consulted at large public libraries.

R100. RADIO PRINCIPLES

- R113 Wenstrom, W. H. More light on short-wave transmission. *Radio News*, 11, pp. 696-700; Feb., 1930.
(Non-mathematical explanation of long distance radio transmission theory.)
- R113.4 Hulburt, E. O. Ionization in the upper atmosphere: Variation with longitude. *Phys. Rev.*, 35, pp. 240-247; Feb. 1, 1930.
(Theoretical calculations of the changes in the ionization of the upper atmosphere with longitude are given. An expression is derived giving the maximum density of electrons for the daylight hours as a function of the latitude and longitude measured from noon equinox at the equator. The value of the density obtained from the expression is shown to yield values of skip distances of short wireless waves roughly in accord with day observations (continuation of paper in *Phys. Rev.*, p. 1167; (1929).)
- R113.6 Della Riccia, A. Reflecteur pour ondes hertziennes polarizees tres courtes. (Reflector for short polarized Hertzian waves.) *Revue Generale de l'Electricite*, 14, pp. 87-90; Jan., 1930.
(The reflecting properties of surfaces are theoretically studied. The cases where the directrix of the surface is an hyperbola or a parabola are reviewed and the case where the directrix is an ellipse is treated in detail. Formulas are established for use in the design of the reflector that the rays emitted by the various paths (direct and reflected) may be in phase.)
- R113.7 Reyner, J. H. Some measurements in Cornwall of the signal strength from 5XX. *Jour. I.E.E.* (London), 68, pp. 181-184; January, 1930.
(The results of an investigation carried out with the aid of portable equipment into the field strength in Cornwall of 5XX are given. Equisignal contours show what appears to be a radio shadow caused by the towers of a beam station at Bodmin. The general order of field strength is in accord with theory up to 300 km if due allowance is made for attenuation according to Sommerfeld's formula.)
- R130 Moyer, J. A. and Wostrel, J. F. Radio receiving tubes (book). Obtainable from Radio World, New York, N. Y. \$2.50 per copy.
(Principles and applications of vacuum tubes.)
- R131 Pidgeon, H. A. and McNally, J. O. A study of the output power obtained from vacuum tubes of different types. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 266-93; Feb., 1930.
(The problems in the design of repeater tubes to operate on the common supply voltages of the Bell system and to give the maximum output power of a given quality are dealt with. The electrical characteristics and output of fundamental second and third harmonics of two of the more common telephone repeater tubes are given. The results of an experimental investigation to determine whether greater power output of comparable quality could be obtained from multi-grid tubes are presented. The reasons for the comparatively large output of certain types of such tubes are discussed.)

- R133 Möller, H. G. Zur Theorie der Barkhausenschwingungen. (On the theory of Barkhausen oscillations.) *Zeits. für Hochfreq.*, 34, pp. 201-207; Dec., 1929.
(A mathematical and graphical explanation of oscillations produced by a vacuum tube with positive grid and zero or negative plate voltage.)
- R133 Freimann, L. S. Die angenäherte Theorie des magnetostruktiven Generators. (The theory of the magnetostriction oscillation generator.) *Zeits. für Hochfreq.*, 34, pp. 219-223; Dec., 1929.
(Dynamic equations for a magnetostrictive rod and the equivalent electrical system.)
- R133 Watanabe, Y. Some remarks on the multivibrator. *PROC. I. R. E.* 18, pp. 327-335; Feb., 1930.
(The action of the multivibrator is described and methods are given for obtaining the characteristic curves of the same. A formula is deduced for the period of oscillation.)
- R138 Reynolds, N. B. Schottky effect and contact potential measurements on thoriated tungsten filaments. *Phys. Rev.*, 35, pp. 158-171; Jan. 15, 1930.
(Schottky's relation that $\log i_a(V)^{1/2}$ is verified at high fields but fails at gradients below 1000 volts per cm. This lack of saturation at low fields is accentuated by the effect of bombardment with high velocity positive ions—apparently a surface roughening and a consequent increase of field in local areas. Contact potential and the work function at the absolute zero of temperature for the thoriated surface are compared on the basis of an investigation with low accelerating and retarding voltages while varying the temperature and state of activation of the filament.)
- R145 Barclay, W. A. Applications of the method of alignment to reactance computations and simple filter theory—Part 1. *Experimental Wireless & W. Engr.* (London), 7, pp. 59-65; Feb., 1930.
(Five alignment diagrams are reproduced whereby laborious computations may be saved in determining the calculated value of the reactance of a single capacity or inductance or of a series or parallel combination of capacity and inductance at radio and at audio frequencies. A method of extending the diagrams to cover values beyond the given range is described and illustrated.)
- R170 Llewellyn, F. B. A study of noise in vacuum tubes and attached circuits. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 243-265; Feb., 1930.
(The noises originating in vacuum tubes and the attached circuits are investigated theoretically and experimentally under three headings; (1) shot effect with space charge; (2) thermal agitation of electricity in conductors; (3) noise from ions and secondary electrons produced within the tube.)
- R200. RADIO MEASUREMENTS AND STANDARDIZATION
- R201.7 Hudec, E. Zeitproportionale, synchron laufende Zeitablenkung für die Braun'sche Röhre. (Synchronous time proportional voltages for calibrating the oscillograms obtained from Braun cathode-ray tubes.) *Zeits. für Hochfreq.*, 34, pp. 207-219; Dec., 1929.
(Electrostatic and magnetic methods of producing such voltages for laboratory use.)
- R214 Lissützen, A. Die Schwingungen der Quarzlamelle. (The oscillations of quartz plates.) *Zeits. für Physik*, 59, pp. 265-273; Jan. 2, 1930.
(Oscillations of the rectangular quartz plate simultaneously in two directions were investigated. Mathematical.)
- R214 Hitchcock, R. C. The dimensions of low-frequency quartz oscillators. *Review of Scientific Instruments*, 1, pp. 13-21; January, 1930.
(The frequencies of the "Curie" cut quartz oscillator plates from 60 to 320 Kc/sec. are shown to be discontinuous functions of the dimensions. The K, "meters per millimeter" is shown to vary from 90 to 145. It is suggested that the use of relative power measurements will insure a single frequency crystal operating at minimum damping.)
- R220 Castellain, A. P. The absorption method of capacity and inductance measurements. *Experimental Wireless & W. Engr.* (London), 7, pp. 81-84; Feb., 1930.

(The absorption method of measuring inductance and capacity is explained. The method is extended to the measurement of the self capacity and inductance of a coil. For measurements by this method a radio-frequency generator, a calibrated standard condenser and a calibrated heterodyne wavemeter are needed.)

- R230 Yamamoto, I. Studies on the natural electric oscillations of coils. Science Reports of the Tohoku Imperial University, 18, pp. 531-79; Dec., 1929.
(The solenoidal coil, the pancake coil and the conical coil are treated in a study of the natural electric oscillations of coils. Measurements are made of the fundamental and the higher natural frequencies, and the wave forms of the potential standing waves are observed.)
- R300. RADIO APPARATUS AND EQUIPMENT
- R329 Amy, E. V. and Aceves, J. C. The multicoupler antenna system. *Radio Broadcast*, 16, pp. 206-209; Feb., 1930.
(Installations for apartment houses.)
- R330 Weaver, K. S. and Jones, W. J. Production testing of vacuum tubes. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 336-349; Feb., 1930.
(The procedure in the testing of vacuum tubes under commercial production, the characteristics on which tests are made and the nature of the tests.)
- R342.7 Thiessen, A. E. The accurate testing of audio amplifiers in production. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 231-242; Feb., 1930.
(Method given for quickly comparing the voice frequency amplifying system of receivers, particularly those for use in broadcast reception, with a predetermined standard. Tests made on the amplification of the system within the band of audio frequencies and on the undistorted power output that it will deliver.)
- R342.7 Glauber, J. J. Application of screen-grid tubes to audio-frequency amplification. *Radio Engineering*, 10, pp. 29-33; Feb., 1930.
(Construction of proper circuits suitable to the characteristics of the typical screen-grid tube.)
- R343 Lubszynski, G. Grundsätzliches über die Verwendung gemeinsamer Stromquellen für mehrere Verstärker. (Fundamental consideration on the use of the same source of current for several amplifiers). *Elek.-Nach. Tech.*, 6, pp. 500-504; Dec., 1929.
(The mutual interference of two or more amplifiers working from the same sources of plate and filament voltage is considered, and a quantitative expression for the ratio of the interference signal to the desired signal is developed and applied to several specific cases to determine the feasibility of multiple operation.)
- R343 Harris, S. Cross modulation in r-f amplifiers. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 350-354; Feb., 1930.
(The causes of cross modulation in radio-frequency amplifiers are described, particularly in connection with the use of a non-selective input circuit, and in connection with the static characteristics of the screen-grid tube. Remedies for the difficulties are suggested.)
- R343 von Handel, P.; Krüger, K.; Plendl, H. Quartz control for frequency stabilization in short wave receivers. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 307-320; Feb., 1930.
(Experiments were made on the use of quartz control on receivers to stabilize high-frequency reception. The use of a quartz plate either in a self-generating detector or in a separate heterodyne to produce audible beats with the frequency of the transmitter quartz was found impractical. A successful experiment is described in which the superposition of the frequencies of the transmitter and the receiver both piezo controlled produce a intermediate frequency which is made audible in a normal generating detector.)
- R343.7 Brown, H. A. and Morris, L. P. Filament supply for radio receiver from rectified 25-kc current. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 298-306; Feb., 1930.
(A method of generating, rectifying, and filtering 25-kc current for supplying filament power to ordinary d-c-amplifier tubes in radio receivers is described. The oscillator used to generate the 25-kc current was of a special design and contained one or more UX-210 power tubes. The dry contact type rectifier unit was used, and cathode-ray oscillograms of the output current were taken. Operating tests were made of the performance of radio receivers.)

- R360 Thomas, H. A. A method of measuring the overall performance of radio receivers. *Experimental Wireless & Wireless Engr.* (London), 7, pp. 78-80; Feb., 1930.
(The apparatus and method developed at the National Physical Laboratory for the Radio Research Board for measuring the overall performance of radio receivers is described. Abstract of a paper read before the Wireless Section, Institution Electrical Engineers, Jan. 15, 1930.)
- R360 Farnham, P. O. A broadcast receiver for use in automobiles. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 321-26; Feb., 1930.
(The important features affecting the design of a broadcast receiver for use in automobiles, special reference made to: (1) type of collector; (2) ignition shielding; (3) electrical characteristics of the receiver; (4) physical structure of the receiver and (5) power supply. Observations with an experimental receiver show that the ignition interference is greatest at the higher broadcast frequencies, that the normal service range is from 50 to 100 miles from 50-kw stations, and that automatic volume control is desirable when the travel is through hilly country.)
- R386 Uehling, E. A. Band-pass filter circuits. *Radio Broadcast*, 16, pp. 212-214; Feb., 1930.
(Mathematical considerations in design are given.)
- R388 von Hartel, H. Eine neue Braun'sche Röhre. (A new Braun tube.) *Zeits. für Hochfreq.*, 34, pp. 227-228; Dec., 1929.
(Describes new type of Braun tube and its several advantages.)
- R388 von Ardenne, M. A Braun tube for direct photographic recording. *Experimental Wireless & W. Engr.* (London), 7, pp. 66-70; Feb., 1930.
(A Braun tube employing from 300 to 4500 volts as the anode voltage is described. At the lower voltages it is adaptable to observational measurements. At the higher voltages (above 1200) it permits the photography of aperiodic as well as periodic phenomena direct from the fluorescent screen. Photographs taken with the aid of the tube are reproduced.)

R500. APPLICATIONS OF RADIO

- R526.1 Diamond, H. Applying the visual double-modulation type radio range to the airways. *Bureau of Standards Journal of Research*, 4, pp. 265-87; Feb., 1930. Research Paper No. 148 obtainable from the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C.
(A number of circuit arrangements are described, by which a single visual-type radio range is made to serve two, three, or four courses radiating from a given airport at arbitrary angles with each other. A method of obtaining small amounts of shift by an adjustment of the receiving equipment aboard the airplanes is also described.)
- R536 Geyger, W. Zusammenfassender Bericht: Die geoelektrischen Untersuchungsmethoden mit Wechselstrom. (Complete report on the methods of geoelectric investigation with alternating currents.) *Zeits. für Hochfreq.* 34, pp. 228-233; Dec., 1929.
(Continued from *Zeits. f. Hochfreq.*, Nov., 1929 issue.)
- R582 Ives, H. E. and Johsrud, A. L. Television in colors by a beam scanning disc. *Jour. Opt. Soc.*, 20, pp. 11-22; January, 1930.
(Photoelectric cells sensitive to all colors in the visible spectrum and colored lights capable of high speed variation in intensity have made possible television in color. The details of the scanning apparatus and of the sending and receiving apparatus employed are given. Certain operational features and problems in the faithful reproduction of color are discussed.)

R800. NON-RADIO SUBJECTS

- 530 van der Pol, B. A new transformation in alternating-current theory with an application to the theory of audition. *Proc. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 221-230; Feb., 1930.

(A mathematical transformation of the elements of an impedance is considered whereby the complex impedance of each of the constituents is multiplied by j , j^2 and j^3 and the physical meaning of such a transformed system is investigated. New circuits can be derived from the known circuits and special properties of the former are transformed into new special properties of the latter. Further, negative capacities and negative inductances are considered which are independent of frequency. Several a-c circuits are described having the property that the modulus of their impedances is independent of frequency. These permit an experiment confirming the acoustical law of Ohm.)

- 534 Browne, C. O. The problem of distortion in sound film reproduction. *Experimental Wireless and W. Engr.* (London), 7, pp. 71-77; Feb., 1930.

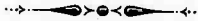
(Frequency characteristics of a recording and reproducing sound-film system are discussed independently with a view to producing a level combined-frequency response. Various recorders and the method by which their frequency responses can be brought into line with that of the reproducer are described. A recording system producing a twin wave track record of the variable width type is described in detail and the essential points of the variable density recording system are observed.)

- 537.1 Landon, V. D. The equivalent generator theorem. *PROC. I. R. E.*, 18, pp. 294-97; Feb., 1930.

(It is proved that any electrical network with two output terminals may be replaced by a generator and a series impedance without changing the current in an externally connected load. The voltage of the generator is the no-load voltage of the output terminals. The value of the series impedance is the impedance of the unloaded network looking into the output terminals. The use of the theorem is illustrated, and it is pointed out that it is valid for transient as well as steady state conditions.)

- 621.313.3 Geyger, W. Ein komplexer Wechselstromkompensator für mittlere Frequenzen. (A complex a-c. compensator for frequencies from 500 to 5000 cycles.) *Zeits. für Hochfreq.*, 34, pp. 223-27; Dec., 1929.

(Description of a simple instrument for determining amplitude and phase of an unknown a-c voltage using the compensation method.)



CONTRIBUTORS TO THIS ISSUE

Clapp, James K.: Born December 30, 1897 at Denver, Colorado. With Marconi Wireless Telegraph Company, 1914-1916; U. S. Navy, 1917-1919, foreign service, 1918-1919; Radio Corporation of America, 1920, also 1922-1923. Received B.S. degree, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1923; instructor in electrical communications, M. I. T., 1923-1928; M.S. degree, 1926. Engineering department, General Radio Company, Cambridge, Mass., 1928 to date. Associate member, Institute of Radio Engineers, 1924; Member, 1928.

Glover, Ralph P.: Born June 15, 1906 at Lockport, New York. Received E.E. degree from University of Cincinnati, June, 1929. Thesis: "Methods and Equipment for Overall Measurements on Broadcast Receivers." With Crosley Radio Corporation from April, 1929, to date. In charge of standard measurements on receivers from June, 1929, to date. Associate member, Institute of Radio Engineers, 1928.

Kenrick, G. W.: Born May 25, 1901 at Brockton, Mass. Received B.S. degree in physics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1922; M.S. in physics, M.I.T., 1922; D.Sc. in mathematics, M.I.T., 1927. Assistant, department of physics, M.I.T., 1920-1922; department of development and research, American Telephone and Telegraph Company, 1922-1923; instructor in electrical engineering, M.I.T., 1923-1927; Moore School of Electrical Engineering, University of Pennsylvania, 1927 to date. Associate member, Institute of Radio Engineers, 1923; Member, 1929.

Loftin, Edward H.: Born July 19, 1885, at Montgomery, Alabama. Graduated, U. S. Naval Academy, 1908; post graduate course at Naval Post Graduate School, Annapolis, and Columbia University with M.A. degree; closely affiliated with naval radio activities from 1910 to 1924 during which time commanded naval research ship *Bailey*, pioneered development for radio aircraft, in charge of naval communications in France during the War, liaison officer on Inter-Allied conferences, negotiations for and construction of the Lafayette station in France, in charge of naval research and development of radio for four years after war, member of Technical Committee of International Communication Conference (1921), and chairman of Inter-Departmental Radio Board. Since leaving the naval service in 1924 has been engaged in private research and development work. Member, Institute of Radio Engineers, 1926.

Pickard, Greenleaf Whittier: Born February 14, 1877 at Portland, Maine. Educated at Westbrook Seminary, Westbrook, Maine; Lawrence Scientific School of Harvard University; and Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Experimental radio work with Blue Hill Observatory, 1898-1899. Research engineer for American Wireless Telegraph and Telephone Company for several years. Radio telephony in research department of American Telephone and Telegraph Company, 1902-1906. Consulting engineer, 1906-1907. Consulting engineer for and director of the Wireless Specialty Apparatus Company of Boston, 1907 to date. Inventions in connection with radio telephony, the crystal detector, loop aeriels and direction-finding systems, and various static-mitigating devices used during the war. Received Institute Medal of Honor, 1926. Member, Institute of Radio Engineers, 1912; Fellow, 1915.

Potter, Ralph Kimball: Born October 1, 1894 at Elgin, Illinois. Received B.S. degree from Whitman College, 1917. With Artillery Corps, U. S. Army, 1917-1919. Received E.E. degree, Columbia University, 1923. With department of development and research, American Telephone and Telegraph Company, in connection with broadcast and transatlantic high-frequency radiotelephony, 1923 to date.

Tanimura, Isao: Born April 18, 1900 at Gohdo Town, Gifu Prefecture, Japan. Graduated, electrical department, Hiroshima Higher Technical School, 1924. Entered Radio Section, Electrotechnical Laboratory, Ministry of Communications, Japan, 1924. Engaged in radio research, 1924 to date. Non-member, Institute of Radio Engineers.

Watanabe, Yasusi: See PROCEEDINGS for February, 1930.

Watts, E. G., Jr.: Born March 2, 1907 at Long Branch, New Jersey. Amateur radio operator, 1921-1923. Florida Radio Telegraph Co., Miami, Florida, 1924-1928. Victoreen Radio Co., Cleveland, Ohio, 1928-1929. Murton Laboratories, Cleveland, Ohio, 1929 to date. Junior member, Institute of Radio Engineers, 1927; Associate, 1928.

White, S. Young: Born April 11, 1901. For some time in testing course of the General Electric Company; spent a number of years as radio operator on ships throughout the world; engaged in special work on rectifiers in the United States and Europe for several years; during the past few years has been engaged in private research and development work, particularly in amplifying circuit and radio design work. Non-member, Institute of Radio Engineers.

*Takagishi, Eijiro: Born, 1898. Graduated from Tokyo Higher Technical School, 1918. Wireless department of Electrotechnical Laboratory, Ministry of Communications, Japan, 1918-1925. Chief of Hiraiso branch of Electrotechnical Laboratory, 1925-1929. Chief of research department, Annaka Radio Manufacturing Company, Limited, 1929 to date. Non-member, Institute of Radio Engineers.

* Paper published in the March, 1930, PROCEEDINGS.



To
Think of

T TRANSFORMERS

is to
Think of

THORDARSON

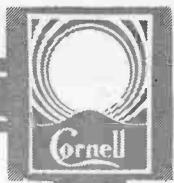
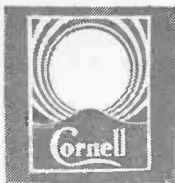
TRANSFORMER SPECIALISTS • Since 1895

Microphone Transformers • Line to Tube, Tube
to Line, Line to Line • Mixing Transformers •
Coupling Reactors • Filter Chokes • Audio
Transformers • Impedance Matching Trans
formers • Power Compacts • Speaker Coupling
Transformers • Complete Amplifiers

**THORDARSON ELECTRIC
MANUFACTURING CO.**

**Huron, Kingsbury and Larrabee Sts.
Chicago, Illinois, U. S. A.**

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



NEW {ACTUAL
SIZE
.1

and Greater Capacity

«CUB» Condensers

Now Available in Capacities
Ranging from .0001 to .25 Mfd.

*Cut Labor Operations
and Cost 20% to 50% Less*

Cornell

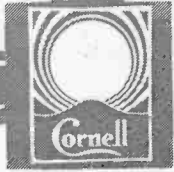
FILTER CONDENSERS
BY-PASS CONDENSERS
RADIO INTERFERENCE FILTERS
POWER FACTOR CORRECTION BANKS
UNIFORMLY HIGH INSULATION RESISTANCE
PAPER DIELECTRIC CONDENSERS

(ALL TYPES)

Cornell is equipped to give you what you want when you want it at prices within the range of commercial set manufacturing.

Write for a Sample "Cub" Condenser and Catalog of Complete Line of Cornell Products.

Cornell Electric Mfg. Co., Inc.
LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK



When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Three Dimensions—

Wide scope—

Acoustics—

Sound—

Color—



—all pressing problems in the field of home and theatrical talking motion pictures. New engineering strides are being made every day in this new and rapidly developing industry.

The motion picture industry has become inseparably linked with radio since the advent of sound. Radio engineers and technicians are vitally involved with sound projection problems.

Projection Engineering is the industrial-engineering journal of this young industry. It is edited by Donald McNicol, past president of the I.R.E.—Associate Editors Austin C. Lescarboursa, Evans Plummer, James Cameron—Hollywood Editor, J. Garrick Eisenberg.

Published monthly by the publishers of RADIO ENGINEERING

*You Need Projection Information
Subscribe Now!*

PROJECTION ENGINEERING is not sold on newsstands

Bryan Davis Publishing Co., Inc., 52 Vanderbilt Ave.,
New York City.

1. Enclosed find $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \$2.00 \text{ for 1 yr.} \\ \$3.00 \text{ for 2 yrs.} \end{array} \right\}$
subscription to $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Radio Engineering.} \\ \text{Projection Engineering.} \end{array} \right\}$
2. Enclosed find \$3.00 for one year's subscription to both publications.

Name
Address
Town and State

Please check your classification.

- Manufacturer
Including executives, plant superintendents, foremen, purchasing agents, etc.
- Engineer
- Technician

PLEASE PRINT YOUR NAME AND ADDRESS

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

A Prosperity of New Thoroughness

For betterment of the various satisfactions that can be delivered to the consumer or user;—better performances, better values. Re-designing for better adjustments to the present and coming Consuming Power and Purchasing Power.

New designs, new tries, new modifications of present designs,—they are going on everywhere.

* * *

THE new prosperity, now preparing, will be on a new basis, different from the past. Based on new thinking, new ways, new thoroughness.

New conditions are ahead of us. Some are here now.

Production-thinking is sharper, faster, more complete and with a stronger will to mesh perfectly with *every* aim and problem of the business.

* * *

Dips are turning points—in business history, and in industry's development. Always have been.

Every great and fast advance started, in reality, from a dip or emergency.

A great new advance,—a correction of direction; a betterment of thinking and method,—is getting ready right now.

It is starting. You can feel it; see it; it is all around you.

* * *

Dips jolt thinking. They jolt minds everywhere, from top to bottom in industry and commerce.

Instantly the thinking is faster, fresher, freer, bolder,—more open-minded, more self-critical,—more constructive.

Just the *hint* of a dip was enough this time. Because men in industry today know more, are better equipped, quicker to see and act.

Even if the hint of a dip is over by the time you read this, the fast, clear, sharp thinking it started is *going onward*. It is getting more momentum. Its results will be permanent.

In industry and business the new direction is being determined.

* * *

Already you see the changes, the trend . . . New thinking. New planning. New openness of mind. New search for Useful Knowledge;—for the new facts on which new ideas and *new action* can be based.

You see re-designing everywhere,—for profit,—for better margin. For better position in competition.

In mass-production; realize what is happening—New realization that mass-production principles don't stand still. That they grow and change. That the new, more highly perfected Principles of mass-production are on the way, and *taking shape right now*.

The New thoroughness—you feel it everywhere you turn—can't shut your eyes to it. New balancing of considerations. New determination to find and weight **EVERY** consideration that has a bearing on design, purchase, capital, profit, or competition.

New realization that, in past designing and purchasing decisions or plans, too many considerations have been left out of the scales.

New searching out of the Wastes that in easier days were allowed to exist; "leech wastes" that *now* are stopped by the new, more complete balancing of *all* considerations.

* * *

In all production, of small quantities or large, you see more "hand to mouth." And keener planning for it.

More search for the best conveniences, cooperations, services, and certainties as to later supplies and prices.

Sharper looking-ahead, even where small or try quantities are concerned;—you see and feel it everywhere; there is no mistaking it.

You see foresight and mass-production thinking applied to production that at present is very small. The demand for rightness in *every* detail than can affect business in *any way*.

* * *

And through it all, everywhere, the new awakening to fact that, now, too often, the **REAL** drag on profits, and on success in competition, is the using of **WRONG MATERIAL**.

In all the New thoroughness, the foundation—the one indispensable factor, is—**THINKING IN THE RIGHT MATERIAL**.

From **FACT-SHEETS OF INDUSTRY No. 1**, to be issued April 15th, 1930. Mailed **FREE** to **ANY Worker**, any Executive. Write **NOW**. No charge. State work you do, your company's product or business, and whether request is for self. Address Librarian (Dept. H-4), National Vulcanized Fibre Company, Wilmington, Del.

NVF

Sponsored by **NATIONAL VULCANIZED FIBRE COMPANY**; its Divisions and Associated Industries, Wilmington, Delaware, U. S. A. . . . Special Phenolites; "righter" Bakelites; Many kinds of Vulcanized Fibre Material Handling Equipment, etc. . . . Serving America's industries from smallest to greatest.

NATIONAL VULCANIZED FIBRE COMPANY

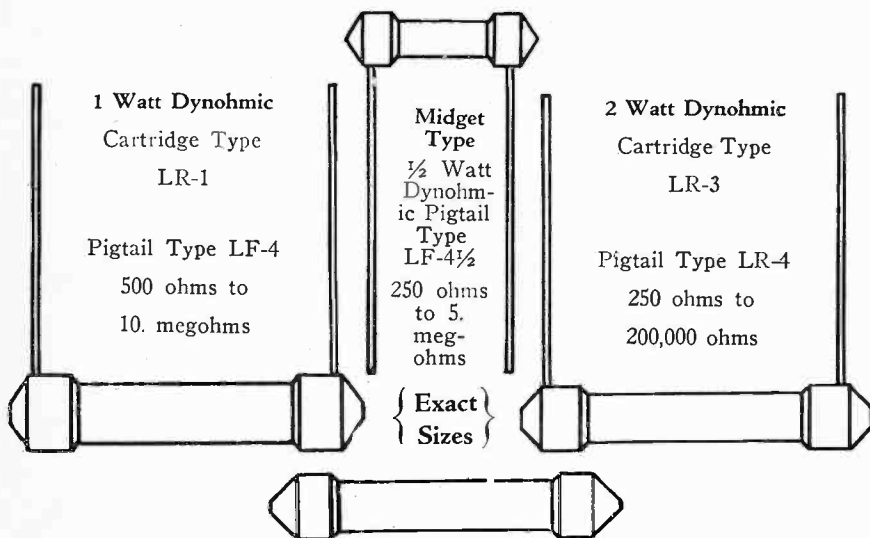
When writing to advertisers mention of the **PROCEEDINGS** will be mutually helpful.

LYNCH

METALLIZED

DYNOHMIC RESISTORS

YOUR EQUIPMENT plus LYNCH RESISTORS
= Satisfied Serviceless Customers



The resistance element is based on the famous metallized principle which has proved its superiority for accuracy and uniformity. Lynch Resistors embody the following improvements:

- 1—Casings are ceramic—permitting maximum heat dissipation, and sturdy enough to withstand heavy shocks and jars, thus minimizing possibility of breaking by crushing.
- 2—Caps are molded on, insuring positive mechanical and electrical contact—tapered for easy mounting where interchangeability is desired.
- 3—Pigtails are tinned copper, molded into the caps, not soldered or strapped—thus insuring positive contact and proof against noise caused by faulty connection.

Send us your Resistor Specifications and requirements, so that we can submit samples and prices.

Our production facilities are elastic enough to take care of large and small orders—give us a trial.

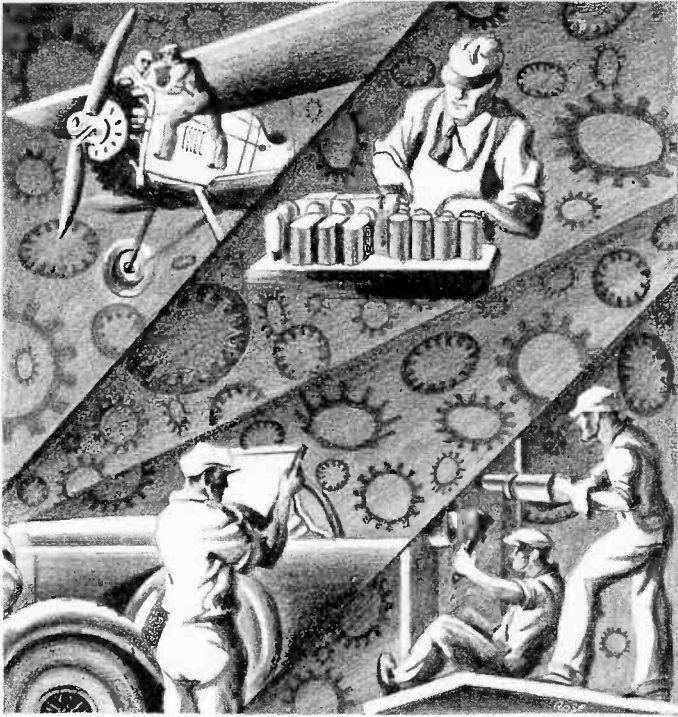
LYNCH MANUFACTURING COMPANY, Inc.

1775 Broadway

New York City

Manufacturers of
QUALITY RADIO PRODUCTS

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



TANGLEPROOF
SPREADPROOF
MULTIPLE-
LOCKING

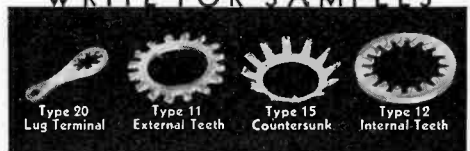
DOWN the assembly line where minutes saved mean dollars earned—in modern production everywhere you will find SHAKEPROOF. Twisted teeth of steel hold the nut and the work in a grip that loosens only under applied pressure. If you are interested in better ways of doing things and methods that will save you money, it will pay you to send for free samples.

SPEED UP PRODUCTION with SHAKEPROOF

SHAKEPROOF
Lock Washer Company
[Division of Illinois Tool Works]

2501 North Keeler Avenue Chicago, Illinois

WRITE FOR SAMPLES



Type 20
Lug Terminal

Type 11
External Teeth

Type 15
Countersunk

Type 12
Internal-Teeth

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

ELECTROLYTIC CONDENSERS

OUR NEW ELECTROLYTIC CONDENSER
REVOLUTIONARY IN DESIGN AND
HAVING MANY PATENTABLE FEAT-
TURES WILL BE READY FOR PRO-
DUCTION ABOUT MAY 15th.

FIRST DETAILED INFORMATION NOW
AVAILABLE.

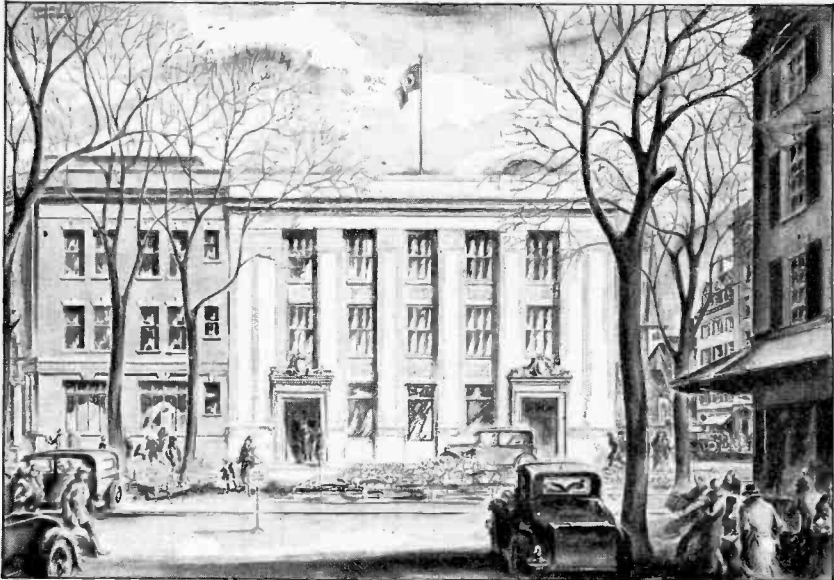


CONDENSER CORPORATION OF AMERICA
259-271 CORNELISON AVE. JERSEY CITY, N.J.

The Ekko Co.
Daily News Bldg.
Chicago, Ill.

W. C. Laing
Building Industries,
Cincinnati, Ohio

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



TO GIVE THE PEOPLE THE MODERN, CONVENIENT TELEPHONE SERVICE THAT THEY NEED

The Bell Telephone Company ... of your town

An Advertisement of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company

IT HAS its home in your town. Its operators are the daughters of your neighbors. Its various departments are in the hands of your own citizens, with years of training in telephone engineering and management. Who owns the Bell System? 450,000 people scattered over the United States own the stock of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company and 250,000 own other securities of the Bell System. No matter how small the part of the Bell System that serves you, it has behind it research, engineering and manufacture on a national scale. The Bell System operates through 24 companies, each designed to fit the particular area it serves—to furnish the highest standard of service in a manner personal to the needs of every user.

Serving each of these 24 operating companies is the staff of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company, which is

constantly developing better methods of telephone communication. Each draws on the findings of the Bell Laboratories, one of the greatest institutions of its kind in the world, for the continual scientific improvement of telephone service. Each has the benefit of the buying power and specialized manufacturing processes of the Western Electric Company, which supplies telephone apparatus of the highest quality and precision for the entire Bell System. Each takes advantage of every improvement in practice, equipment and economy.

The Bell System's ideal is to give all of the people of this nation the kind of modern, convenient telephone service that they want, over its wires to connect them one with another and with the telephones of the rest of the world. It is your telephone company, at your service with every resource that it commands.



When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

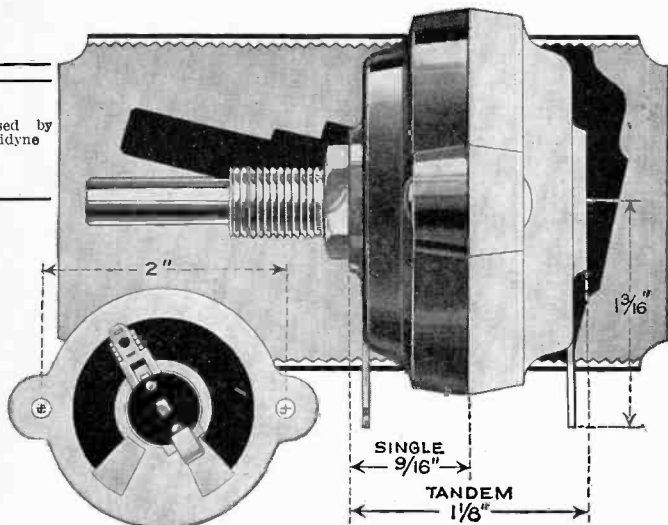
ELECTRAD Model "B" Super-TONATROL

Longer-Lived, Smoother-Operating

DUAL-UNIT VOLUME CONTROL

Licensed by
Technidyne
Corp.

U.S. Patents
1034103-
1034104 and
Pats. Pend.

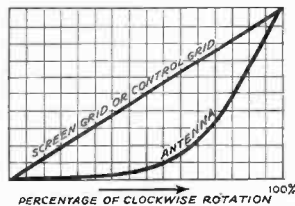


THE New Dual-Unit Model "B" Super-TONATROL effectively combines the advantages of a tapered volume control in the antenna circuit and a uniform control of screen grid or plate voltage—both on one shaft.

The Model "B" has all the superior operating characteristics of the Model "A" Super-TONATROL plus greater compactness. It has a 3-watt resistance element *permanently* fused to vitreous enameled metal plate and pure silver floating contact with *stepless* variation.

The Dual-Unit models afford complete circuit isolation through a unique method of insulating the rotor shaft. Mechanism enclosed in a handsome Bakelite case, and is practically immune to changes in temperature or humidity. One-hole panel or base-board mounting.

[Can be made with all usual resistance ratings and curves in single as well as tandem units.]



The diagram illustrates the typical curves of dual units. A tapered resistance is used in the antenna circuit—a uniform resistance in the grid control circuit. The resistance variation in the antenna circuit is extremely small during the first half of the knob rotation which assures smoother control of powerful signals.

175 Varick St., New York, N.Y.

ELECTRAD

INC.

ELECTRAD, INC., Dept. PE4, 175 Varick St., New York,
TROL Model "B" to
Manufacturers.
Address.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

1919

10 YEARS of RADIO MANUFACTURING

*Plus Over 12 Years of Pioneering in
Electrical Reproduction of Sound*

1930

IN 1919 when the Pacent Electric Company began to manufacture radio essentials, the industry was truly in its infancy. The years since have seen a steady and healthy growth, until today, the company enjoys the distinction of being one of the oldest and most far-sighted manufacturers.

Today Pacent Electric Company has the largest engineering and research staff in its history. All Pacent devices are examples of modern leadership in engineering and in sound, creative manufacturing.

Pacent Quality and Service are enemies of business depression.

PACENT ELECTRIC CO.

91 Seventh Avenue, New York

Manufacturing Licensee for Great Britain and Ireland:
IGRANIC ELECTRIC CO., Ltd., Bedford, England
Licensee for Canada: White Radio Limited, Hamilton, Ont.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

AEROVOX DRY ELECTROLYTIC FILTER CONDENSERS

A NEW

Condenser
for
Filter Circuits

—0—

Dry

—0—

Low Cost

—0—

High Capacity

—0—

Improved
Filtering

—0—

Better Tone
Quality

—0—

High Voltage
Rating

—0—

Long Lived

—0—

Surge Proof

—0—

Safe

We shall be glad to go over with you the advantages in quality, performance and savings which Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condensers will make possible in your filter circuits.

The Research Worker is a free monthly publication treating on the proper application of condensers and resistors in radio circuits.

A 32-page Catalog containing detailed descriptions and specifications of condensers and resistors is yours for the asking.

Write for both the Research Worker and the Catalog.

Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condensers are admirably suited for use in filter circuits in which the following characteristics increase the efficiency and safety of the filter circuit and reduce its cost.

1. **DRY:** Aerovox Dry Electrolytic condensers have no solution to spill or evaporate. They eliminate all trouble usually encountered in packing, shipping and servicing electrolytic condensers in which a liquid solution is employed.

2. **FILTER ACTION:** The filter action per microfarad of Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condensers is equivalent to that of paper condensers.

3. **COST:** The cost of Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condensers is much lower than paper condensers of equivalent capacity and voltage rating.

4. **COMPACTNESS:** The cubic contents of an Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condenser is much less than that of a paper condenser of equivalent capacity and voltage rating.

5. **EFFECT ON TONE QUALITY:** The improved filtering obtainable from the higher capacity which can be utilized with Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condensers per dollar of cost, makes possible a great improvement in tone quality by eliminating modulation of signal by the fundamental frequency and harmonics of the power supply.

6. **VOLTAGE RATING:** An improved process employed in making the Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condensers has resulted in a marked increase in rating of this type of condenser to 500 volts D.C. maximum peak, permitting their use without resorting to expensive series connections, in circuits where ordinary electrolytic condensers cannot be employed. This feature is particularly important in connection with power supply units designed for operation with 245 type power tubes at rated characteristics.

7. **SURGE PROOF:** Puncture of the dielectric, due to surges, does not injure the condenser, the dielectric film healing itself automatically when the temporary surge dies out.

8. **SAFETY:** Within a short time after the voltage or charging source is discontinued, the energy of the residual charge is dissipated through leakage, thus eliminating the danger from shocks, often met with in paper condensers which hold their charge for long periods.

9. **SURGE LIMITING CHARACTERISTICS:** The comparatively high leakage current drawn temporarily as the power supply unit is turned on, limits the peak no-load voltages applied in the power supply circuits and protects bypass condensers in the various receiver and amplifier circuits.

10. **LONG LIFE:** Self-healing characteristics of the Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condenser eliminates permanent breakdowns due to temporary overloads from surges and increases the life of the condenser almost indefinitely.

11. **HUM ELIMINATION:** Because of the much lower cost per microfarad of the dry electrolytic condenser, it is economically practical to use higher capacities than with paper condensers with consequent reduction of hum in filter circuits to a negligible minimum.

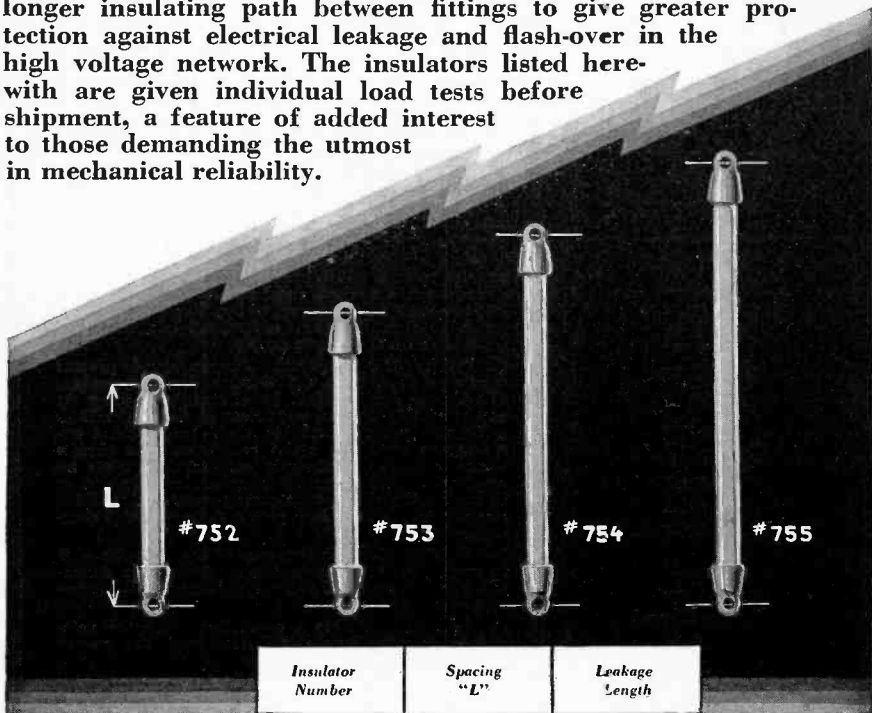
12. **UNAFFECTED BY ATMOSPHERIC CONDITIONS:** The Aerovox Dry Electrolytic Condenser sections are sealed to prevent any harmful effects from atmospheric conditions.

AEROVOX WIRELESS CORP.
80 WASHINGTON ST.
BROOKLYN, N. Y.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

A FAMILY OF HEAVY DUTY

ISOLANTITE now offers a new series of antenna insulators for the suspension of structures of the heavier types. These insulators are designed not only to support greater leads but provide a longer insulating path between fittings to give greater protection against electrical leakage and flash-over in the high voltage network. The insulators listed herewith are given individual load tests before shipment, a feature of added interest to those demanding the utmost in mechanical reliability.



Insulator Number	Spacing "L"	Leakage Length
No. 752	12 inches	8 inches
No. 753	16 inches	12 inches
No. 754	20 inches	16 inches
No. 755	24 inches	20 inches

Ultimate Strength 2,000 Pounds

Isolantite Company

SALES OFFICES -----

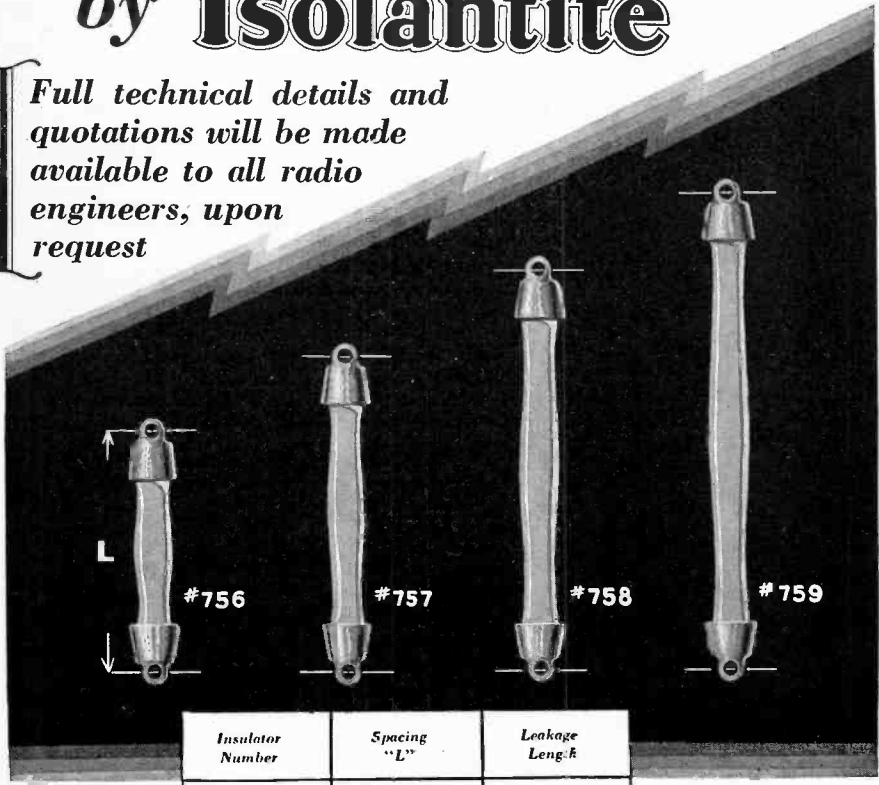
551 FIFTH AVE., NEW YORK CITY

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

ANTENNA INSULATORS --

by **Isolantite**

Full technical details and quotations will be made available to all radio engineers, upon request



Insulator Number	Spacing "L"	Leakage Length
No. 756	13 inches	8 inches
No. 757	17 inches	12 inches
No. 758	21 inches	16 inches
No. 759	25 inches	20 inches

Ultimate Strength 4,000 Pounds

of America, Inc.

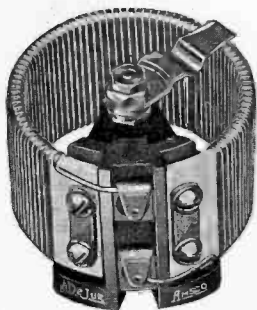
-----FACTORY
 BELLEVILLE, N. J.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Power Delicately Controlled by

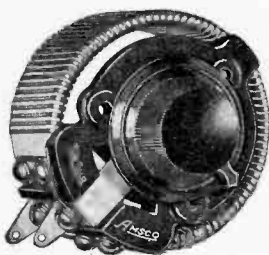
DeJUR-AMSCO

Power Rheostats and Potentiometers



DeJur-Amsco power rheostats and potentiometers are engineered mechanically and electrically to fill the exacting requirements of talking movies and other photo sound reproducing systems where the apparatus must be designed to control consistently and unvaryingly the currents in a modulated light and associated circuits.

Give us your ohmic and power specifications between one and two thousand ohms and up to 150 watts, and we shall prepare samples demonstrating the production features of—

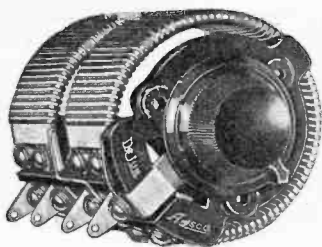


Conservative power rating.

Insulation with heat resisting Bakelite and steel braced asbestos.

Full power dissipation at projection room temperatures.

Self-cleaning, non-microfonic contacts.



Our orders with manufacturers of photo-electric control apparatus recommend a 2 ohms, 75 watts rheostat for modulated light control, and we are prepared to supply these immediately.

Literature and further information on request.

DeJUR-AMSCO CORPORATION

Fairbanks Building

BROOME & LAFAYETTE STS., NEW YORK CITY

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

An Oasis for Radio SET BUILDERS

IN Jefferson, many progressive set manufacturers have found an invaluable ally . . . a fertile spot in the uncharted and mirage-filled region of experiment. For Jefferson has proved helpful in more ways than one.

First, in experimental work. Jefferson engineers are transformer specialists, with a vast and varied experience in radio transformer design and development. Time and again they have solved vexing audio and power problems improving the electrical efficiency of those particular sets.

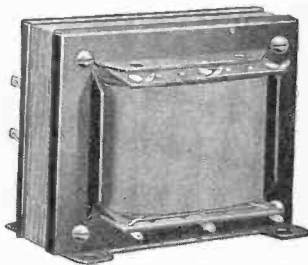
Second, a reliable source of supply. The policy of this company is to protect its customers on deliveries, under any and all conditions; to look after their interests, helping them in every way to secure the best possible equipment for the type set they are marketing . . . at a fair price.

It is these unusual services that invariably lead set manufacturers straight to Jefferson in their quest for the best transformers and the most practical advice on electrical problems. Let us know your problems, and your transformer needs. We have a proposition which will interest you.

JEFFERSON ELECTRIC COMPANY
1591 S. Laffin Street Chicago, Ill.

JEFFERSON AUDIO and POWER TRANSFORMERS and CHOKES

Through standardization, the same high quality Jefferson equipment, heretofore restricted to large manufacturers, is now available to a few select smaller manufacturers.



When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

A GREAT STEP FORWARD



EVEREADY RAYTHEON TUBES FOR TELEVISION

These television tubes are of proved performance and dependability. The Eveready Raytheon Kino-Lamp, for television reception, is the first tube developed commercially that will work with all systems. Its glow is uniform over the entire plate. Its reproductive qualities are perfect—without the need for mirrors or ground glass. Each tube is tested in our laboratories.

The Eveready Raytheon Foto-Cell is a long-life transmitting tube for talking pictures and television. It is made in several standard types, and will be furnished to special specifications at reasonable prices.

If you are interested in talking pictures or television—write to us.

NATIONAL CARBON COMPANY, INC.

General Offices: New York, N. Y.

Branches: Chicago Kansas City New York San Francisco

Unit of Union Carbide  and Carbon Corporation

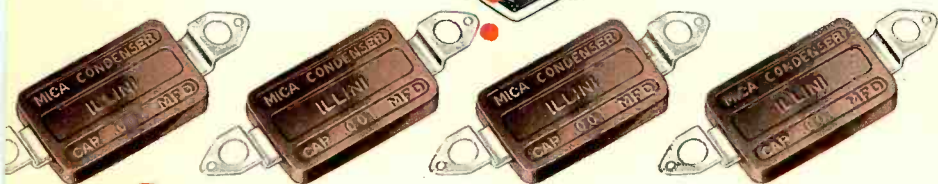


TRADE MARKS

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

XXX

Don't gamble on "long chance" condensers



Sangamo Fixed Condensers are accurate and they *stay* accurate

If you want to play the ponies, or sit in on a friendly game, or even take a flier in Consolidated Tombstone, that's your business.

If you want to risk production losses by gambling with "long chance" condensers, that's your business, too. But whether or not it's *good* business is questionable.

No item can cost so little and cause so

much trouble in a receiver as a fixed condenser. Why risk reassembly and service losses that far outweigh any possible savings that might result from the purchase of condensers of uncertain dependability?

Sangamo standards of precision carried into the manufacture of Fixed Condensers, have made it possible for manufacturers and custom set builders to eliminate condenser troubles.

The standard line of Sangamo Fixed Condensers leaves the factory tested to maximum variation of 10%. The reliability of these ratings is attested to by a number of nationally known radio manufacturers. Sangamo is equally reliable as a source of supply.

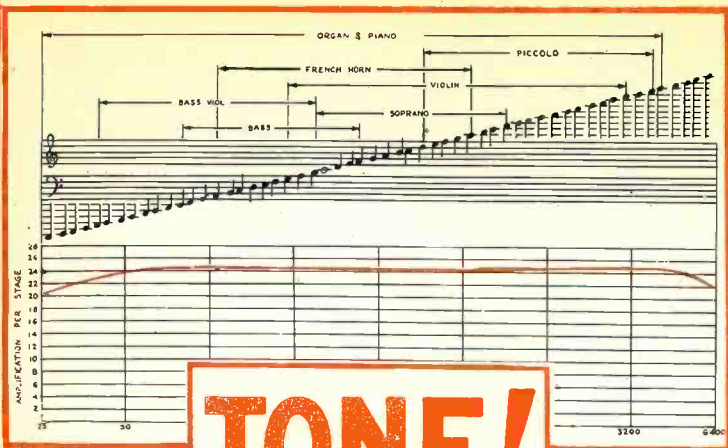
SANGAMO ELECTRIC CO.

SPRINGFIELD, ILLINOIS, U. S. A.

Manufacturers of Precision Electrical Apparatus for 30 years



See Reverse
Side



TONE!

Curve of Type "A" Sangamo Straight Audio Transformer showing uniformity of amplification at all audible frequencies.

Sangamo Transformers in the "audio end" give your set a "tone" advantage over competition

"X" Line Transformers

Type AX straight audio amplification list price \$6.00

Type BX Push-pull Input unit list price \$6.50

Type CX-171 Push-pull Output Transformer, for 171 or 250 power output tubes for cone speaker; list price \$6.50

Type DX, same as CX except for 210 and 112 power tubes; list price \$6.50

Type HX Push-pull Output for 171 or 250 Power Output tubes to match the impedance of moving coil of Dynamic loud speakers. list price \$6.50

Type GX, same as HX except for 210 and 112 power tubes; list price \$6.50

Type E output choke to match impedance of the various type power tubes list price \$5.00

"A" Line Transformers

Similar to X Line but with special core metal to give greater amplification at low frequencies.

Type A straight audio amplification list price \$10.00

Type B Push-pull Input Transformer for all tubes. list price \$12.00

Type C-171 Push-pull Output, for 171 or 250 type power tubes with cone speaker. list price \$12.00

Type D-210, same as C except for 210 and 112 power tubes; list price \$12.00

Type H-171, Push-pull Output for 171 or 250 power tubes for Dynamic Speaker. list price \$12.00

Type G-210, same as type H except for 210 and 112 tubes; list price \$12.00

Type F Plate Impedance for use as a choke to prevent oscillation and for impedance coupled amplifiers list price \$5.00

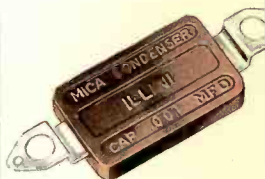
Unusual facilities for furnishing transformers with or without cases ready for mounting and quick assembly with the receiver. Prices on application.

The Sangamo Type "A" Condenser



Every sound characteristic is affected by the quality of the fixed condensers in a set. Sangamo builds accurate mica condensers, molded within an overall enclosure of genuine bakelite with only the terminals brought outside. Moisture, heat, shocks or jars will not alter their characteristics nor affect operation after the set leaves the factory.

Sangamo "Illini" Condensers



"Illini" Condensers are standard with those manufacturers who insist on ratings being actually what the specifications call for. Manufactured by exclusively designed equipment, held to the tolerances your engineering department demands, Sangamo Condensers will reduce to a negligible quantity inspection department rejects and "reassembly" losses in profit.

Sangamo High Voltage Condensers

Tested at 5000 volts D.C. and 3500 A.C. and built to Sangamo standards, known throughout the radio world, amateurs, commercial men and manufacturers have learned to depend on Sangamo High Voltage Condensers. Accurately rated and adequately tested—these condensers offer the maximum protection in high voltage, high frequency circuits.

Prices on request

PIN THIS TO YOUR LETTERHEAD AND MAIL

SANGAMO ELECTRIC CO.
Springfield, Illinois, U. S. A., Dept. T-94

- (For manufacturers) I am interested in engineering data regarding your transformers and condensers.
- (For set builders) Please send circulars describing your apparatus and latest audio hook-ups. I enclose 10c to cover cost of mailing.

Name.....

Address.....

The Institute of Radio Engineers

Incorporated

33 West 39th Street, New York, N. Y.

APPLICATION FOR ASSOCIATE MEMBERSHIP

(Application forms for other grades of membership are obtainable from the Institute)

To the Board of Direction
Gentlemen:

I hereby make application for Associate membership in the Institute.

I certify that the statements made in the record of my training and professional experience are correct, and agree if elected, that I will be governed by the constitution of the Institute as long as I continue a member. I furthermore agree to promote the objects of the Institute so far as shall be in my power, and if my membership shall be discontinued will return my membership badge.

Yours respectfully,

.....
(Sign with pen)

.....
(Address for mail)

.....
(Date)

.....
(City and State)

References:

(Signature of references not required here)

Mr. Mr.

Address Address

Mr. Mr.

Address Address

Mr.

Address

The following extracts from the Constitution govern applications for admission to the Institute in the Associate grade:

ARTICLE II—MEMBERSHIP

Sec. 1: The membership of the Institute shall consist of: * * * (d) Associates, who shall be entitled to all the rights and privileges of the Institute except the right to hold the office of President, Vice-president and Editor. * * *

Sec. 5: An Associate shall be not less than twenty-one years of age and shall be: (a) A radio engineer by profession; (b) A teacher of radio subjects; (c) A person who is interested in and connected with the study or application of radio science or the radio arts.

ARTICLE III—ADMISSION

Sec. 2: * * * Applicants shall give references to members of the Institute as follows: * * * for the grade of Associate, to five Fellows, Members, or Associates; * * * Each application for admission * * * shall embody a concise statement, with dates, of the candidate's training and experience.

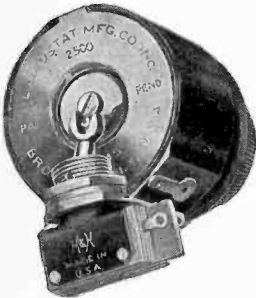
The requirements of the foregoing paragraph may be waived in whole or in part where the application is for Associate grade. An applicant who is so situated as not to be personally known to the required number of members may supply the names of non-members who are personally familiar with his radio interest.

VOLUME CONTROLS-A LA CARTE

There is as much difference between plain, hand-me-down, stock volume controls and CLAROSTAT volume controls as there is between a plain *table d'hote* dinner and a Ritz Carlton *a la carte* banquet. The first may come within a mile of meeting your tastes, requirements and pocketbook; the second is absolutely your own selection. And in radio, as in eating, if you would have your volume controls *a la carte*,

Simply Specify

VOLUME CONTROL CLAROSTAT



SWITCH TYPE

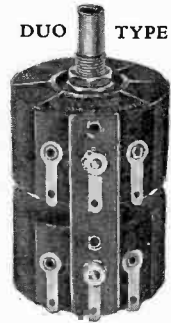
Dust-proof and tinker-proof, because of sealed-in construction. Neat. Compact. Nothing to adjust. Foolproof. Install it—and forget it.

And now you can have the VOLUME CONTROL CLAROSTAT in multiple form—duo and triple types, with each unit arranged for the desired resistance curve, increasing or decreasing the resistance as required, and all controlled in tandem by a single knob. The most elaborate receiving and amplifying systems can be arranged for single volume control by means of these multiple VOLUME CONTROL CLAROSTATS.

The power switch can be included in the single or multiple VOLUME CONTROL CLAROSTAT assembly, so as to be turned on or off by turning the single knob.

REMEMBER—There's a VOLUME CONTROL CLAROSTAT for every radio purpose—strictly *a la carte*. Order what you like—we shall fill your order.

WRITE for engineering data regarding the VOLUME CONTROL CLAROSTAT, as well as the LINE BALLAST CLAROSTAT and other resistors fitted to your needs. Samples cheerfully supplied to designing and production engineers.



DUO TYPE

Clarostat Manufacturing Company, Inc.



Specialists in Radio Aids

289 North Sixth Street

::

Brooklyn, N.Y.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

BIGGER RESOURCES *for Service!*



Formica has the largest plant, most varied equipment and the biggest organization specialized on the production of phenolic fibre insulation. Recent additions have added 50,000 feet of floor space to these facilities.

This specialization has been going on for 17 years—and has produced results which has held the patronage of some of the leading electrical organizations for periods of many years without a break.

Send your blueprints for estimates.



THE FORMICA INSULATION COMPANY

4646 Spring Grove Avenue

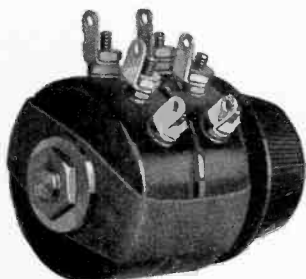
CINCINNATI, OHIO

FORMICA
Made from Anhydrous Bakelite Resins
SHEETS TUBES RODS

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

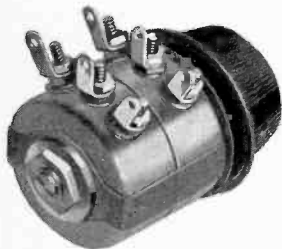
FROST-RADIO

sets a new standard of precision in volume control manufacture



No. 2880-2880. Bakelite shell composition element only. Resistance range from 5,000 ohms to 1 megohm. All curves. Potentiometer or rheostat types. Units insulated from each other. Diameter, 1 1/2 in. Depth of shell, 1 1/8 in.

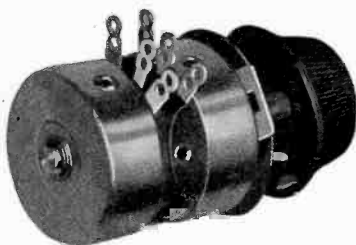
in the manufacture of volume controls. Old-fashioned standards will not do for tomorrow's marvelously improved receivers, for yesterday's best is far from being good enough for tomorrow's efficiency. So you will find in Frost-Radio Volume Controls



No. 590-590. Metal shell, composition element only. Resistances from 5,000 ohms to 1 megohm. All curves. Potentiometer or rheostat types. Units insulated from each other. Diameter, 1 5/16 in. Depth of shell, 1 1/8 in.

IN no field of radio manufacturing is absolute precision more essential than in the production of volume control units. Much of the satisfactory service a receiver is called upon to deliver depends on the complete dependability of these units over long periods of time, under varying conditions of temperature and humidity.

Here at Elkhart in the Frost-Radio laboratories we have established new standards of precision



No. 200-200. Metal shell type wire wound resistors with resistances from 5 ohms to 10,000 ohms. Split windings. Rheostat or potentiometer types. Units insulated. Diameter, 1 7/16 in. Depth of shell, 1 1/2 in.

an amazing precision, a

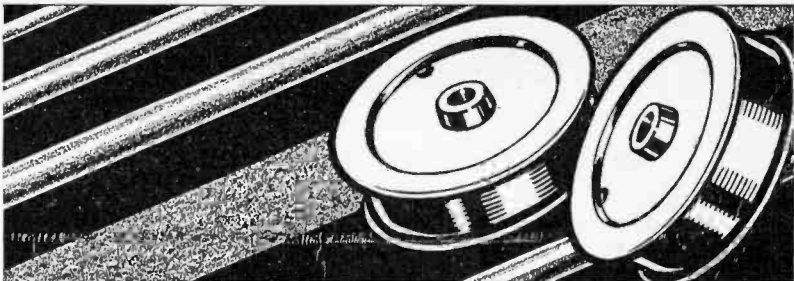
new conception of noiseless, wear-proof operation, and a new standard of accuracy—all made possible by constant Frost-Radio research to the end that every product bearing this name will be better, more dependable, and longer lived.

If you have a volume control problem we suggest you write or wire us for information as to its solution. Samples based on your exact specifications will be supplied promptly.

HERBERT H. FROST, Inc.
Main Offices and Factory: Elkhart, Ind.
160 North La Salle Street, CHICAGO

The World's Largest Manufacturer of High Grade Variable Resistors

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



ENGINEERS

*YOU - better than anyone
should know . .*

—that the metals from which vacuum tubes are made vitally affect your product's performance—that the quality and uniformity of these metals help determine the quality and uniformity in tubes, without which the best of radio design is of little use.

It's to the interest of the whole industry that tube makers use only the best metals—*Fansteel metals*—refined especially for vacuum tubes since 1918.

Fansteel also operates a special laboratory, directed by an outstanding authority on vacuum tubes, where research service is available without cost to any reputable maker. Correspondence is invited.

**FANSTEEL PRODUCTS
COMPANY, INC.
North Chicago, Illinois**

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

XXXVIII

GOOD DEMONSTRATIONS MAKE DIVIDENDS GROW

by
GEORGE LEWIS
Vice President
Arcturus Radio Tube Company

MOST radio sets look fine when they're shown at the factory. The demonstration is carefully planned and skilfully executed. Enthusiasm is natural. But the only demonstrations that bring in dividends are the demonstrations made on the dealer's floor—when cautious customers are carefully comparing the merits of different sets.

Realizing the importance of fool-proof set performance *at the point of sale*, critical engineers recommend Arcturus *Blue* Tubes.

They find that the 7-second action of Arcturus Tubes gets the demonstration away to a good start because it eliminates the usual embarrassing wait of 30 to 60 seconds.

They know that the clear, humless tone of Arcturus Tubes



does away with outside noises.

And they have learned that Arcturus dependability insures satisfactory operation with the minimum of servicing after the sale is made.

Your sets, too, will be "dividend demonstrators" with Arcturus Tubes in every socket. Check up on the possibilities of Arcturus Tubes today.

ARCTURUS RADIO TUBE COMPANY
NEWARK, N. J.

ARCTURUS

Quick Acting

RADIO TUBES

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



When the Coil's IN CONFERENCE

When the coil's up for consideration in a radio factory, it faces a real inquisition. Here "quality" is only one factor out of half a dozen with which it is confronted. The purchasing agent demands uniformity . . . he visualizes ideal coil shipments in which there are no rejects. The engineer demands accuracy, adherence to specifications, and able engineering assistance.

The General Manager, with an eye toward economy, wants the cost kept down without sacrificing quality. Altogether a tough proposition, and one that only a *good* coil would want to tackle. The fact that Dudlo coils have become standard in the country's finest receivers is conclusive evidence of their ability to pass the demands of any conference.

DUDLO

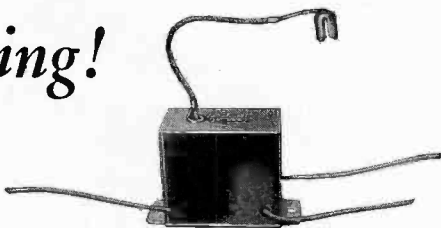
DUDLO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, FORT WAYNE, INDIANA
Division of General Cable Corporation

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

You can forget the Condensers if they are DUBILIERS

Announcing!

The New Dubilier
Screen-Grid Duratran
(Untuned Radio Fre-
quency Transformer)



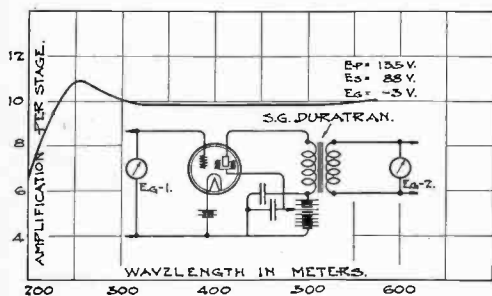
PL-2000

The New Dubilier Screen-Grid Duratran

A new development in untuned radio-frequency transformer construction, of particular interest to set-manufacturers.

Features:—

- (1) An untuned interstage radio-frequency transformer for use with screen-grid tubes—Types 222 and 224.
- (2) Relatively high gain per stage.
- (3) Uniform amplification over broadcast wave-band.
- (4) Amplification equivalent to that of a tuned radio frequency amplifier system.
- (5) Practically eliminates costly shielding problems.
- (6) A screen-grid duratran amplifier eliminates after assembly service charges usually encountered with unbalanced tuned R.F. stages.
- (7) Savings in balancing, testing, and shielding, permit large manufacturing economies.



Curve of Amplification vs Frequency

- (8) For use in standard receiving sets for home, portable, automotive, and marine use.

Technical data and samples will be gladly furnished to set-manufacturers.

DUBILIER CONDENSER CORPORATION

342 Madison Avenue New York, N. Y.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Bradleyunit Fixed Resistors

are
Unaffected
by Moisture,
Temperature
and Age



PERMANENT
noiseless performance is one of the outstanding features of the Bradleyunit Resistor. Solid Molded in construction, its accurate variation is unchanged by temperature. Age does not affect its silent operation.

Leading manufacturers of nationally known receivers rely on Bradleyunits for grid leaks and plate coupling resistors. You, too, can benefit by using them. Investigate today! Send specifications for complete information and prices.

Bradleyunit Resistors are furnished in ratings from 500 ohms to 10 megohms. Equipped with cadmium plated lead wires up to 6 inches in length. Color coded for quick identification.

ALLEN-BRADLEY CO., 282 Greenfield Avenue, Milwaukee, Wis.

Allen-Bradley

PERFECT RADIO  RESISTORS.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



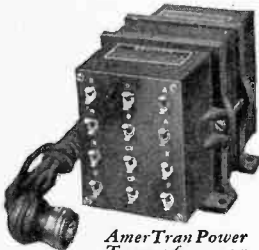
Bring the Studio to your Home



AmerTran DeLuxe
Audio Transformer—
List Price \$10.00. Type
151—Between one in-
put and two output
tubes — List Price
\$12.00



Type AF-8 Audio Trans-
former—Either 1st or 2nd
stage audio. Turn ratio
3½ — List Price \$5.00



AmerTran Power
Transformer
Type PF-245A—
List Price \$22.00

There is no excuse for imperfect radio reception. But even today, many receiving sets fail to reproduce music and the speaking voice in true tone identical with the range of pitch and the rich fulness of sound quality as broadcast in the studio.

The weak point in most receiving sets is in the audio system.

AmerTran Audio Transformers and Power Transformers shown here perfect the audio system and bring the programs into your home exactly as they go over the air through the microphone. For further descriptions of these and thirty-odd products in the field of radio reproduction that have attained the perfection necessary to AmerTran Standard of Excellence, write for Bulletin 1065.

The facilities of our engineering department are at the service of everyone interested in better radio reproduction.

AMERTRAN

TRADE MARK REG. U.S. PAT. OFF.
QUALITY RADIO PRODUCTS

AMERICAN TRANSFORMER COMPANY
172 EMMET STREET NEWARK, N. J.
Transformer Builders for over 29 years

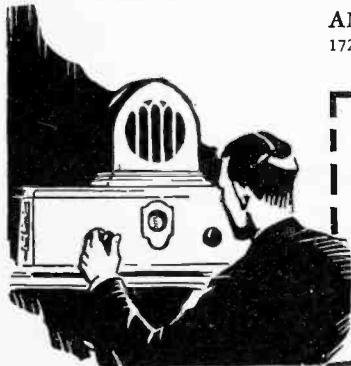
AMERICAN TRANSFORMER CO.
172 Emmet St., Newark, N. J.

Please send me Bulletin 1065 containing complete information on AmerTran Transformers, for better radio reception.

Name.....

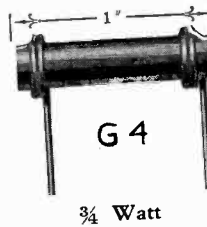
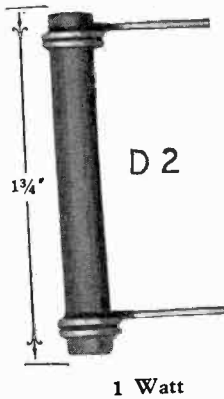
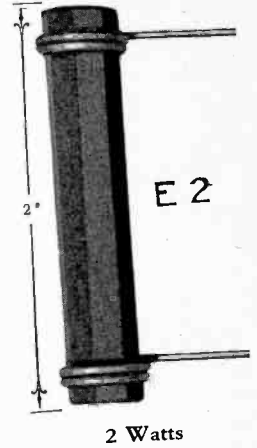
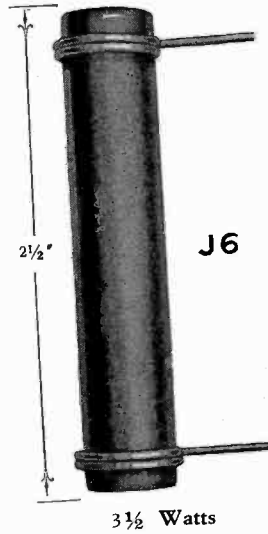
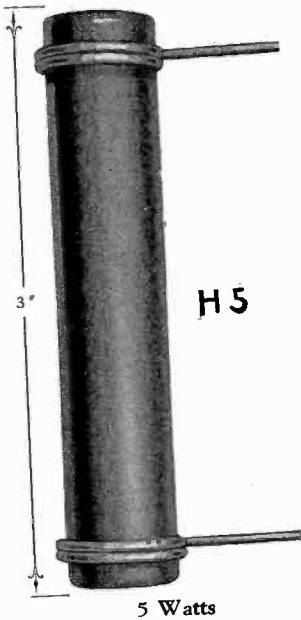
Address.....

IFE 4-30



When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Continental Resistors



CHARACTERISTICS:

NOISELESS
RESISTANCE CONSTANT
SMALL TEMPERATURE COEFFICIENT
RUGGED
FIRMLY SOLDERED TERMINALS
DEPENDABLE
COLOR CODED

Write for Information and Prices

CONTINENTAL CARBON INC.
WEST PARK, CLEVELAND, OHIO

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

«ESCO» Power Supply for Radio Equipment

Machines for operating 60-cycle A. C. Radio Receivers, Loud Speakers and Phonographs from Direct Current Lighting Sockets Without Objectionable Noises of any Kind.

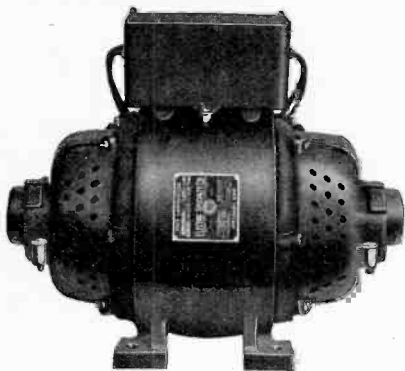
The dynamotors and motor generators are suitable for radio receivers and for combination instruments containing phonographs and receivers. Filters are usually required. The dynamotors and motor generators with filters give us good or better results than are obtained from ordinary 60-cycle lighting sockets. They are furnished completely assembled and connected and are very easily installed.

These machines are furnished with wool-packed bearings which require very little attention, and are very quiet running.

Write for Bulletin No. 243-D

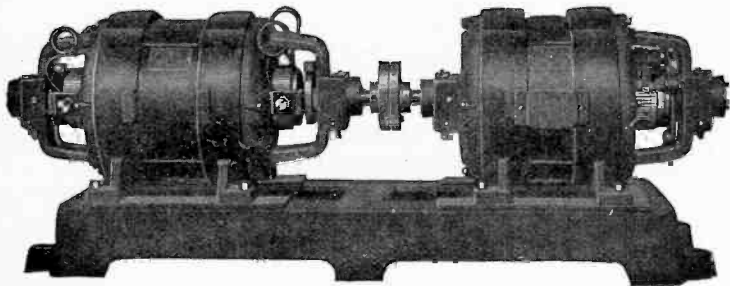


Type NA Aircraft Generator



Dynamotor with Filter for Radio Receivers

Low wind resistance, light weight, non-corroding parts, ball bearings, tool steel shafts, steel shells, cast steel pole pieces, weather proof construction, many sizes to choose from, high voltage and low voltage windings to suit individual requirements, are a few of the many reasons for «ESCO» generators or dynamotors being the first choice.



Type BFR, Two Unit Motor Generator Set

«ESCO» two and three unit sets have become the accepted standards for transmission. The «ESCO» line consists of over 300 combinations. These are covered by Bulletin 237G.

«ESCO» also manufactures synchronous motors for television and «talkie» projectors. Motor generators and dynamotors for power amplifiers and public address systems.

ELECTRIC  **SPECIALTY**
COMPANY

300 SOUTH ST., STAMFORD, CONN.

Manufacturers of motors, generators, dynamotors and rotary converters.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Piezo Electric Crystals and Constant Temperature Equipment

Piezo Electric Crystals:

We are prepared to grind Piezo Electric Crystals for POWER use to your assigned frequency in the 550 to 1500 KC band, *accurate to plus or minus 500 cycles* for \$55.00 fully mounted. Crystals for use in the HIGH FREQUENCY BROADCAST BAND (4000 to 6000 KC) for POWER use, accurate to plus or minus .03% of your assigned frequency, fully mounted, \$85.00. In ordering please specify type of tube used, plate voltage and operating temperature. All crystals guaranteed with respect to output and accuracy of frequency. Deliveries can be made within three days after receipt of order.

Constant Temperature Equipment

In order to maintain the frequency of your crystal controlled transmitter to a high degree of constancy, a high grade temperature control unit is required to keep the temperature of the crystal constant. Our unit is solving the problem of keeping the frequency within the 50 cycle variation limits. Our heater unit maintains the temperature of the crystals constant to **BETTER THAN A TENTH OF ONE DEGREE CENTIGRADE**; is made of the finest materials known for each specific purpose and is absolutely guaranteed. Price \$300.00. Further details sent upon request.

Low Frequency Standards:

We have a limited quantity of material for grinding low frequency standard crystals. We can grind them as low as *15,000 cycles*. These crystals will be ground to your specified frequency accurate to **ONE HUNDREDTH OF ONE PER CENT**. Prices quoted upon receipt of your specifications.

Scientific Radio Service

"The crystal specialists"

P. O. Box 86

Dept. R6

Mount Rainier, Md.

RADIO ENGINEERS
specify
VITREOSIL

(Fused Pure Silica and Quartz)

Insulation for Heater Type AC Tubes
Heat Treating Tubes for Metal Parts
Optical Details for Television

OBTAINING: Homogeneity; Impermeability; Freedom from Gas; Lowest Expansion; High Electrical Resistance; Freedom from Impurities .

And in TRANSPARENT VITREOSIL Best Transmission of Visible, Ultra-Violet and Infra-Red Rays.

AVAILABLE SHAPES: Transparent Lenses, Prisms, Bulbs, etc.; Rods, Plates and Special Cross Section Strips; Single and Multiple Bore Tubing in All Diameters.

WRITE STATING PROBLEM

THE THERMAL SYNDICATE, LTD.

1716 Atlantic Avenue

Brooklyn, New York



A New Self-Contained Ohmmeter designed especially for radio service

HERE is an instrument that makes it easy to check radio resistors quickly and accurately. The Jewell Pattern 41 Ohmmeter is a high grade D. C. instrument with a sub-base carrying a three cell battery. The instrument is therefore entirely self-contained and independent of external voltage supply. Current drawn from the battery is very low and with ordinary use the battery lasts several months. It can be replaced conveniently.

The knurled knob which can be seen at the bottom of the illustration provides adjustment for battery

voltage variation through a magnetic shunt.

In service the binding posts are short circuited before using and the pointer adjusted to the top of the scale by turning the knob. This corrects the instrument to the exact battery voltage available and any resistance placed across the binding posts is accurately indicated in ohms direct on the scale.

Write for bulletin describing the Pattern 41 Ohmmeter and the scale combinations in which this time-saving instrument is available.

Jewell Electrical Instrument Company
1642-D Walnut Street, Chicago

Manufacturers of a complete line of Portable and Switchboard Instruments and an extensive line of Radio Service Equipment.

30 YEARS MAKING GOOD INSTRUMENTS
JEWELL

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

CHANGE IN MAILING ADDRESS OR BUSINESS TITLE

Members of the Institute are asked to use this form for notifying the Institute office of a change in their mailing address or any change in the listing of their company affiliation or title for the Year Book membership list.

The Secretary,
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS,
33 West 39th Street,
New York, N.Y.

Dear Sir:

Effective please note change in my address
(date)
for mail as follows:

FROM

.....
(Name)

.....
(Street Address)

.....
(City and State)

TO NEW ADDRESS

.....
(Street Address)

.....
(City and State)

Also for the membership list for next year's Year Book note change in my business address (or title) as follows, this ^{is} my mailing address: _{is not}

.....
(Title)

.....
(Company Name)

.....
(Address: Street, City and State)

PLEASE FILL IN, DETACH, AND POST TO THE
INSTITUTE PROMPTLY

Back Numbers of the Proceedings Available

MEMBERS of the Institute will find that back issues of the Proceedings are becoming increasingly valuable, and scarce. For the benefit of those desiring to complete their file of back numbers there is printed below a list of all complete volumes (bound and unbound) and miscellaneous copies on hand for sale by the Institute.

The contents of each issue can be found in the 1914-1926 Index and in the 1929 Year Book (for the years 1927-28).

BOUND VOLUMES:

Vols. 8, 9, 10 and 14 (1920-1921-1922-1926), \$8.75 per volume to members

Vol. 17 (1929), \$9.50 to members

UNBOUND VOLUMES:

Vols. 6, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 14 (1918-1920-1921-1922-1923-1926), \$6.75 per volume (year) to members

MISCELLANEOUS COPIES:

Vol. 1 (1913) July and December

Vol. 2 (1914) June

Vol. 3 (1915) December

Vol. 4 (1916) June and August

Vol. 5 (1917) April, June, August, October and December.

Vol. 7 (1919) February, April and December

Vol. 12 (1924) August, October and December

Vol. 13 (1925) April, June, August, October and December

Vol. 15 (1927) April, May, June, July, October, November and December

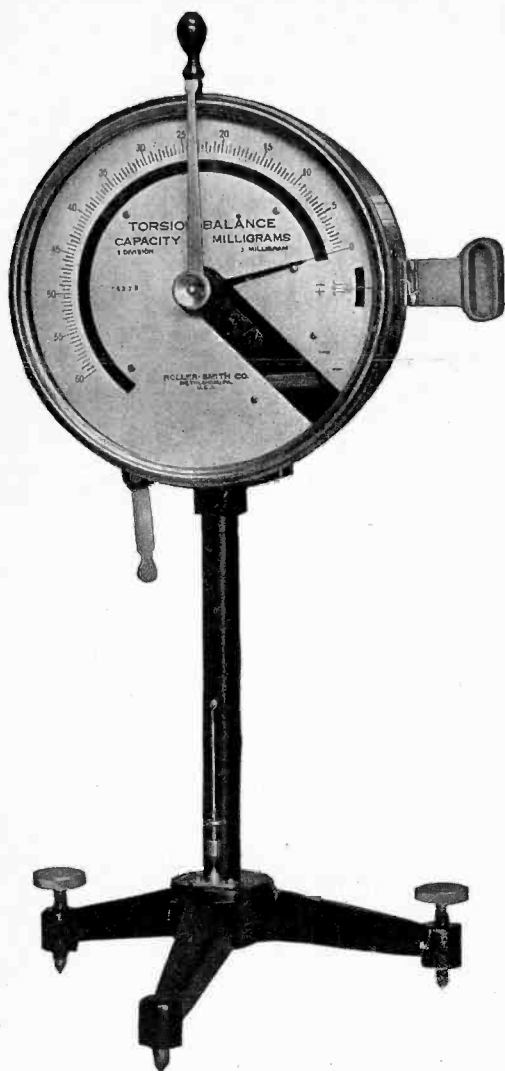
Vol. 17 (1929) April, May, June, July, August, September, November and December

These single copies are priced at \$1.13 each to members to the January 1927 issue. Subsequent to that number the price is \$0.75 each. Prior to January 1927 the Proceedings was published bi-monthly, beginning with the February issue and ending with December. Since January 1927 it has been published monthly.

Make remittances payable to the Institute of Radio Engineers and send orders to:

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

33 West 39th Street
NEW YORK, N. Y.



Precision Torsion Balances

These balances are made in ranges from 0-6 milligrams to 0-50 grams. They are recommended for the weighing of lamp filaments and other masses within their range.

They are direct reading, have scales 10" long and are accurate within one fifth of one per cent of full scale value at any point on the scale.

Suitable check weights are available.

Send for Bulletin No. K-240, which gives all details.

"Over thirty-five years' experience is back of Roller-Smith"

ROLLER-SMITH COMPANY

Electrical Measuring and Protective Apparatus

Main Office:
2134 Woolworth Bldg.
New York



Works:
Bethlehem,
Pennsylvania

Offices in principal cities in U. S. A. and Canada

Representatives in Australia, Cuba, Japan and Philippine Islands

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

INDUCTORS *for* TRANSMISSION

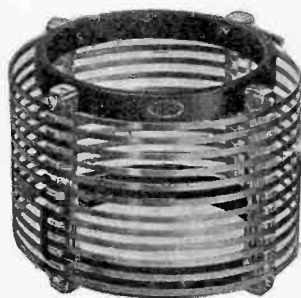
CAT. NO. 127



TYPE S
10 to 50 Meters
3" Dia.



TYPE L
30 to 100 Meters
5" Dia.



TYPE LL
100 to 550 Meters
8" Dia.

*Adaptable to all Circuits
employing up to 2 K.W. Input*

Flatwise Wound—Low Distributed Capacity.
Moulded Glass Separators—Low Losses.
95% Air Dielectric—Mechanically Rugged.
Unaffected by Climate Conditions.

Employed and endorsed by the foremost
Radio manufacturers throughout the
world. Used in Army and Navy
Short Wave Stations.

Write for Bulletin 27



MANUFACTURES A COMPLETE LINE OF
APPARATUS FOR SHORT WAVE TRANS-
MISSION AND RECEPTION.

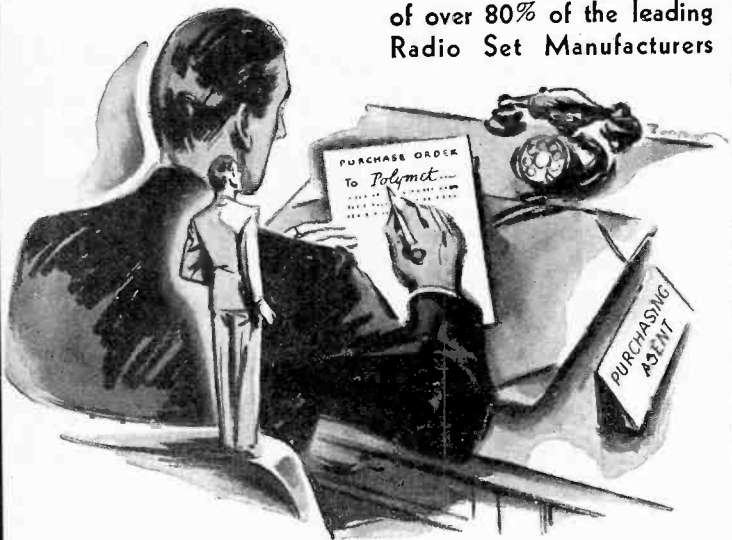
Radio Engineering Laboratories, Inc.

100 Wilbur Ave. :: Long Island City, N. Y., U.S.A.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

LOOK OVER THE SHOULDERS

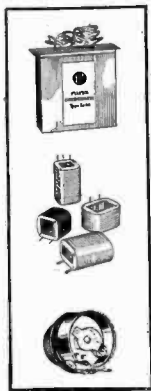
of the Purchasing Agents
of over 80% of the leading
Radio Set Manufacturers



They Rely on Polymet for Parts:

Paper and Mica Condensers, Resistors,
Volume Controls, Transformers, Electrical
Coils, Enameled Magnet Wire.

Engineering skill, the best of raw materials,
modern machinery and equipment,
meet under three great factory roofs to
produce these Polymet quality parts.



PRODUCTS

POLYMET MANUFACTURING
CORPORATION
829 East 134th Street, New York City

POLYMET

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



**Whatever your
Resistor Need
We can
Supply it!**

Resistor units of all values for all purposes . . . high values from 10 to several hundred megohms per unit length for photocell work, high voltage voltmeter multipliers, lightning arrestors, etc. — precision wire wound units made to accuracies of 1% and 1/2% . . . each one built for more dependable service and longer life. Write for bulletins, including bulletin No. 9 on the new precision wire wound resistor.

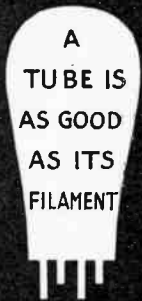


Ranges 500 to 500,000 ohms

DURHAM METALLIZED

**RESISTORS & POWER OHMS
INTERNATIONAL RESISTANCE CO.
2006 Chestnut Street, Philadelphia, Pa.**

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



PRECISION (UNCOATED) FILAMENT

FOR RADIO
VACUUM TUBES

IS GOOD FILAMENT



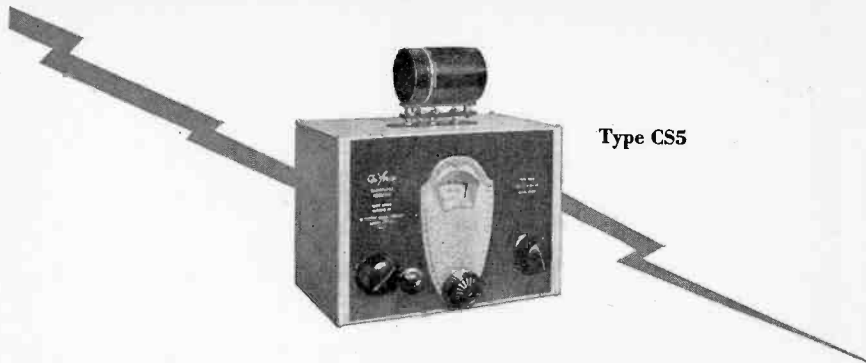
A Product of
SIGMUND COHN
44 Gold Street
New York



When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

LV

The latest achievement of the De Forest Laboratories



Type CS5

The New DE FOREST SHORT WAVE RECEIVER

TRANSMITTING AUDIONS

510	— 15 Watt Oscillator.	\$ 9.00
508A	— 50 Watt Oscillator and R. F. Power Amplifier	40.00
511	— 50 Watt Oscillator, R. F. Amplifier, Modulator or R. F. Power Amplifier	40.00
545	— 50 Watt A.F. Ampli- fier and Modulator.	45.00
552	— 75 Watt Oscillator and R. F. Amplifier	\$2.50
504A	— 250 Watt Oscillator, Modulator or R. F. Power Amplifier	140.00
500	— 500 Watt Special Oscillator	180.00
520B	— 5000 Watt Oscillator and R. F. Power Amplifier—water cooled.	250.00
565	— 7 1/2 Watt Screen Grid R. F. Amplifier	22.00
560	— 75 Watt Screen Grid R. F. Amplifier	50.00
561	— 500 Watt Screen Grid R. F. Amplifier	300.00
566	— A half-wave hot cathode, mercury vapor rectifier Medium Current	12.50
572	— A half-wave cathode, mercury vapor recti- fier, Heavy Current	30.00

The new De Forest Radiophone Receiver, Type CS5 illustrated above, is designed to receive both telephone and telegraph signals on all frequencies between 1,500 and 15,000 kilocycles (20 to 2.5 meters).

Being small and light it is excellent for portable work. Its enormous amplification giving loud speaker signals on a 10 ft. antenna.

The special circuit uses four Audions; two Screen Grid Audions as radio frequency amplifier and space-charge-grid detector (power detector) and two Audions in a transformer-coupled audio amplifier. Housed in an aluminum case, 5" x 6" x 9", this receiver, although full-grown in strength and performance, makes an ideal short wave receiver for aircraft reception where light weight is a necessity. It is also adapted for general amateur use, small yachts, police cars and automobiles.

DE FOREST RADIO CO., PASSAIC, N. J.

Branch Offices Located in

Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Atlanta, Pittsburgh,
Chicago, Minneapolis, St. Louis, Kansas City, Denver,
Los Angeles, Seattle, Detroit, Dallas, Cleveland

Specifications for De Forest Radiophone Receiver Type CS5

Battery Requirements

Operates either from dry cells using Audions 422A and 499 or from 6 volt storage battery using Audions 422 and 401A. For loud speaker operation either Audions 420, 412A or 471B may be inserted in the last audio stage. Two 45 volt "B" batteries furnish the plate power.

Features

Extremely compact and light in weight.
Screen grid R. F. Amplifier.
Space-charge-grid power detector.
Two stages of audio amplification.
Zero body capacity.
Frequency calibration independent of antenna used.
Moisture and climate proof.
Negligible microphonics.

de Forest AUDIONS

USE THIS COUPON

S. W. Receiver type CS5 (less tubes)	\$75.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
510	\$ 9.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
508A	40.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
511	40.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
545	45.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
560	50.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
561	390.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
565	\$22.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
552	32.50	<input type="checkbox"/>
504A	140.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
500	180.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
520B	250.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
566	12.50	<input type="checkbox"/>
572	30.00	<input type="checkbox"/>

DE FOREST RADIO COMPANY,
PASSAIC, NEW JERSEY

Enclosed please find \$_____ for which send me the items checked opposite.

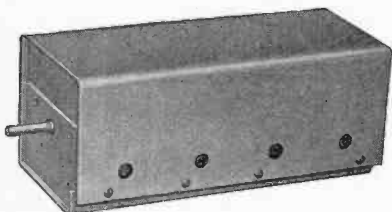
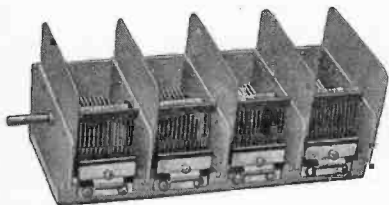
Name _____

Address _____

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



For Exacting Condenser Service
Specify
United Scientific Type S. G.



- ★ The completely shielded stators with section shields protruding beyond the grid ends of the stators eliminate every possibility of coupling.
- ★ Individually grounded rotor wipe phosphor bronze contacts.
- ★ Extra heavy steel frame rigidly reinforced by section separators.
- ★ Minimum compensators of novel construction have a ground potential on the adjusting screw. This greatly facilitates balancing because the process of balancing is not effected by screw driver or hand capacity.
- ★ Three brass bearings, including center bearing, are line reamed to assure smooth rotor action and long life.
- ★ Bosses are arranged so that the condenser can be mounted either on bottom or side.
- ★ All metal parts are heavily cadmium plated to prevent tarnish and corrosion.
- ★ Fully enclosed heavy drawn dust-proof cover adds additional rigidity to entire assembly.
- ★ Uniform precision spacing of rotors and stators permits tracking to within $\frac{1}{2}\%$ on any part of the scale.

Write for a Sample, Prices, and More Complete Information

UNITED SCIENTIFIC LABORATORIES, Inc.

115-C Fourth Avenue, New York City

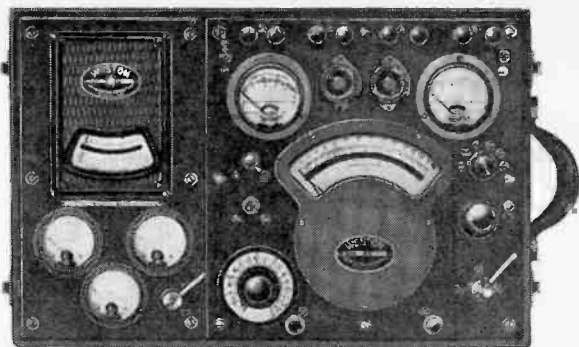
Branch Offices for Your Convenience in

St. Louis
 Chicago
 Boston
 Minneapolis
 Cincinnati



Los Angeles
 Philadelphia
 San Francisco
 London, Ontario

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



WESTON MODEL 526 - Type 7 RADIO TUBE TESTER

WESTON INSTRUMENTS help keep millions of tubes in orderly procession—safe-guarding production and insuring delivery to consumer in perfect condition.

The MODEL 526 TUBE TESTER has levelled the barriers of slow-operating devices and removed the obstruction of tedious and complicated computations. With this instrument tube and set manufacturers can quickly and conveniently obtain direct readings and determinations for the following:

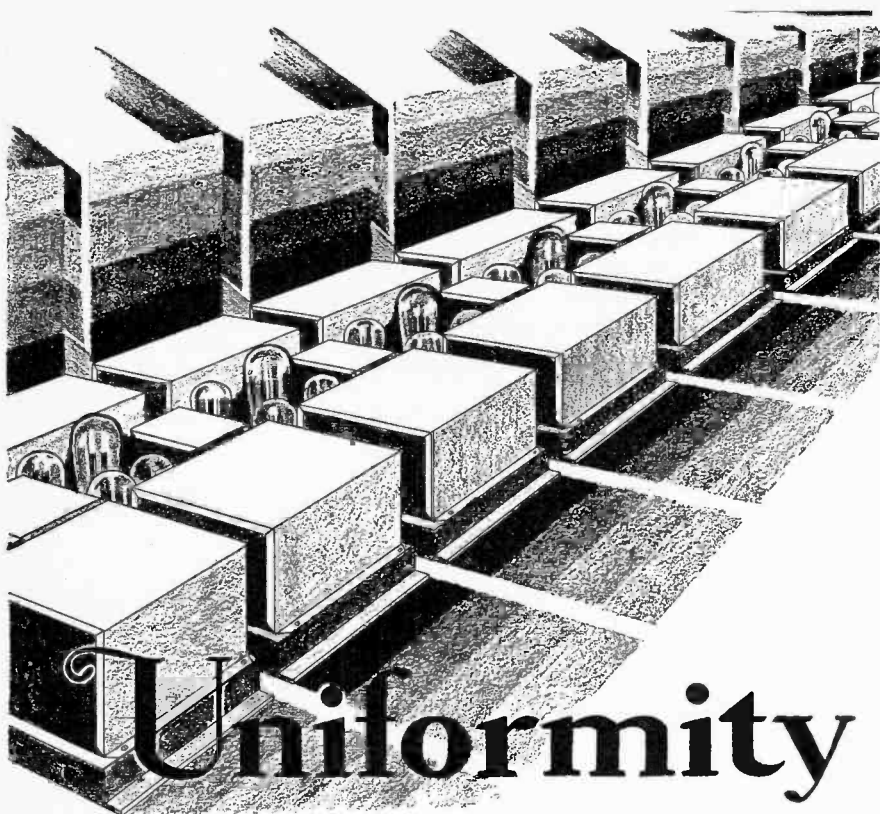
Short Test—Leakage—Gas Test. Determination of Amplification Factor, Measurement of Plate Impedance, Mutual Conductance and Plate Current.

These Tube Testers have become Standard equipment in many of the leading tube factories—in all cases accelerating production and insuring uniformity and high quality of tube output. Enclosed in hardwood case with Bakelite panel. Size, $19\frac{3}{4}$ x $12\frac{3}{4}$ x $5\frac{7}{8}$ inches.

WESTON ELECTRICAL INSTRUMENT CORPORATION
589 Frelinghuysen Avenue Newark, N.J.

Weston
PIONEERS
SINCE 1888
INSTRUMENTS

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



EVERY operation in the production of Operadio Power Amplifiers contributes to the verification of the slogan "Uniformity of Product." In specifying Operadio Power Amplifiers, you are assured of laboratory performance at production costs.

Their somewhat higher initial cost is cheap insurance for uniformity of performance and operation. 58% of the total time spent to build Operadio Power Amplifiers is used for either tone tests, power tests, or comparative tests against a standard.

OPERADIO MFG. CO.

St. Charles, Illinois

OPERADIO

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

ENGINEERS AVAILABLE

Advertisements on this page are available only to members of the Institute of Radio Engineers. For rates and further information address the Secretary, The Institute of Radio Engineers, 33 West 39th Street, New York, N.Y.

MANUFACTURERS and others seeking radio engineers are invited to address replies to these advertisements at the Box number indicated, care the Institute of Radio Engineers. All replies will be forwarded direct to the advertiser.

GRADUATE, Northwestern University, B.S. in 1926; Lehigh University, M.S. in 1929. Six months' experience television research and four months' study of acoustics. Desires connection in television or acoustical work. Age 27. Box 20.

RADIO ENGINEER, married, eight years' executive experience in design, operation and maintenance of broadcast stations. B.A. degree in Science. Studied in several colleges and universities. Have travelled extensively. Desire an executive position with large broadcasting station, with talking picture industry, or allied fields. Well endorsed. Age 29. Box 15.

RADIO ENGINEER, familiar with research and design work on broadcast receivers and loud speakers as well as general laboratory work. Desires connection with broadcast receiver manufacturer or similar type of work. Age 26. Box 16.

M.I.T. GRADUATE, B.S., E.E., 1926. Experienced in research on audio amplifier equipment for radio, public address and talking movie work. Also experienced in production engineering and personnel management. Desires position with manufacturing organization, preferably as production engineer. Age 25. Box 17.

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY GRADUATE, B.A. 1919, E.E. 1922. Six years with large engineering organization on receiver design, manufacture and service. Has experience on development, installation, test and specification of carrier current communication equipment. Two years' power company communication engineering including some aircraft radio work. Desires responsible position in radio manufacturing or as air transport communication engineer. Age 32, Box 18.

RADIO ENGINEER, college graduate with more than twelve years' exclusive experience in radio, having a thorough knowledge of the art and requirements of the receiver industry, and for the past three years chief engineer for a national manufacturer is desirous of making new connection in responsible capacity. Box 9.

ENGINEERING EXECUTIVE of thirteen years' experience desires suitable connection. From 1917 to 1922 in U. S. Navy Department on research and development, testing of radio-compass equipment and high and low-power transmitters. In charge of radio laboratory in Philadelphia for three of these years. 1922 to 1925, chief radio engineer for large manufacturer of broadcast receiving sets handling research, design, supervision of manufacture, training of personnel, and responsible for design of all apparatus sold during that period. 1925 to 1927 spent as consulting engineer. 1927 to 1929, chief engineer for an organization manufacturing parts and theatre amplifying equipment. Four months of 1929 on receiver design. 35 years of age. Box 8.

GRADUATE of University of Kiev (U.S.S.R.), B.A., '13, has built, repaired, and serviced receivers and power-supply units and has considerable experience in audio amplifiers having frequency-response characteristics better than those available in manufactured units. Is interested in work concerning the building, control, installation, and servicing of sound-amplifier systems. Age 38. Box 13.

GRADUATE of industrial electrical engineering course at Pratt Institute, also radio course at same school, is interested in experimental or test work on receivers or tubes. Experienced in factory testing and trouble shooting. Age 23. Box 10.

TEST ENGINEER, two years' college, ten years' radio manufacturing experience, six on test and design work on broadcast receivers and loud speakers. Desires position doing test or laboratory work. Age 30. Box 19.

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

A Complete Family of Hammarlund "M"

MANUFACTURERS' MULTIPLE
Condensers

"M-Q"
Multiple-Quad.
"M-T"
Multiple-Trip.
"M-D"
Multiple-Duo.

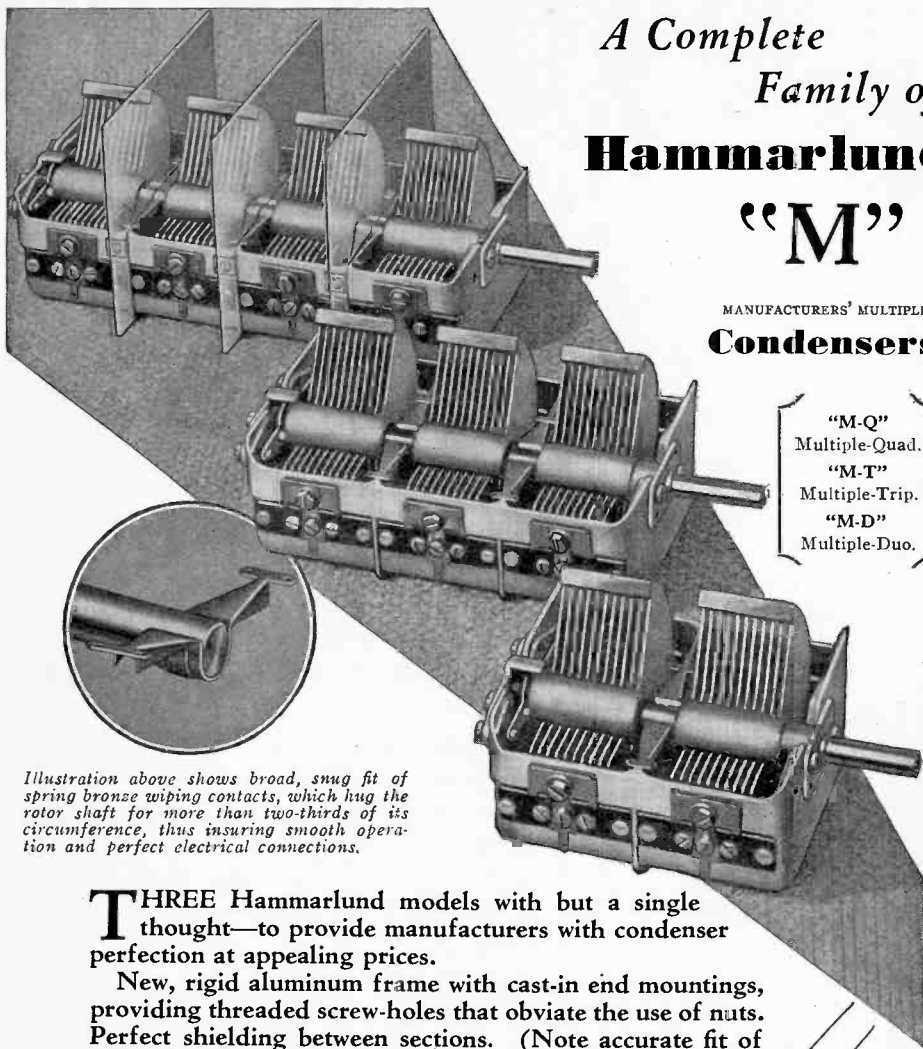


Illustration above shows broad, snug fit of spring bronze wiping contacts, which hug the rotor shaft for more than two-thirds of its circumference, thus insuring smooth operation and perfect electrical connections.

THREE Hammarlund models with but a single thought—to provide manufacturers with condenser perfection at appealing prices.

New, rigid aluminum frame with cast-in end mountings, providing threaded screw-holes that obviate the use of nuts. Perfect shielding between sections. (Note accurate fit of demountable upper shields, shown in phantom on quadruple model). Steel shaft working in long, hand-reamed bearings. Anchored, non-microphonic, aluminum plates. Separate stator insulating strips. Large area trimmer condensers.

You couldn't ask more of any condensers than these new Hammarlunds offer.

Write us your needs. Use coupon.

HAMMARLUND MFG. CO.
424-438 W. 33rd St., New York

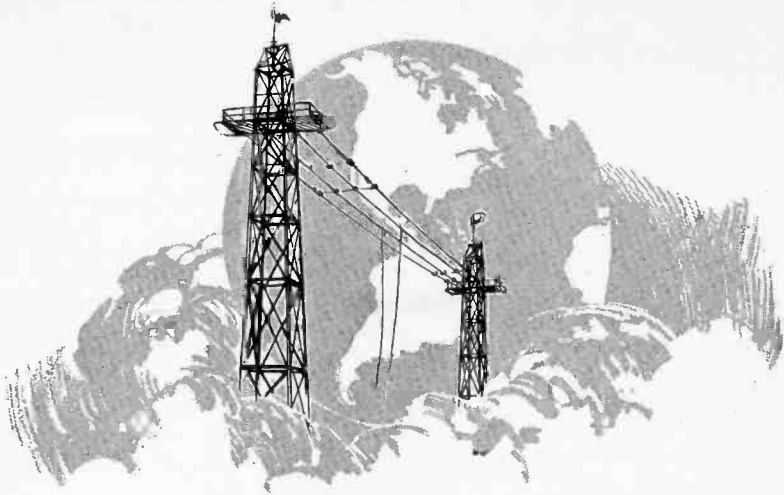
For Better Radio
Hammarlund
PRECISION
PRODUCTS

MAIL COUPON FOR FULL PARTICULARS

HAMMARLUND MFG. CO., Dept. PE4
424-438 W. 33rd St., New York

Please send information on "M" Condensers.
Name
Address

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



Towers in the AIR



THE invention of the audion tube by Lee De Forest in 1906 made the household use of radio practical. Today the radio tower so commonly seen is representative of a truly towering industry. And yet they tell us that radio is still in its infancy.

To Scovill these "towers in the air" have a special significance—for Scovill proudly cherishes the thought that even before 1906 its contributions were welcomed by radio engineers. Scovill radio products—particularly condensers—have played an important part in the successive steps of radio's development.

Today Scovill radio condensers are admittedly the industry's standard of quality. Manufacturers of the finest radio sets use them—and we are sure they will continue to use them, for Scovill quality and Scovill service are of the sort that build goodwill.

SCOVILL

Established 1802

MANUFACTURING COMPANY
· WATERBURY · CONNECTICUT ·

BOSTON
ATLANTA
CHICAGO
PROVIDENCE

CLEVELAND
LOS ANGELES
NEW YORK

DETROIT
SAN FRANCISCO
PHILADELPHIA
CINCINNATI

In Europe—THE HAGUE, HOLLAND

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERING DIRECTORY

For Consultants in Radio and Allied Engineering Fields

THE MAGNAVOX COMPANY

Oakland, Calif. & Chicago, Ill.
*PIONEERS AND SPECIALISTS
IN THE ART OF
SOUND PRODUCTION.
DYNAMIC SPEAKERS SINCE
1911.*

P A T E N T S WM. G. H. FINCH

Patent Attorney
(Registered U. S. & Canada)
Mem. I. R. E. Mem. A. I. E. E.
303 Fifth Ave. New York
Caledonia 5331

RADIO ENGINEERS

Ten dollars will introduce you directly to over 7,000 technical men, executives, and others with important radio interests. For details write to

Advertising Dept., I.R.E.

The J. G. White Engineering Corporation

Engineers—Constructors

*Builders of New York Radio
Central*

43 Exchange Place New York

Radio



Engineers

Your card on this professional card page will give you a direct introduction to over 7,000 technical men, executives, and others with important radio interests.



Per Issue—\$10.00

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Alphabetical Index to Advertisements

- A**
- Aerovox Wireless Corp.XXV
 Allen-Bradley Co.XLII
 American Tel. & Tel. Co.XXII
 American Transformer Co.XLIII
 Arcturus Radio Tube Co.XXXIX
- C**
- Cardwell, Allen D., Mfg. Corp. LXVII
 Central Radio Laboratories ... LXVI
 Clarostat Mfg. Co., Inc.XXXV
 Cohn, SigmundLV
 Condenser Corp. of AmericaXXI
 Continental Carbon Inc.XLIV
 Cornell Electric Mfg. Co.XVI
 Corning Glass WorksLXVIII
- D**
- De Forest Radio Co.LVI
 DeJur-Amsco Corp.XXVIII
 Dubilier Condenser Corp.XLI
 Dudlo Manufacturing Co.XL
- E**
- Electrad, Inc.XXIII
 Electric Specialty Co.XLV
- F**
- Fansteel Products Co., Inc. XXXVIII
 Formica Insulation Co.XXXVI
 Frost, H. H., Inc.XXXVII
- G**
- General Radio Co., Outside Back Cover
 Grebe, A. H., and Co., Inc.
 Inside Back Cover
- H**
- Hammarlund Mfg. Co.LXI
- I**
- International Resistance Co.LIV
 I.R.E. PublicationsXVII
 I.R.E.
 ...XXXIII, XXXIV, XLIX, L, LX
 Isolantite Co. of America
XXVI, XXVII
- J**
- Jefferson Electric Co.XXIX
 Jewell Electrical Instrument Co.
XLVIII
- L**
- Lynch Mfg. Co., Inc.XIX
- N**
- National Carbon Co., Inc.XXX
 National Vulcanized Fibre Co. XVIII
- O**
- Operadio Mfg. Co.LIX
- P**
- Pacent Electric Co.XXIV
 Polymet Manufacturing Corp. ...LIII
 Professional Engineering Directory
LXIII
- R**
- Radio Engineering Laboratories ..LII
 Roller-Smith Co.LI
- S**
- Sangamo Elec. Co.XXXI, XXXII
 Scientific Radio ServiceXLVI
 Scovill Manufacturing Co.LXII
 Shakeproof Lock Washer Co. ...XX
 Sprague Specialties Co.LXV
- T**
- Thermal Syndicate, Ltd.XLVII
 Thordarson Electric Co.XV
- U**
- United Scientific Labs.LVII
- W**
- Weston Elec. Instrument Corp.
LVIII

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

QUALITY

Sprague Precision Condensers are the Standard of Condenser Quality

WHEN critical engineers get together, they all agree that Sprague Condensers are superior. They know that Sprague Condensers have stood the severest tests of service — that they can be depended upon to perform their duties with unfailing faithfulness . . . Sprague Condensers are designed by the nation's foremost condenser engineers and assembled by skilled craftsmen. And here are a few reasons why Sprague Condensers are better:

THE SPRAGUE ELECTROLYTIC CONDENSER

A single unit allowing maximum flexibility for mounting in circuit. No welded or riveted joints in its one piece anode, made of purest aluminum. A lower leakage and better power factor than any other electrolytic unit, wet or dry. Rigid construction prevents possibility of internal shorts. Screw type socket makes for ease in mounting. Edge effect 10% of spiral type.

THE SPRAGUE BLOCK CONDENSER

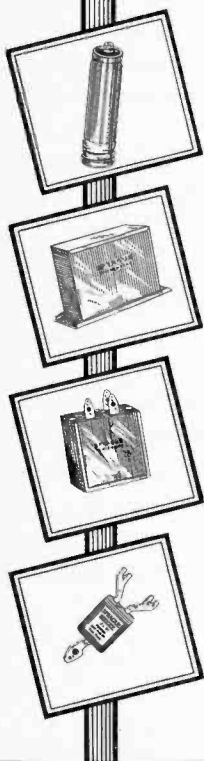
Dielectrically superior due to patented paraffin layer process: Ruggedly protected by extra heavy sheet metal can. Impervious to moisture due to dipping of individual condensers, wrapping of assembled block in moisture-proof material, and triple sealing. Highest leakage resistance guaranteed above 5000 megohms per microfarad.

THE SPRAGUE ONE MICROFARAD UNIT

Flexible mounting — either unique stud or flange as desired . . . Correctly protected against moisture by double seal and only one small open end. Also furnished in midget assemblies using up to five sections of low capacity.

THE SPRAGUE MIDGET

A compact and unusually strong unit. Tested to high voltage breakdown — waterproofed with asphalt covering and special process of triple impregnation. Easily and quickly mounted . . . Dual type of winding if desired.



SPRAGUE SPECIALTIES COMPANY
QUINCY, MASSACHUSETTS

SPRAGUE ELECTROLYTIC AND PAPER CONDENSERS
WILL SOLVE YOUR CONDENSER PROBLEMS



When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

Volume Controls

TO vary the intensity of the faithful reproduction built into radio receivers without introducing noise or distortion, can only be accomplished by a careful and complete consideration of both mechanical and electrical features of the volume control.

Mechanically—The Centralab exclusive and patented rocking disc contact precludes any possibility of wear on the resistance material. This feature adds to the smoothness of operation since the contact shoes ride only on the disc. The shaft and bushing are completely insulated from the current carrying parts—eliminating any hand capacity when volume control is placed in a critical circuit.

Electrically — Centralab engineers have evolved tapers of resistance that produce a smooth and gradual variation of volume. These tapers have been thoroughly tried and tested for each specific application for current carrying capacity and power dissipation.

Centralab volume controls have been specified by leading manufacturers because of their quality and ability to perform a specific duty—Vary the intensity of faithful reproduction—faithfully.

Manufactured in three sizes

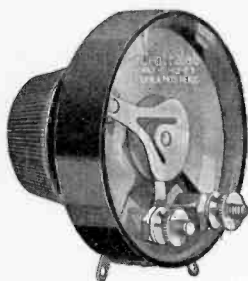
Standard

Junior

Midget

*Also Double Standard
and Double Junior*

*Special Combination
Wire Wound and
Graphite Control*



*Write for full particulars of
specific application.*

Centralab
CENTRAL RADIO  LABORATORIES

36 Keefe Ave.

Milwaukee, Wis.

A CENTRALAB VOLUME CONTROL IMPROVES THE RADIO SET

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

FRAME or PICTURE?

No priceless painting is coveted by the connoisseur because of a gilded frame, but many an atrocious smear finds a guileless friend that way.

Experts select CARDWELL condensers because they are mechanically sound and fundamentally right, their worth *proved* over a decade of hard, exacting service—they are simple, sturdy yet *modern*.

An installation of which much will be expected—(and what other is worth while)—*deserves* CARDWELLS.

•
C A R D W E L L
C O N D E N S E R S

•
TRANSMITTING -- RECEIVING

THE ALLEN D. CARDWELL
MFG. CORPN.

81 Prospect Street, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK

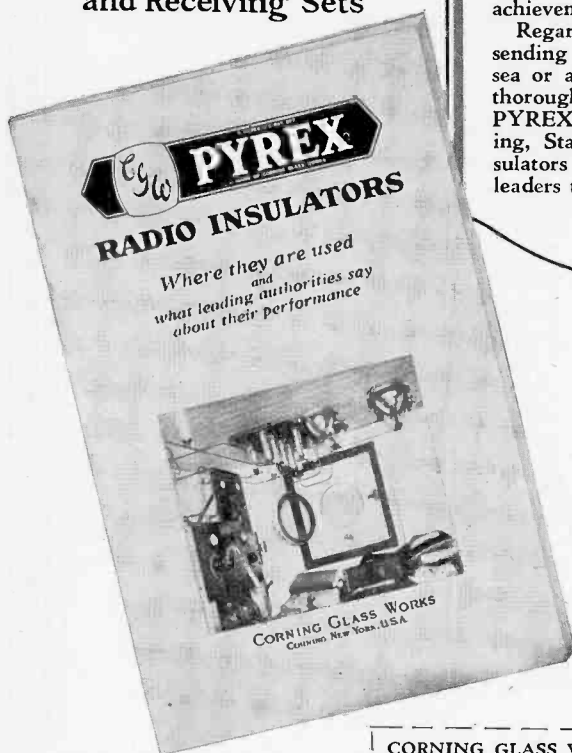
Since broadcasting began

«THE STANDARD OF COMPARISON»

When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.

A SAFE GUIDE

in the selection of insulation for Radio Transmitting and Receiving Sets



OVER 300 broadcasting stations, leading radio telegraph systems, the United States Army, Navy, Air Mail, Coast Guard and Ice Patrol Services, explorers like Commander Byrd, and exacting amateurs everywhere have utilized PYREX Insulators in many spectacular achievements.

Regardless of whether you are sending or receiving—on land, sea or airplane—you should be thoroughly familiar with the PYREX Antenna, Strain, Entering, Stand-off and Bus-bar Insulators that are helping these leaders to make radio history.

The new PYREX Radio Insulator booklet lists all types and sizes with data that you will want for ready reference.

Return the coupon for your copy, and if you want further advice on any insulation problem, our Technical Staff will answer your questions promptly.

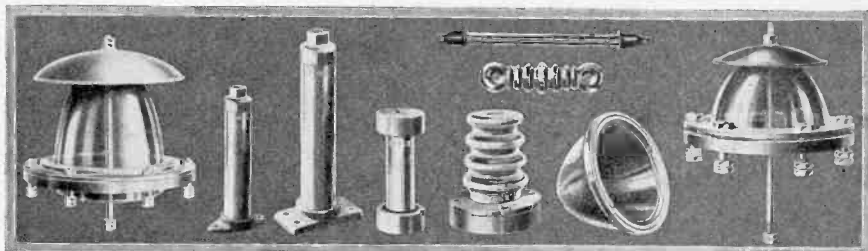
CORNING GLASS WORKS, Corning, N. Y.

Send copy of your new bulletin on Radio Insulators

Name

Address

I. R. E. 4-30




When writing to advertisers mention of the PROCEEDINGS will be mutually helpful.



A.H.GREBE & CO., Inc.

RICHMOND HILL, NEW YORK

**Grebe
radio**

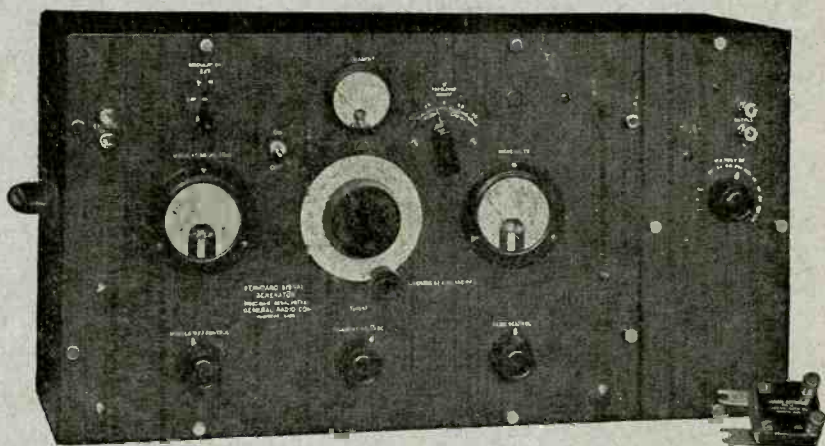
SUPER-SYNCHROPHASE 

WESTERN BRANCH

443 South San Pedro Street
Los Angeles, California

MAKERS OF QUALITY RADIO SINCE 1909

Next Year's Radio Receiver



TYPE 403-C Standard-Signal Generator

IN the laboratory of every progressive manufacturer of radio receivers, engineers are now perfecting the receivers that will be offered to the radio-using public next fall. Sensitivity, ability to weed out interfering stations, and faithful reproduction are the important qualities and these are tested by means of the General Radio instrument shown in the illustration.

The General Radio standard-signal generator, as the name implies, generates a radio signal of known character. This, when supplied to the receiver through an artificial or "dummy" antenna, makes it possible

to predict from laboratory tests how the receiver will behave in the user's home. This General Radio instrument has replaced one more cut-and-try process with an engineering test.

The Type 403-C Standard-Signal Generator covers the broadcast band, but it may be supplied with additional plug-in coils for work in other frequency ranges if desired. The price, including a dummy antenna, is \$600.00.

GENERAL RADIO COMPANY
CAMBRIDGE A, MASSACHUSETTS

British Branch: 76 Old Hall Street, Liverpool

GENERAL RADIO INSTRUMENTS

FOR MEASURING ELECTRICAL QUANTITIES AT ALL FREQUENCIES



STANDARD AND SPECIAL ITEMS FOR LABORATORY AND INDUSTRIAL USE